

THIS VOLUME IS REPRODUCED  
BY CONSENT OF THE HENRY E.  
HUNTINGTON LIBRARY AND ART  
GALLERY AND MAY NOT BE  
REPRODUCED BY OTHERS WITH-  
OUT FORMAL WRITTEN CONSENT  
FROM THAT INSTITUTION.

INCHES

The most Famous and  
renowned *Historie*, of that  
woorthie and illustrious Knight  
Meruine, sonne to that rare and ex-  
cellent Mirror of Princeely prowesse, Oger  
the Dane, and one of that royll bond  
of unmatched Knighthoode,  
the twelve Peeres of  
France.

Wherein is declared, his rare birth, and  
stranger bringing vp, with his most ho-  
norable conquest of Ierusalem, Babilon,  
and divers other Cities from the pagan  
Infidels: with many other memorable  
accidents of wonderous consequence.

By I. M. Gent.



Printed at London by R. Blower  
and Val. Sims. 1612.

To the Readers whosocuer  
they be.



Entle Reader, I am to deale  
with thee in this Historie of  
Meruine, as those which bid  
men to a great feast, that is,  
to present them first, with  
that which may procure an  
appetite to meate, and worke  
a deire to eate: so giue I thee  
the first part, to cause thee to haue a more longing  
desire vnto the second part, that shall in the full  
conclusion of this Historie giue thy desire his ex-  
pected satisfaction, the which, the next Terme  
( and if I liue ) I will not let to performe. Thus  
committing thee to thy delight in reading, and  
thy fauourable acceptance in allowing  
my Labour, I bid thee well to fare,  
till I fairely performe  
my promise.

(::)

*Thine ever ready to pleasure.*  
I. M.

A 2

# The Table of the first Part.



He famous Historie of the noble and valiane  
Knight Meruine, and first of his birth, and the  
gifts given him by the fairies. Chap. 1

The Fairie Gratiana repented her selfe for  
the carrying away of Meruine: 2 how shee  
found a hermit keeping thre goates: 3 how  
hee shewed her she way to find the port of the sea. Chap. 2

The Fairie Gratiana accorded to the desire of Barbin: 2  
Barbin carried her to Mermont unto his house: 3 how hee  
made his wife beleue that Meruine was his sonne. Chap. 3

Berea daughter of the king of Mermont fell in loue with  
Meruine, being at schoole: 2 of the loue-paine shee endured,  
and other accidents. Chap. 4

Meruine the king proclaimerith a great Iust for triall of  
his knyghts: 2 Meruine doth great wonders. Chap. 5

The treason of Brohars against Basina sister to Minea the  
great daughter of Basina. Chap. 6

Meruine promiseth Minea to fight the combate for her  
sister: 2 of his great daughters in Brandis: 3 how hee  
banished him selfe: 4 how Minea delivred him from death to  
imprisouement. Chap. 7

How Minea, Meruine, Jacob, Tyrus, and other  
companys with the 200. pagans departed from Brandis to deliver  
Basina to Monseignure: 2 and of the battell fough, be weene  
Meruine and Brohars and the event. Chap. 8

Of the honours done to Meruine for his victory: 2 how  
Minea

# The table.

Minea brought him backe againe to Brandis : 3 his imprisonment, and other aduentures. chap. 9

Jacobs report to king Mermont of the acts of Meruine : 2 Bereas ioy : 3 the priuate conference betweene Berea and Iacob. chap. 10

Of the dispatch of Baucamonts two knights to Mermont : 2 Mermont in despight of Baucamont imprisoneth them : 3 of the assault, and death of Clarissa the coward. chap. 11

The arriall of Iacob and Barbin at Brandis : 2 the presenting of the letter to the Court : 3 Meruine is deliuered to them : 4 Minea perswaded Croysant to accompany Meruine, which he did with 400. horsemen. chap. 12

The incounter betweene Galien Rotherus the sonne of Oliver and Meruine : 2 of the good knight Drohes, who yeelded himselfe to Meruine. chap. 13

The great battell before Montmeni : 2 Mermont taken prisoner : 3 Meruins arriall and recoverie of Mermont : 4 Meruins exploits in the battell : 5 his second delinerie of Mermont, and other accidents. chap. 14

The honours Mermont did to Meruine : 2 Meruine made chamberlaine of the Court : 3 Gratiana for his sake made lady of the chamber of Berea with other accidents. chap. 15

The priuate discourse betweene Marant and Berea, and of her answere : 2 how she came to the understanding of Marants enuie to Meruine : 3 the treason he intended, which he had procured Calix, his cosin to execute. chap. 16

Berea biding her selfe, came to understand the treason : 2 her reuealing it to Drohes chalengeth Calix before the king, and pawneth his gage. chap. 17

King Mermont went to the forrest to find out Meruine : 2 the occasion and maner of his finding : 3 how he brought him to Montment, &c. chap. 18

Of Pimons embassage from Esclamart to Baucamont, touching the fourre sonnes of Gaultier of Denmarke : 2 and how

# The table.

how the peace was concluded betweene Mermont and Baucamont. chap. 19

Florion the youngest brother was taken prisoner by king Bandus : 2 how the pagans were ouerthownde : 3 how Florion was given in exchange for king Goham Gaifiers brother. chap. 20

King Mermont, Baucamont, Meruine, and 200000. pagans arrived before Damascus : 2 the losse the Christians received by the valour of Meruine. chap. 21

The Christians were vanquished by Meruine : 2 how Guyon, Bertran, Thyerrie, Florion and Huon of Burdeaux were taken prisoners, & carried to Damascus. chap. 22

Charlemaine departing from France to see the holy sepulchre, arrived at Babylon, and was received of king Gaultier : 2 of the embassage two Pagans brought from Meruine and Gaudisse : 3 a counsell holden by the Christians, who remayned day of king Karaheu, of Florion, &c. chap. 23

Charlemaine and all the Christian army sallied out of Babylon : 2 of the great battell : 3 and how Meruine slew Guyon of Denmarke his unknowne uncle : 4 how Charlemaine, Gaultier, and the twelue peers were taken prisoners, and their army discomfited. chap. 24

Meruine and the pagan hoste came before Ierusalem : 2 how the Citizens rendred up the towne, &c. chap. 25

Meruine would not consent to the death of the Christians : 2 the great battell which fell out in the palacie : 3 how the Christians aided Meruine, and how the pagans came and cried him mercie. chap. 26

Meruine departing from Babylon brought Charlemaine and the other Christians to the castle of Turgon : 2 of the apparition of the Angell unto Charles : 3 how Meruine knew himselfe to be the sonne of Oger, and the Fairie Morgue. chap. 27

Meruine delivered Charlemaine and the twelue peers : 2 how Drohes instructed him in the points of religion : 3 how Berea

# The table.

Bere was baptizid with the rest of the city, and was named Mathaburna.

That by meanes of Guyda the daughter of Baucamont, Chap. 38  
Bertran and his brothers escaped imprisonment: how king Bandus dangerously assailed them, and how they wonderfully defended themselves.

How Meruine after the conquest of many cities went to Chap. 29  
Damascus to deliuer the fourre bretbren, &c.

The Pagans were ouerthronne, and the Christians went Chap. 30  
and conuerted Damascus, &c.

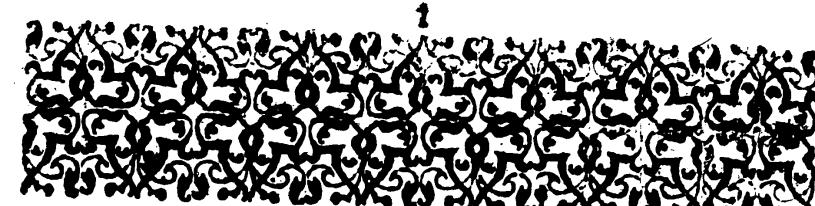
Mermont by treason brought Meruin to Minor: how Chap. 31  
Gaultier after the departure of Meruine went with all his army to Montment, where he found Mathaburna, to whom he told how her father was become a Christian, &c.

How Meruin was traiterously imprisond, and the description thereof: how by the perswasion of Mermont Butor went with an hundred thousand pagans to Montment: how Minca aduertised Gaultier and the other christians. Chap. 32

Minca aduertised Gaultier and the other christians. Chap. 33,



The



## The most ancient famous mother of Histories, the exquisite Historic of

Prince MERVINE, the sonne of OGER the Dane,  
who conquered Jerusalem, Babylon, and di-  
vers other Cities from the Pagans,  
with many memorabile accidents of  
wondrous consequence.

### CHAP. I.

The famous History of the noble and valiant knight  
Meruine, 1 and first of his birth, 2 and the gifts  
giuen him by the Fairies.



¶ Du may read in the historie making mention of Oger duke of Denmarke (a country neare adioyning unto France) how that after by his prouesse he had conquered from the Turks, Pagans, and Infidels, Babylon, Jerusalem, and many other townes: (conuictes impugning our holy Christian faith) bee the same Oger greate hartened with desire to retorne to the fifteth towney of France, whiche that he might with more facility souldisse he betake himselfe to the See, where the Synode founed is contrary to his intent 3: that by violent rage therof he was carried (as saith the Historie) unto the Patriarche, whiche he insidiously suruined. To secound in unto all that was done by Oger in his lifetyme, should make a long discourse:

## 2 The first part of

discourse much too long, and finish vp my booke onely with descriptions. But many tedious nights and daies had not runne out the labouring circuit of their minutes, before the beautiful Morgue, sister to king Artus, became all entangled with his loue, and by the excellencie of her subtill skill intangled him almythor more with her affection, in so vehement sort, that the Lady who was passing wise, prophet like knowing what in after time should besall them two, purchased so much her own blessednes, that she was carnally accompanied of the god duke Oger, & that in so god an houre, that by the prouidence of the Highest, she became with child, the very sight wherof added an unspeakable ioy to the heart of Oger: and all the fairies of princely estimation, holding a counsell amongst themselves, said one to another: Now, and not too sonne, is it sufficiently apparant that the Fairie Morgue hath not euer in unprofitable slumber consumed her time with Oger, because by her waking dede she hath given testimony to vs all, that now she hath conceiued, and is great with childe. If it proues a sonne, it is reason that for his chivaltrie hee be more esteemed than any living in his time, because his birth is more honorabile than any of former age hath bin. Thus argued the Fairies about Morgue their companion, who naturally bare her fruit nine moneths, and in the extreme end of the last, with great trauell she was deliuered of a beautifull sonne, such, and so faire, as vntill then had not any eye beheld. To his birth came many haughty and excelling Fairie dames, who beholding the eie-inchanting beauty of the Babe, blessed it, and gaue it to the mother, who with an overfowling heart tide-full of most deare affection, seeing his incomparable features, wherein trus beautie had onely sinowne to helpe his habitation, kissed and re-kissed it, as if numberlesse salutes should make his happy fortunes numberlese in ac-  
count, and then lifting her eies to heauen, thus o; in this maner

## 3 the history of Meruine.

maner prayed: True God of glory quoth she, I humbly imploze and require thee, that of thy holy bountie thou wile bestow such or so much more diuine spirite, puissance, and true magnanimitie on this Babe, happily begotten on me, as thou didst inspire in my deare loue Oger, his princely lord and fater, and that he may alonely resemble or exceed him in the gloriouſ actions of euerliving knighthode. So sweetly spake Morgue these sweet orisons that the God of heauen exhaled her prayers, and registered in the receptory of the skie, that he should become the most redoubted in the world. After came king Artus into the chamber of the Lady, with him Oger and many other barons, to see the new childe: at whose approach came to Oger a fairie Lady, whose being of a gloriouſ and renowned spirite, was famous for her vertues thowz the Fairie land: her name was Meruina, and she said vnto him, God duke of Denmarke honour me in giuing my name vnto thy sonne, and make me eternally happy, by being his happy godmother. Saſy qd Oger, I consent. After these speaches was the infant bat-  
tled to be baptised, and was named Meruin; Artus and Oriant, two mighty kings being his godfathers: who after the sacrament performed, gaue him rich gifts.

2 Which so sonne as Meruina perceived, she said vnto them: By Lords, you haue enriched this infant with the treasure of this world, but I will make him wealthy with the jewels of Heauen. Your gifts handmaids to Fortune, by mischance may fli from him: my gift the controller of Denide, shall so no decree for sake him. I will therefore, contrary willis my gift, for I giue my will, that he be ever loueth in the eyes of all creatures, and especially amongst Ladies, who during his life, shall hold him dearer than their owne liues. At these speaches the Fairie Gratiana, (who all the while leaned on the fountain) grew wroth,

## The first part of

as well for enuy of the giftes given to the little Meruine, as for a private indignation that she bare vnto Morgue, in that she had not enjoyed some of those silent night-pleasing delights, which she enjoyed with her excellent Oger, and therefore answering an batuned thought with an high iarring voyce, saide: And I ston that great God which created the universall, and man to his owne image, givē him this gift, that Meruine shal faille in the assault of one battell, and be taken prisoner with such endamagement, that no sortitude shall ever release him, till a man whose mother died in her childbirthe be his delivrer. Such words as these uttered the false fairey Gratiāna, which effected according to her wish, because he was delivred (as saith the Hystory) from Minor, with whom he was due peers prisoner, by Robartus, as shal hereafter appear in processe of the story. Meruine hearing Gratiānaes hate-bowting words, she grew exceeding sorowfull, till sorow comming to rage, made her with her fist givē Gratiāna such a blowe on her face, that the bloud which shoulde haue made her cheeks blushing, now sought to drown the arth so sustaining her. This tumult bared tumults among the Fairies, nurced with a world of evills on the noble Christians. Dispitfully sad was Gratiāna for the blow receivēd, but in regard at that instant she could not do what she woulde (tutored by patience) she woulde not what she woulde, yet in her soule made a solemn protestation solemnly to reuenge her iniurie, as indeed she did. After a faire named Galiana, deare to mollise the angry Meruine, came to her, saying, What sister, why shoulde fury haue such furious superiortie in thy faire selfe, as to barbe thy hand in a bloody ocean? Believe me, deare creature, thou shouldest rather to haue walte with patience in white lillies: but be walde, appease thy anger, and I will givē to thy little sonne a gift shal sweep away all thy woes; and this is to what pryncesse, lady of Iwanian

## the history of Meruine.

woman in the world he shal daine to kisse, that and the selfe same ioy that she possesse by that outward embracement, as if he had consumed whole nights in those pleasures, which to nature is only private: and sith I am ascertained he shal be furnishē with incomparable valure, I givē him this gift, that he shal never be slaine or vanquisht in private or publike battell: and when he hath liued till marriage hath made him father of a sonne of twelue yeares old, then my will is that he returne into Fairia, and having kisst me before all the Ladies of our land, make me his especiall loue, who neuer had nor will haue any till his returne. When Merubnaes eare s had receivēd the musickē of Galianaes speach, she gaue her infinite thanks, and caused king Arthus, king Orient, and all the lady Fairies to doe the like, only Gratiāna excepted, who stood sorrowfully dumbe for her blowe receivēd. The childe (as you haue heard) was baptizēd, and rebrought into the Chamber of his mother, who notwithstanding the torment of her trauell, yet thorow the loue of her faire infant, she forgate the exceeding passion of her more than great sorow: and when the Ladies came in, they found her fast aspe, whom they bringē loth to awake from out her slumber, they gently laid the childe in her bosome, and so departed without any noise making, onely the false fairey Gratiāna staid behinde, who had a longing desire to imbesell the infant Meruine, of whom the other Fairies had no regard, neither that she staid under any false intent: but when al the Ladies were gone, unkind Gratiāna took little Meruine from his mothers breastes, and holding her in her armes, said, Now doe I woulde, and I woulde I were in the selfe same maner that at this present I am, at the port of Luterne, which standeth vpon the Seea: and so soone as ever she had spoken, instantly she and the infant were in the same place, whence issued the never to be abated sorow of Morgue: when she awakēd and found not by her the best

# The first part of

of her deare selfe, I meane her deare Meruin. Whereupon  
she demaidev of her attendants whether he had bin broght  
backe vnto her, or no: Yes Mavam, said one of them, Ma-  
dam Meruina his godmoother, laid him close by your selfe.  
Alas said Morgue, and where is he then become? Then  
began the godd Lady greatly to lament, and to poure such  
uncontrolled oceans of teares from the heauenly windows  
of her eies, that the roaring tempests of her languor was  
easily heard of Artus her brother, Orient, Oger and all the  
Fairie Ladies, who incontinently rusht into her chamber,  
the renowned Oger asking her what she ailed, auouing  
that the greatest monarch in the world should not dare to  
do hit that wryng, which his sword shold not redeliver  
and reuenge. Then her attendants (for dumbe sorow kept  
her silent) tolde him how Gratiana whom Meruina had  
striken, in reuenge of her disgrace had stollen the childe,  
and borne him to some vnhabitable climate. Oger hear-  
ring this, gaue displeasure leau to tyzannize vpon his hart,  
and by the grædinesse of his passion robbed his loue the fa-  
rie Morgue of some of her lamentations: for after conside-  
ration had recalled her reason, and hope assured her that no  
power world unworthily be against her, she gaue a comma  
(thoug no period) to her mourning, and recomforsted her  
only lord Oger with this or like oratores: Oger my loue  
said she, that divine power which hath sent vs Meruine,  
will (if it please him) preserue our Meruine, and when the  
winter daies of our extreme fortunes hath fully bound vp  
our hopes in frozen ribs of ice, we shall againe regreet the  
cherefull Aprill of our Summer loyes, and gather new  
blossoms from our drowned plants. Thus spake Morgue  
to the god Oger, whom we will leau, and speake of the  
Fairie Gratiana, who (as you haue heard) carried away  
Meruine.

# the history of Meruine.

## CHAP. II.

- 1 How the Fairie Gratiana repented her selfe for the carrying away of Meruine, 2 how she found a hermit keeping three goats, 3 how he shewed her the way to find the port of the sea.

 Gratiana (by her will) sodainely arrived in a  
wood neigbouring the port of Luterne, but  
being in a place so desolately solitary, taintey-  
with remorse in her owne conscience, heartily  
she repented herselfe, as well for hauing stol-  
len the only hope of that age, prince Meruine, as also for  
hauing exiled her selfe from Fairia her native Countrey:  
Wherfore desirous to returne, and holding the instant in hit  
armes, she said, Now do I wish (and be my wish available  
for my woes sake) would I were in Fairia in mine owne  
pallace, so, and in such maner, that I neither doe nor shall  
need aske pardon for my misdeed. Thus spake reuengefull  
Gratiana: but the strok replied, that because she had re-  
uenged her selfe by her unlawfull stealth, the God of the  
Christians grewe offendid with her, and took from her both  
her power of wishes and wishing: which when the Fairie  
perceiued, she fell on her knees and said, alas, only merciful  
God, I know I haue greuously offendid against thee, yet  
not withstanding thy pity greater than thy power, may par-  
don my misdeed, which both repents and displeaseth me, and  
then turnd she her spach to Meruine, saying; Ay me, sweet  
childe,

## 8 The first part of

childe, that mine offence is thine infancie hath lost me the delight of my life, and yet shall the burden of moe then my sorrow ( unlesse some gracious power preuent ) bee boorne on thy tender shouders: woe is me, what had I in my head when I conceived this wickednesse against thee, nothing but euill: yet despight these euils ought some god thing befall me in that I will nourish the childe so long as I shalbe able with such aches as God or fortune shall send me.

2. Gratiana in this manner repenting her selfe, rose vp, and beganne to go to a dally beneath the wood, with the infant in her armes, and in her passage a long, she perceiued a holy hermit, who reposed hymselfe in the same wood, keeping thre goates in that forrest. When the Fairie came nere him she saluted hym, and sayd, Grawe wise man (for so thy white haire, heralds of experiance, tell me) where, I pray the, standeth the next towne or village? where may I find any woman to giue sucke to this faire childe, which is almost pined to death with extreme hunger, whilste, alas, I haue nothing to giue it but my teares, to unsauoye a ffrrop for so princely a taste. Hardly had she ended this last word, but by the will of some almighty willer, one of the thre goates left the hermit, and came to the Lady, making not bestiall, but rather riuine signes, that she would suckle thinfant: which the Fairie ouerjoyd to beheld, thanked God, and kissing the babe, laid it on the giound, and the goat placed hymselfe nere to the childe, that it might quietly suck, for such was the wil of the Greatest. When the hermit saw this myracle, and saw dñe characie much greater than Nature, haue rulynge in a simple goat, grew much abashed, asking the Fairie if she were a Christian. Father (qd she) I am a true Christian: and then she began to discourse unto him all the story of her euill, how she had stolne Meruine, and for that cause, briefly to speake, she told him from point to point all before written.

## the historic of Meruine.

written. Whilste the hermit sate amazed, and many times signed hymselfe with the croesse, in token of wonder, then sayd he vnto her: Fairie loue, know that I am a baptised Christian, living in this forrest yet are all the inhabitants of this climated none other but pagans and Insidels, which neither louenes, adore the name of Christ Iesus: and therfore to them you may be circumspect in your affaires, know that if you confess your selfe a Christian, you and this faire childe shall die the death.

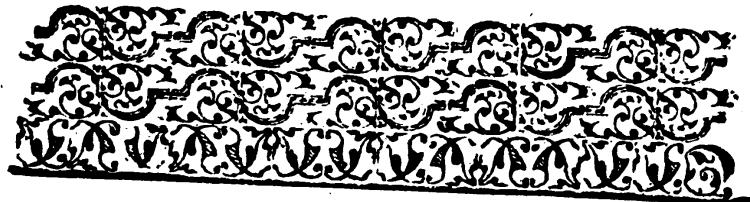
3. Therefore be wisely warie, and I will shew thee the way which leadeth to the port Luterne, where arine many marchants of forren lands: and to the end that this faire creature, which you name Meruine, shall sustaine no want, I will giue you the goate which hath offered it selfe vnto him: for such is the will of him that willeth all goodnesse. After this speach, the hermit, named Crespin, which all his tyme had bene holy, and holy Crespin intituled, having shewed her the port, tooke leave, and Gratiana adzed her selfe to her way, commanding to God her and her intention. So parted they, the Fairie carrying the child, and the goat attening both: at length she came vnto the port where she perceiued a small barks, that with hoised sailes was euuen then in departing: whereupon she cried, Lordes, for Mahomet and his temple Mecas sake, stay, and let me passe with you. When the master vnderstood her, and that she spake of Mahomer: (for they were Paimins) he replied, Haste thee then loue, and if thou haste, we will stay a little for the. At these words the Fairie added such wings to her feet, that immediatly she entred into the ship, and with her entrance the ship departed, plowing so spedily through the furrows of the salt wanes, that in shart space Gratiana perceiued a verie faire cittie. Gentlemen (sayd she to the pagans) I perceive yonder beloue a very strong citie, I pray you tell me what towne

10  
The first part of

it is, whether it be Christian or Pagan? When the jealous Pagans heard the demand of the Fairie ladie, they mistrusted in themselves that she was a Christian: wherefore one of them fiercely answered her: Ladie, art thou a Christian, or one of our law? Neverend sir (sayd she) I was never Christian, but am a Pagan. Then one who was of Montment, by calling a merchant, amazedly viewed, and often reuiewed Meruine, whom the ostener he beheld, the ostener he saw his beauties redouble. Whereupon inamored of the infants perfection, he came to the ladie, and asked her if she would sell her child? In god faith ( quoth the Fairie) no: for it is the sonne of my sister: for whose love (so farre as I am able, if Mahomet give me leaue) I will carefully nourish it. Madam (sayd this merchant, whose name was Barbin) from what countrey is your journey derived? Sir (sayd she) from Antioch, where infinite misfortune hath chanced to my kindred, who haue beene traiterously slaine by a false Christian, on whom I beseech Mahomet raine an eternall curse: for he hath despoiled mee of all my goods, and left me no comfort, but this sillie infant, my nephew, whom by the diuine ayd of Mahound I nourish, that he may be my glorie in my decaying and ruined age.

CHAP.

11  
the historic of Meruine.



CHAP. III.

1. The Fairie Gratianna accorded to the desire of Barbin
2. Barbin carried her to Montment unto his house.
3. How he made his wife beleue that Meruine was his sonne.



Arbin the Pagan finding the Fairy would by no meanes sell the princely Meruine, yet inly beholding the necessitie wherein she stood, sayd unto her, What age ( deare lady ) hath this childe aspired unto? By Mahomet ( answered she ) it hath not fully accomplished three dayes. Trust me ( sayd the Pagan ) if you will goe with me unto Montment, you shall be so well intreated as your degree requireth, and your childe nourished according to the excellencies of his beauty: onely to one thing you must accord, which though it carrie falsehood in the forehead, yet shall it keepe danger from your heart: and that is, to affirme this childe is mine: for which report I will raine showers of golde and siluer into your bosome, & guard your person and fortunes safer then the waking dragons the Hesperian Cytrons. To these wordes Gratianna inclined her eares, whilist her thoughts to her thoughts thus whispered: Since it please the God of heauen, and that destinie is my director, euen as I haue stollen this most excellent infant ( for which I know I haue grievously sinned, lost my freedom, and am utterly banisht from those dignities I enjoyed

## The first part of

as being a Fairie) so will I now doe my greatest endeour  
for this princely orphant. And so I know nothing in me to  
reobteine my losse, I will what he will, more bequeathing  
our fortunes into the hands of God then according to the de-  
sire of this Pagan: and then exalting her words which be-  
fore were silent, she said: Faire Sir, from whom I behold a  
divine affection, issuing unto my forsaken nephew: tell me,  
are you married, or no? Madam, I am (sayd he) and haue  
sonne, not far from hence, whose name is Tirus Sir (quoth  
she) since it pleaseth you to offer vs the god wee can desire,  
we will euer obey you, and go where you shall please to di-  
pose vs. In such discourse as this they consumed the night  
till the next morning, who had no sooner saluted the Sun, but  
they arruied on the shoare, impouerishing the shippes to make  
the land more wealthie.

2 Barbin and Gratiana bearing the little Meruine in  
her armes, marched together, and the goate followed them,  
the which whensoeuer the childe cried, was readie with her  
dugge to appease his weeping. And as they went Barbin  
sayd vnto her: Exceedingly am I delighted with the beau-  
tie of this infant, therefore deare ladie forget not to affirme  
as you haue promised. Of that she bade him take no care, for  
her care shoulde be, that no fault shoulde issue from her but  
carefullnesse. He highly commended her answere, and then  
furthir sayd: Ladie, diuers discourses haue I had with you,  
and yet haue I not demanded the name of this childe: let it  
not then be offensive that I now importune it. Sir (quoth  
she) he is called Meruin, and so shall you name him in your  
owne house, when you come to your wife: but woe is me, a  
mighty suspition throbeth in mine heart, lest your wife  
should imagine you haue begot this childe of me, and so by  
that meanes turne an undeserned wrong vpon my life. Lady  
(sayd

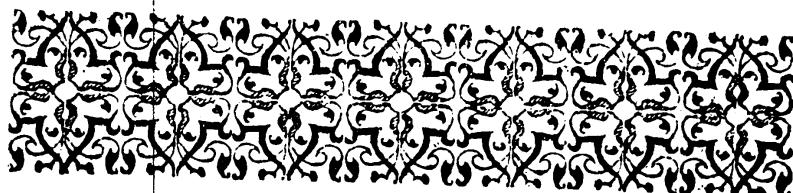
## the historie of Meruine.

(said he) abandon that suspition, and be dreadlesse of such e-  
uill: for my wife by nature is so simple, that in an hundred  
yeares, she would not be mistresse of such an imagination:  
trust me, she is none of thosse diuellish creatures, who ouer-  
looke the fortunes of their husbands, but only wise, in that  
she wants the depth of such in-searching wisedome. In this  
sort, clipping Times wings with the tediousnesse of talke.  
they entered into the faire City of Montment, in whose  
streetes Barbin stayed not, till he came to his owne house,  
where he found his wife, who ouer-joyed with the toy of his  
sight, ranne and threw her armes about his necke, saying:  
Sweet loue, deare life, all my comforter, welcome all wel-  
come: that I see thes I am satisfied: and thy life sufficeth  
me. Loue (said he) thanks to Mahomet, I live, and haue  
happily well made exchange of my marchandise: for I haue  
brought home splices, drugges, and oiles, and with them ri-  
cher much than all them, this faire child, and this yong la-  
die, whose birth is renowned, yet her vertues much more  
magnificent: therefore for my loues sake, do to her and her  
vertues seruice. Sir (said his wife) haue you indeed brought  
home this infant?

3 By Mahomet (said he) I haue, neither wil I differ-  
ble with thee, he is mine owne, begot by me of a yong lady  
of Milan in Lumbardy, who was triumphant faire, for faire  
in her only triumphed, but in this childe vntill she died: and  
here behold her sister, who hath promised to liue with me.  
Wherfore sweet loue and ouely companion of my bed, be  
kinde to it, which is the glory of my kinde, neither let them  
want what is behouefull for their extremities. Also let my  
sonne Tirus know as much, because he is his brother, and  
commende him to come vnto me. Loue (said he) for a trueth,  
thy sonne is at the schole, but no sooner shall the morning  
prepare way for the sunnes beams, but I will send for him

# 14 The first part of

unto thée : meane space I hold it conuenient we seeke for some nurse for this faire infant. But he tolde her it was needesse, because that gentle goat supplied the place of such a louing foster-mother. All that hee tolde her she believed. So the Fairie and Meruine remained in the house of that merchant, and was nursed with the milke of the goate: for such was the prouidence of the Greatest, who had p<sup>r</sup>edestinated him to conquer a monster with three heads, named Logrus, which was begot by a diuell on the fairy Gratiana: which diuell made earnest petition, that this Logrus shoulde never die, but by a mo<sup>r</sup>fall man, that never was nourished with the milke of a woman: for he thought it impossible to bring vp a childe without womans milke. But the gentle Meruine, whose fame is renowned in the marble armament, slew him, and cut off his three heads: as ye shal read in the end of this present history: till when we will returne to our former matter.



## CHAP. IIII.

1. Berea daughter of the King of Meurm<sup>ont</sup>, fel in loue with Meruine, being at schoole. 2. Of the loue-paine she indured. 3. and other accidents.



Ur present historie, whch anciellty hath been extacted out of the Librarie in the hclie monastery of Saint Dennis in France, demonstrateth, that Meruine the sonne of the wise excelling Duke Oger, was so rarely nursed

by

# 15 the historic of Meruine.

by the goat, and so carefullly maintained by Barbin and his wife, that among al the breathing staires of beauty within the city of Montment, nor amongst all the excellent faces of that countrey, was there found any worthy to be compared to his, much leſſe equall. Being fwe yeaſes olde, Barbin prouided him a graue ſcholēmaſter, exactly furnished with all the liberall ſciences: vnder whom the gentle Meruine (to whom Nature was neuer found a ſtepmother) learned more than all the reſt (and there were many) that were in the ſchoole. All which made Barbin, his wife, and the faire Gratiana exceeding ioyfull. The ſtorie ſaieth, that the house of the ſcholēmaſter, vnder whom Meruine learned the ſtudies of Dratorie and Logike stood next to the house of the mother of her, who had nurſed the Kings daughter, who at that time gouerned Montment, Carrarie, and Luſterne, who called hūſelſe, Mermont, and his wife Marina. This king Mermont, had ſent his daughter to a caſtle ealled Turgon, ſtanding within the citie, where a graue lady inſtructed her in all the accomplitments of vertue: the name of the priuycelle was Berea, excelling all the maiden race of that country in beauty, yet her wiſedome eſqualling her faireneſſe, but her vertues excelling both. This virgine Berea often times went vnto Meruines ſcholēmaſter, to learne the hidden ſecrets of Art (for he was wholly dedicated to phiſophy) & one day (ſatall aboue the reſt) as Meruine was before his master recording his leſſon, the virgine with an affectionate deſire (for Loue at that iſtant had armed himſelſe to ſurprize Perſection, call her eies vp on him, whose beauty in her eies like the Sunne reflecting on a rocke of cristall, redoubled each feature, and of buttons made ſo many infinites, that her deſire grew more innumerable, and loues wounds in her hart altogether numberles.

2. At that iſtant the princely maid was not aboue ten yeaſes

## The first part of

yeares old, and Meruine was fally as much: yet was her constancie, discretion and wisedome so agedly graue, and of so excellent a temper, that albeit continually she suffered the extreamest extreme of loues martyrdome, as a troubled thought, a tormented heart, a distempered braine, and a dying spirit, yet did she never in any sort, either to her father, mother, or most priuate companion, by the smallest shadowe give testimony of her hugest torment: notwithstanding, when loueliness drew her selfe from her selfe, only to be alone, then would she summon her conceits, and muster vp whole armies of cogitations, to think, confirme, and maintaine the beauties of her Meruine, and to every conclusiue argument, swore by Mahomet, he only shold be her leue: yet had she no sooner decreed that excellent iudgement, but when she remembred him to be the son of Barbin the merchant, then found she contrary motions, awowing faultines in her election. But loue, who is as reasonlesse as he is infi- nit, drew her from those doubts, and only taught her thus, I wil, because I must. When was her loue such & so great, that so; the space of tennie dayes she left the vse of meate or drinke, and found no ease but in the sight of Meruine, so intollerable was her frensie, and so impatient her desire, desiring Meruine, who all the while had not one thought of either her, or of her passion: only when he perceiued her eternall regard of him, he being full of princely curtesie, would humbly salute her. All which salutations were tormentis to increase her paine and woes that held her wounds more open: for why, she durst not discover that, which all her wits could hardly couer, no though in it she had beene assured of a fasse recouerie.

3 Thus remained she the space of ffe yeres: in thend whereof came an ambassadour to Montmont, who ascended the pallace, and entering the hall, where he found the mighty

## the historie of Meruine.

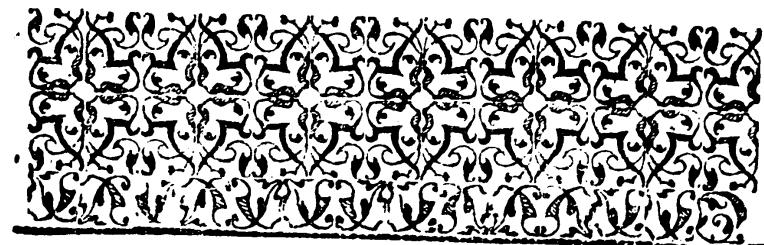
mighty King Mermont accompanied with his Queene, his princely daughter Berea, and many of his priuate Barons, before whome prostrate on his knees he fell and said: Mahomet the Great, all-holder of our estate, saue and de- send the mighty Baucamont King of Damas, who by mee wisheth thee health, and thine owne wishes, regreting thy puissance with this letter, which I humbly intreat thy ma- iestie to accept. When the redoubted King Mermont heard the speech of the embassadour, hee stood amazed to thinke what busynesse Baucamont shold haue with him: but taking the letter, and breaking open the seale, he read the tenure thereof, which instantly sent a displeasing sor- row to his heart, because the King of Damas in person, wordes commaunded his daughter the faire Berea in mar- riage. But Mermont calling the messenger saide: By Mahomet, thy maister is much too saucy and arrogant to commaund me to give him my daughter; the which notwithstanding her yong yeares I had done, but that in de- spite he hath sent so meane an embassade for her. Wherefore be wel ascertained, he shall never possesse her, though it cost me a hund red thousand of my choyest subiects. Is there any colourable shew in thy maister, to marry my daughter, when he sendeth no greater a peere of his countrey then thy selfe to deviaund her? But what he hath done is but an in- dex of the pride with which his heart is furnished; say so to him, for if I shal so laist it not, & what besides else I haue said, by Mahomet in despite of thy King, I will make thy head pore, in taking away thine ears, two daul auditors. Mighty King, answered the messenger ( whose feare-shaken heart made all his body tremble ) be well assured I will deliver all that you haue spoken, or what else your maiestie shall please to commaund me. Be gone then ( quoth the King ) and bid thy maister seeke him a wife in som other clunie: for Berea soareth higher then the sunne hath power to carry his

## The first part of

his eiesight. Thus parted the messenger, on whom no rest either by night or day dared to aduenture till he came before Baucamont his Lord and Soveraigne, to whom he saide: By Apollo, great King of Damas and my liege Lord, in vaine is thy care to entertaine loue, when thou hast lost Berea, whose eies onely create loue: in briese, her must thou neuer enjoy, for so her father hath sworne, nor I in despight of thē mine eares, unlesse I tell thee that so he hath sworne. More would not Baucamont endure to heate, but all enraged with fury, swore by Dahomer, Alcheron, and the Shrine of Specia, hee would enjoy Berea, yea though thē wers the sole paramour to Iupiter, or garded with an Herculean army: all whiche to performe, hee instantly sent forth summons to muster all his people, and to commaund all his tributaries to serue him, protestinge with force of armes to finde that ioy which by force of words he could not enjoy. But only to deserty are the decaes of heauen knownen, for he erred in his conceits, wherinto the world was borne a creature excellent enoughe to defend Berea, I meane rarely accomplished Meruine the sonne of Oger, supposed the sonne of Barbin, who at that instant was growne mighty in body, moxe in minde, most in beauty. Barbin who tended him exceedingly, shewed him the trade of marchandise, and how to exchange for the greatest profit: but the bent of his minde was contrary to that course, for his minde wholly was addicted to ride horses, tolle pikes, plant battels, and other seates of famous chualtrie, to whiche a while we will leauue him, and will speake of the king Mermont.

## CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. V.

1. Mermont the king proclaimeth a great Iust for triall of his Knights. 2. Meruine doth great wonders.



When the King of Damas Embassadour was departed, þ mighty King Mermont (not without cause) fearing that Baucamont would make warre upon him, proclaimed a soleinne tourneament to be held within the citie of Montment, for triall of all his knights, wher he assembled an innumerable company of kings, princes, barons, and knights, all subiects vnto him; amongest the rest came a wealthy Prince named Clarissa much more behoden to Fortune for his riches, then to nature for his valure: for though he was not reputed a coward, yet those which knew him knew he durst not fight. This Clarissa lodged in the house of Barbin. And when the first day of triunphes came, whiche by decaes were to continue thre dayes, and a massie cuppe of golde proposed for a prize to the Victor, every one armed himselfe, and Clarissa also armed himselfe outwardly more rich then any, though inwardly his heart was tattered with a triste resolucioun. When Meruine beheld him armed, he humbly intreated the Wagan that hee might attend his person to the Tilt-yard. Clarissa when he beheld through the reflexion of the yong mans beuty an unmatched splendor of concealed valure, he exchanged his feare to hopefull auda-

## The first part of

audacie and condescended to his intreaty, desiring the yout that if he sawe (as doubtlesse he shold) any colde streames of fountaines engirdle his temple, that he would seeke with the fire of his infant vertue to drie vp those vndesiring ouerflowes. Meruine coragiously bade him take courage, for there was no doubt of hard measure, onely (saide he) it is conuenient that I haue a hōse to runne after you, by which I may sustaine you in the greatest danger: sweete are thy words and reasonable (answered Clarissa) and forthwith commaunded, and a hōse was deliuered to Meruine, on which hee mounted and attended Clarissa, of whomie spatures were not spared till he came to the tilt-yarl. When the Lady virgin Berea, who was enuioned with her mother and the other Ladies beheld the gallant yong Meruine enter into the lists, her heart daunced in her crissall boosome, as if not there, but in him was her onely paradise. Alas she loued him dearely, who neglected her wholly, and often whispered to her soule, so Mahomet wold, I wold Meruine, to whom onely I am a prisoner, whose beautie onely hath surprised mine affection, were the sonne of some pagan potentate, then wold I follow him, then wold I be his handmaide then wold I serue him, then wold I go with him; but if hee wold espouse me, O my soule! how happy were my loue in such a happy requitall, other then himselfe no goddesse wold wch for: for poverty with him is richer then the pallace of the greatest Emperour in Turkie. Thus wold the excellent Berea often dispute with her selfe, imagining Meruine still the sonne of Barnbin the merchant. Anone the tourney beganne, where staues flew in the atre like dust, and dust like smoakie daues threatened the element; at length a pagan fierce and strong ranne with his launce in his test against Clarissa, to whom he gaue such an unkinde blow, that had not yong Meruine bin he had tumbled to the ground; but the princely yonthes vertue

## the historie of Meruine.

vertue sustaine him, yet so heauy was the incounter, that Clarissa as much or more scared than wounded, returned to his lodging, where being disarmed, hee laide that heauie complaint on Fortune which iustly shold haue bin intituled to his owne weaknes. Meruine seeing him disarmed, his heart tickled, and his blood fisted with an emulation of honour, which set an insatiatiue longing on his thoughts to giue some blowes and to proue his bodie: wherefore hee fell vpon his knes to Clarissa and saide, I beseech you faire prince, for the honor of Mahomet, beslow your armes vpon me, to the end I may goe to the triumph, and approue my strength. And here do I solemnly protest, that if I can incounter him whose proud arme hath dained you this indignitie, to do mine uttermost indeuour, to humble him as low or lower then the earth. After Clarissa with a stonishment had heard the yong prince's desire, he willingly accorded to his wish: yet so, that Meruine shold not accuse him: but when the Tolls were ended, if Fortune made him conquerour, he shold leaue the honour, not to himselfe, but to Clarissa. Meruine to all most willingly agreed, saying further: Belaue mee prince, I will do my best to gaine the wealthy cup of the King, which also you shall haue for my desire is knowledge, no honour. At this Clarissa commaunded his chamberlaine to arme Meruine with his owne armes, which hee so secretly did, that the squires of Clarissa knew it not. When he was armed, they brought him a most puissant and fierce courser, on which he mounted, and so departed, attended on by many squires, who fully imagined him to be their Lord Clarissa, who slept in his chamber like a dyomedary with his cowardise. Meruine, whose spurres were Honour, and Desire, rode so speedily that in the end hee entred the lists, where valiantly hee meant to winne or conquere his fortune.

## The first part of

<sup>2</sup> In the end charging his launce, he ran like a whirlewind against him who had hurt Clarissa: to whom he gaue a reuall blow, with such puissance, that he cast horse and man to the ground, so furiously, as so fiftene dayes after he lay without motion. Then another Pagan of his consort, turned towardes Meruine, on whom he brake his launce: but Meruine, who tooke pleasure in that martiell exercise, behaued himselfe with such vertue, that with the trunchion which remained in his hand, he gaue him such a counterbuffe, that breaking his heart in his bosome, the Pagan died instantly in the place. What shall I neede to make a tedious discourse of a hastis conflict? In brieve, Meruine so couragiouly behaued himselfe, that ere his thoughts could be capable of rest, with his broken launce he threwe fenne to the ground, of which not one euer rose againe, to the wondrouz amazement of all the beholders. Then began the crie of the multitude, to exalt him, thinking it had bin Clarissa, every one exclaiming aloude, Clarissa of Affrike is he who ought onely to be esteemed. At this exclamation, a Pagan on whose helme all the day before Honour late twining her golden tresses, now envious that Clarissa had courted his mistresse, swoze by Mahomet, he shoule never enjoy her fauour: and so forthwith pricked towardes Meruine, who had newly recovered a launce from one of his squires, and turning his horse, either incountered other with such a violent incounter, that their staves flying into small pieces, strake which piece should first lie into heauen to report never like scene vigour. But for all the Pagans force, it was impossible to moue Meruine in his saddle, who sat like a tower against a tempest, or a rocke against the rage of the seas furie. But Meruins assault of a cleane contrary nature, lift the Pagan uppe into the aire with his launce, and thence let him fall with such violence, that he brake his right arme: and yet Meruine brake not his staffe,

but

## the historie of Meruine.

but with the same ouerthrew sente more dead to the ground. At this began a greater crie amongst the knights, then before, saying: Clarissa of Affrike is onely invincible, and Conquell herselfe is to him a handmaid. Then the king caused a retreat, and the triumphes to cease, for so a king intreated: and euery one departed to his pavilion, and Meruine to his fathers house, with the squires of Clarissa: in whom ioy she had the exceedingnesse of ioy, because their lord had gained the honour of the day. But Meruine made great haste to come to the chamber, which he ascended in all secret maner, for he had an exceeding great care that Barbin shold not know any thing. When he was come there Clarissa lay solely accompanied with the chamberlaine, who before had deliveredd to Clarissa all what Meruine had done, he tooke him kindly about the necke, and kissing him, sayde: Mine honours crowne, and my lues garland, lieue cuer in this circle of mine armes, as thou shalt euer be in the compasse of my heart: for by thee am I renowned in the court of king Mermont, and exalted for most valiant thoro to the Pagan prouinces. <sup>¶</sup> Any other speches he vised of kindnes, all which Meruine either excused or requited. To stand longer on accomplements, were tedious, and tediousnesse wearinessse: therefore in a word, all the honour of the thre dayes triumphes, and the cup of golde, the reward of the victor, were by the valour of Meruine, giuen to Clarissa, as most wise, & most valiant. And he was received by the king Mermont, to beare in battell, if any assailed him, the mastersbanner of Mahomet. So had vnknownen resolution exalted well knownen cowardise: and though Meruine, in nothing was more carefull then in secret keping this secret, yet the most excellent virgin Berea afterward attainted the knowledge thereof by Clarissas chamberlaine, which after serued Meruine, who as you have heard, knightly beganne, and against Baumont continued with greater marueilous:

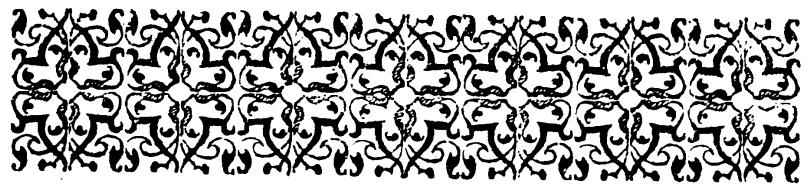
fo3

## 24 The first part of

for he recovered king Mermont from his enemies. But let vs leue those high actions, till they fall more fitly for our historie, and let vs a little speake of Barbin, who sent Meruine to traffique with another merchant, named Iacob, and with Tyrus his sonne, to whom he gaue great meanes for trade, and four thousand poundes, which he ought another merchant in exchange of wares he had before bought. Wher Iacob and the other merchant knewe Meruine shold gos with them, they were unwontedly rejoyced (for he was dearely beloued of all men) and sayd, if Mahomet would but grant them safe conduct, they doubted not, but now to attaine the full perfection of wealth. Then they departed, Meruine, his brother Tyrus, and the god merchant Iacob, to whom Barbin committed his children: for he had auowed to them his best endeouours: and at length came to the port, where being imbarke, they found the windes so agreeable to their course, that in short space, they all arrived at the port of Brandis, and went to lode at the signe of the Harts horne, where Iacob was accustomed to inne: and found the hostesse sitting sadde and alone at the doore, whom Iacob saluted, and inquired if he might there be lodged. The hostesse, whose name was Minea, answered: you may, and then sighed: for great was the inward trouble of her heart. Then the tables being couered they late downe: and the hostesse with regardfull eyes beheld Meruine, rarely surprised with the incomparable beautie, and wondroung furnishit lineaments of his body, which she beheld in him. But leue we them with their accates, and let vs speake of another matter.

CHAP:

## 25 the historic of Meruine



### CHAP. VI.

1 The great treason of Brohars agaist Basina sister to Minea. the great danger of Basina.



Inea the Ladie of the house where Iacob, Meruine, his brother Tirus, and the other marchants lay, had a sister named Basina, whose comely features, & well graced fauor, had not without desert purchased hir the title of a faire creature: besides, to those beauties was wed so much wisedome, discretion and modest governement, that one without error might well commend her for most perfect. This Basina had to husband a pagan, passing wise in their Lawe, and very expert in the Art of Horsemanship: who altogether frequented the warres, tourneys, and schoules of chivalry: his name was Croisant, and he imbraced as the onely ielwell of his life, one onely friend Brohars, whom he loued exceedingly, because he imagined the other loued him as vehemently, which in troth was but falsehood and dissimulation. For Brohars became mortally inamored with Basina, the wife of Croisant, insomuch as he made a bow to his owne seule, that vntesse Destiny it selfe preuented him, he would that forbiden fruit, which Nature, and the custome of divine Lawes most vehemently prohibith. To further which irreligious Dath, a day happened wherein Croisant went from his house in the

C

ctie

## The first part of

citie Montesteur, to a certaine tower himselfe had newly erected, and the traitorous Brohars taking aduantage of his absence, entered his house, where he found the Lady Basina, who received him kindly, because she shewed her husband loued him dearely, and setting his lust-inflamed selfe close by her, as then accompanied with vertuous imaginations, he with wittie (if wittie may be imputed to an act so vnwittie) and violent arguments, laid open the monstrous desire of his vncontroleld will: which when the Lady vnderstood a sooth in the meaning of so bad a meaning, she answered him, it was against the lawes of hospitalitie to offer so hard amonys so greate a merit, his speeches being as vnfit, and his desires frantike: and so her owne part, rather would she be diilmembred piece-meale, then think that her thoughts should thinke of any but her husband. Wherefore, in conclusion she told him, if euer againe his lips gaue leaue to his tongue to tell her the like villanie, she would giue notice vnto her husband, whos thenceforth shuld note him for most inhumane. Whiles they were thus discou sing, stood by them one of the gentlewomen of the Lady called Ysea, who not seeming to regard their parlee, wel watered and heard all they had vittered, as well his monstrous assault, as her modest defiance, all which was to her a notable safegard, as hereafter shall appeare. When Brohars had received this cold comfort to his accursed desire, hee left the Lady mightily perplexed in heart, and sware by Mahomet, to bring to ruine both her renoume and vertue. As the traitor went, he sommoned all the damned parliament of his senses together, to bethinke some notable treason against her, whiles the god Lady innocent of alleuill, wept to thinke that men shoulde be so wicked.

The stroy reports that this Brohars had a seruant named Brison, whom one day when Croisant was at Monte steur,

## the historie of Meruine.

steur, hee called vnto him, and sayde: Brison, come hither, long haue I nourisht thee, better then a seruant, and doe long thee as deare as my sonne: tell mee, to worke revenge of my greatest enemie, wouldest thou not aduenture one for tyme: say yea: Brison sayd yea. and I will heape so much treasure to thy store, that Turkie shall not boast of oure more wealthie. Sir ( quoth Brison ) I will performe all your will, let your will, will what it will: therefore speake, for there resteth nothing but that you commaund me. Well doeth thine answere please me ( replied Brohars:) then this it is, Basina the wife of my companion Croisant hath done mee that mintrie, which poiseth mine heart downe to death with sorrow: neither shall my soule take rest, till revenge rocke me aslape. The meane I haue thus devised: thou in the euening shalt goe to Montesteur, and in the chamber of Croisant, if possiblie, with all secrecie hide thy selfe till mid night: at what time I will vndoubtedly call vpon him, who not for a world will faile my will: then so soone as hee is issud out, thou like Stealing Salmacis shalt lay thee downe in his place, with all the silent secrecie thou canst devise, to the end that the false Basina, whose hate to mee is now infinite, may without suspect suffer the. Long shalt thou not there remaine, but Croisant and I will returne to whom I will tell, that of a long time his wife hath liued disloyall with the, with many other arguments of her inchaisticie.

Thus did he set abroach his treasons to Brison, who accorded in every point to his masters villanie, and for execu tion thereof, they parted and went to Montesteur, where Brohars found Croisant, who id entertaine him as kindly as hee loued him dearely: and in discourse they wasted the day till night with yron scepter arrested all creatures to rest: at what time Brohars tooke leave of Croisant, and tolde him, that very earely in the morning he was to use his pre

## The first part of

sence in an urgent affaire: to which Croisant said, he was ever ready to perorme the office of a friend and his will. Thus the false thinking traitour departed and left Brison. Croisant and his wife, who when the houre of bed-time came, betooke them to their rest, thinking of nothing lesse than that which they never knew, to wit, euill. Basina at that instant was great with childe of a sonne, who in after-time highly exalted the Christian faith. Brison, in whom treason had taken root, and now beganne to blossom, according to his masters directions, was so close hid in the innocents chamber, that the cuanningest searching eies could never perceue him: every minute protesting to himselfe to accomplish the treason, for which he adventured. Anon, the night, as halse ashamed to beholde such intollerable shame, whippt her misty waggon with such hast thorow the heavens, that in the eies of all creatures she had lost her preemence, and yet had day in the skie no prerogative: so as of waking eies it was then called twy-light. In this fatall houre arose Brohars, and comming to the pallace of Croisant, sent a squire to tell him he stayed for him: at which first summons, by the help of the same squire, Croisant atticed himselfe, and so departed without disturbing Basina, who as then slept soundly, for her innocency kept her from care-taking. Scarcey was the god Croisant without the limits of the Chamber, but Brison the varlet of Brohars, profaning so holy a receptacle, entred into the bed, and lay by Basina. By this was Croisant and his false faise-stemming friend mounted vpon their horses; and gotten without the walls of the city, when Brohars thus began to discourse: Long time is it since (my darest second selfe) I made the disloyalty of thy wife apparant to thy weake unretaining eares, yet armed with flinty dulnesse, thou hast denied thy heart leue to belieue me: and now therefore, if thou wilt proue, by that proue a moze auailing Oratour. And for the inseparable

## the historie of Meruine.

inseparable loue and holie marriage rites of our long: joyned friendship, I will advise the, like him that is the purest part of my being. Yester day when the declining of the Sunne made the day deny to be day, as if glory were gained in being adopted the evening, Brison my seruant reported to me, that he had enioyed the excellencies of thy excellent wife, this two yeres and better: which shanefull report of a villain, so galled me, that drawing my rapier the traitour hardly with life escaped: yet seeing him by flight reprimed, I thought it in some measure my duetie, to let thee know so high a scandall, both that thou mightest revenge and regard it. And by Mahomet he reported further, that the false woman concealed him many nights in a presse, in thy withdrawing chamber, where the strength of my imagination makes me belieue hee is at this present: which if thou wilt approue, and we finde true, by Jupiter he dies, had he the lves of ten thousand. Hard it is to say, whether at this discourse Iclanis or Sozro we tooke first holde on the heart of Croisant, yet both so exceedingly tormented him, that ledde by the furie of his passion, hee and Brohars leaving their squires behinde them, returned backe to his house, where entring secretly at a posterne gate, they lighted a torch, and mounting into his bed chamber found Brison layd by Basina whome eniuious sleepe charmed against this miserable aduenture. Brohars at the first sight drew his rapier, and slew Brison in the bedde, ere almost any eie would haue iudged hee had seene him in the bedde (a iust reward for so vnjust treacherie.) Then sayd Brohars, (deare selfe) how sorie am I for thy shame? by Mahomet, the iudgement of burning beareth in it too much lenitie: and by Jupiter, were she my sister, I would holde y treason against the gods, if I excused her from bring an instant sacrifice. Ha Croisant, Croisant, Let her be burned, let her be burned.

30  
The first part of

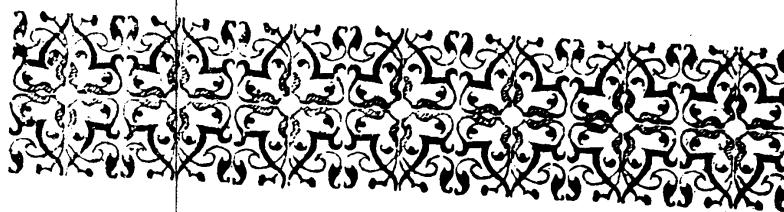
2 At these wordes, the no ill-thinking Basina awaked, and with an amazed shamefastnesse, sweetly blushed to see her husband and Brohars so neare her bed: but when she saw the shates not full so white as her cheekees exceede them in blushing and perceiued them all stained with a warme goarie liuorie, then shee stricked out aloud, and asked, what meant that prodigious token of tragedies? Ah strumpet, false breaker of wedlocke, and worse then both, (answered Croisant) burnt shalt thou bee for the sinne wherein this night I haue found thee: and then drawing his rapier, hee drew the innocent ladie by the haire, who dead-slaine with amazement, lay at his feete. Whilhest, Brohars (euer damned for this action) thus proudly insulted ouer her: Basina (quoth he) many times haue I tolde thee I would manifest thy sinne, yet wouldest thou not desist to sinne, but euermore increase thy sinne with Brison my seruant, whom this night I haue slaine in thy bed, amidst the paradise of his imbraces. Traitor, sayd the lady (awakened with these words, as with a cracke of thunder) fally thou liest. Deare loue and lord, all dearer then my soule, my Croisant, vouchsafe to heare me. O for pikkie couer thy shining weapon, and let my wordes haue thowth thine eares a gentle passage. Never haue I in my thought beene guiltie of that execrable treason which he vniuersall vrgeth, nor woulde I be, were I tormented with worse then fiers torture. All this my false imagined shame, vilde traitour, thou hast bene authour of, because I haue neglected thine owne monstrous desires, which (by heauen) deare husband, he hath more then this whole yeere prosecuted. Falser then falsehood (sayd Croisant) too apparent is thine euill: and then shaking his sword ouer her, like the wing of a haggard faulcon ouer a surprised doue, he drew her from her bed, and had there scuered her guiltlesse head from her as guiltlesse bodie, had not Isea her gentlewoman come forth, who seeing her lord tyrannising over her poore innocent

31  
the historie of Meruine.

cent Lady cried so loude, that many barons which belonged to Croisant, came forth, and reprimed the Lady from the hands of their then too cruell lord, saying: Alas my lord, what will you doo against your excellent wife, whose vertuous wisedome and wise vertue, is to women an example, and to men a iust admiration? Lords, said he, her ill is beyond the bounds of ill, and moare then the degré of ilnesse. It is proued, it is proued: and then he repeated all that Brohars had reported, and himselfe saue. Lords, said the Lady, by Mahomet, or what other god souuer takes true patronage of our soule, my inward thoughts are innocent of this accusation. With that Isea, who (as ye haue read) heard all what had before passed betwéene Brohars and the lady, both his bestiall assault, and her diuine repulse, said: By Iupiter, the god and patron of our country, my lady in thought and deed is altogether guiltlesse: and this treason, false Brohars, is the inuention of thy braine, because shee hath euer loathed thee and thy detestable desires. When the lords heard Iseas constant affirmation, they chid their lord for too rashly following his owne will: and bade him listen to Isea, who protestted the ladies most pure pure innocencie, auering withall, the appeale she made against Brohars. Whereupon they told him, it was conuenient to vse aduised meanes in so great an action: which was, that if Brohars would accuse the ladie of such detestable ilnes and approve it against some knight in equall combatte, that then the lady should haue respite to finde out a champion to defend her honour. By Alcheron (said Brohars) which containeth the law of the holy Mahomet, I consent. And I (cried out the lady) for purenesse is my Sanctuarie. Then was Croisant appraised, who caused his wife to be impriso ned in a strongtower, giuing her one whole ycre for quest of her defender: but in all that time shee could not finde anie knight, who dared encounter Brohars: for he was valiant, fierce,

## The first part of

fierce, and couragous, and so excellent a man at armes, that the world knew not a better, had not the shamefules of his treason poished the vertue of his prowesse. When Meruine, Iacob, and thother marchants came to lodge with Minea, there wanted but thre dayes of making the yeare accom- plished: so that poore Minea became her owne tormentor, because her suster Basina in all that space had not found one that durst undertake her quarrell: yet it hapned in supper time, that Iacob troubled to see her sorrow, desired one to moue her to come to him, thinking that meats mirth would expell mindes melancholie: and she more to satisfie him, than to please herselue, came, and set herselue next to Meruine. Then they demanded the cause of her griefe: to whom she reported all the treason of Brohars, and how her innocent sister within the space of thre dayes should be burned, if some diuine powre vouchsafed her not a knight to defend her. And when Minea had reported this, she sighed with such extreame ardencie, that all the company were moued with an extreame pitie.



### CHAP. VII.

1 Meruine promiseth Minea to fight the combate for her sister. 2 of his great dangers in Brandis. 3 how he behaued himselfe. 4 how Minea deliuered him from death or imprisonment.



hen Meruin the renowned issue of Oger had heard the Ladies discourse, who had in seal ing fermes deliverd the danger wherin her sister stood, Honour that in his first creation was

## the historie of Meruine.

was married to his soule, could no longer be held within the limits of Oblition, but as twere chidden by vertue for his former silence, brake from his hony-breathing tongue, and swore to the Lady by Mahomet whom he adored, he would be the desender of her sister, and make treason in the death of Brohars more than most vgly: and then rowing himselfe like a princely lion at the Huns appzaaching, he exalted his voice that all the company might understand him: Lady (said Meruine) for Mahomets loue, who is our countries protectour, cleare thy heauenly eyes, that they may no more distaine thy divine countenance, for thou hast found out a champion which delighteth to subdue treason, and will be prouid to publish to the world thy sisters not offendynge: the feare of his fame, which in others engendreth feare with cowardise, on me begetteth an invincible courage, so that I will either cleare hir reputation, or end the kaledys of my life in enterprizing her delivery. When Minea heard him, she iuarged him in hir armes, and said, divine blisome of some excellent stocke, thou from whom youth hath onely a gloriouse title, since first I beheld the, I did adiudge the of an incomparable courage: blessed be therefore that blessed one which begot the, and blessed be the wombe which boze the, go on faire youth, Justice shalbe thy warrant and Innocency thy protector. When Tirus considered the promise of Meruine, he grew sad and said: Alas faire brother, what wil you enterprise? what, wil you take in hand nothing but your owne ouerthow, and the losse of our fathers busines which against the houre cannot by you be performed? Bro- ther (said Meruine) doubt not but our fathers busines shall be effected, and by Mahomet (which astonisheth the world with thunder) I will not for all the wealth in Montment, I wil not forbeare to succor a distressed Lady, the rather for the loue of this Lady to whom we are all be given. At this they al beholding in him a constancie, halfe angry to be con- tradicted,

34  
The first part of

trabidcted, left off further arguing till the next morning. Minea, though exceeding ioy that she had found a champion for her sister, would not suffer her eies to close with sleepe all that night, but rising early in the morning, gathered together 200 Turks to conduct Mernin to Montesteur: who sone by day had awaked Iacob, & the rest, saying, my deare friends and consorts, be not wearisome to your selues in attending my back-returme, neither be displeased with what I undertake, but folike and triumph: for why I will discharge the charges of you all: if by my want you be a little hindered, let pacience mitigate your anger, and whatsoever I gaine, I will willingly give amongst you. With that came Minea into the chamber to bid them god morrow, to whom Meruine said, Lady, prouide me of god armes, and an excellent horse, and let want of coin be no decay to my soziane, hold, there is store, disburse & spare not. When Tirus perceived him, his colour changed, & he grew pale saying, what meane, you brother, so vncessarily to spend & employ our fathers money which he hath giuen vs to pay to the merchant, to whom he oweth it. Brother (said Meruine) regard not siluer and gold more then earth, the loue wherof maketh the minds of men worse then the worst of earthiness: better loue I to be well armied and brauely monnted, then here and there to consume vertue by exchanging marchandise. Thus spake the honorable minded Meruine, whom from his infancie nature taught to resemble the famous Duke his fathert. Excellently excellent young man (said Minea) keepe thy treasure, for in mine owne coffers do I harboz such store, as shall maintaine thee an hundred knyghts to be thine attendants: as for armes and horse, be carelesse, they long since haue bene readily prouided: for the princely Earle of Brandis to whos my husband (whom he exceedingly loued) during his life was chamberlaine, hath giuen me the couragious horse Morbon, on him shal thou mount, a seat worthy the worthiest knyght the world

35  
the historie of Meruine.

Inoile containeth: Then would Iacob, Tyrus and the other marchants needs mount on horsebacke to conduct Meruine on his way: but he deuring a little respit, said, before I depart I will approue my armes, my horse, & my body against some other knyght, because on my life relies not my selfe but anothers fortune. Friend (said a Pagan that had followed those which had brought his horse and armour) armie your selfe, for I will arme my selfe and charge you: yon honour me (said he) & then Meruine buckled his gorget, cast on his curats lockt his pouldrons, put on his caske, and armid hym selfe at all points, then demanded he a swerd, whch was deliuered him, but he refused it for being much too light: whereupon Minea went into her chamber, & to which she brought a swerd, bigge, strong, and massie: this swerd sometimes had bene the swerd of King Brandifer a Pagan, whom the renoured knyght Valentine, Nephew to King Pepin slew before Angoria, Minea presented this swerd to Meruine, who drezed it, and beholding the beautious brightnesse said. Excellent engine, worthy an invincible spirit, adde to me as much fortune as I will lend thee force, and both of vs will in the tongues of men be immortall. Now false traytorz Brohars, be as wise in defending thy selfe, as thou art wilful in offending others, else shall thy life waste with thy slander: for Meruine is armid as himselfe desreth. At that, without the aide of his stirrope he mounted on the backe of Morbon, and demaunded a lance, which so sone as he had received, he put him with a princely maiestie forward, passing a swift, strong, and round cartiere, with such dexteritie and nimblenesse as bred wonder, and commendation in al the beholders, chiesely in the Earle of Brandis, that beholding him from his pallace, said to his Barons, behold a noble and victoriouzs warriour, worthy to be adornd with a kings diademe, his hand is an ornamant for a lance, and his person a receptacle for all vertues: with that came the Pagan, who went

36  
The first part of

went to arme himselfe, and cried to Meruine, friend, will you leaue those measures and proportioned iumps which your horse in his comming seems pround of, and try the godnes of your arme by a sturdy encounter? It is my deſirs and nothing else replied Meruine, ſo they retired backe the one from the other, to take their course with moze violence. The Story ſaith this encounter was on a godly greene plaine before the Earles pallace, who as before I ſaid, ſtood to behold them, with him his wife, and a gallant young Prince his ſonne and heire apparent. When Meruine and the other were ſeuerd more than the length of a god cariere, they put ſpurrers to their courſers, and cowching their launces, ranne with ſuch terrour, that the ground trembled at the chidings of their horses hoſes: and when they toynd in the ſhocke, the Pagan ſhuered his launce close to his gauntlet, yet no moze ſtirred the princely Meruine then the gentleſt breath of airc, the Strongeſt pyramide in Egypt. But Meruines encounter bore death in his launces point, ſo he ſtoke his ſtaffe more than a ſoote and a halfe thorow the Pagan ſbody, and pursued it with ſuch vigor, that he bores him headlong doþone dead unto the ground: then ſtopping his horſe triumphantly, he ſaid in himſelfe: euē as he thus is ouerthowne, ouerthrew I all the knyghts which ranne for the golden cup which Clarislaes imagined valour enioyeth. What reaſon now can deny me knyght hood? None but will, and that will is vniuit. Marchandise farewel, henceforth will I traffike nothing but honour.

2 Thus ſaid young Meruine, groþone proude of this late ouerthow: but when the Pagans, and the friends of the Pagan which was ſlaine, ſaw hym pay Natureſ last debt vnto neuer ſatisfied death, they all at once with one mad furie assailed Meruine, which though it nothing ſappaled, yet at laſt it bred amaze in his ſenes (till then vnaquainted

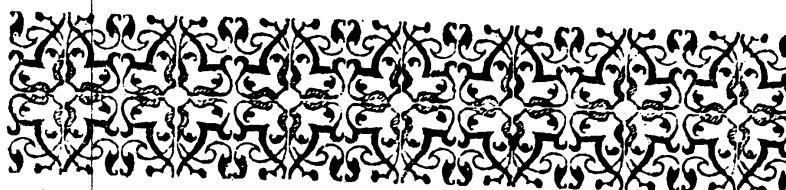
37  
the historie of Meruine.

quainted with tumultuous outrage:) but when his vertue was awaked, he ſaide: With I am attailede, the deſence I make, of force muſt be lawfull: and when he drew his ſword, with which he gaue ſuch a blowe to the brother of the ſlaine Pagan, that he clauſe his ſkull to his teeth. God of our forefathers, great Mahomet ( ſaid Meruine) beholde an excellent ſword, if I can but maintaine ſtrength to his edge, the world ſhall eronicle me for a famous marchant. But the extremitie of the assault put Meruine from further ſpeech, for the whole company attailede him: but being as wiſe as hee was valiant, he defended himſelfe with vnspeakable vertue, and that in ſuch ſort, that hee ſlewe moze then a thrid part of them. Yet his ſoies Hydra-like increaſing, by killing, had mightyliy indangered him, if the other marchaunts and the two hundred Pagans which Minea had assembled to conduct him to Monteſteur, beholding his instant perill, had not taken an oþe to die in his ſueteoz. But the Counte Brandy, knowing this might arife to ſome grieuous accident, descended from his pallace with five hundred horſemen, and comming to the place where the fight was, cried out to Meruine and the rest: By Mahomet my god, he that ſurceaseth not, but striketh another blowe, ſhall die the death. At these wordes they all retired, but Meruine in the instant of the ſpeech layed ſixe dead at his ſoote.

3 Wherefore the Counte tooke a ſolemne boþ, he ſhould dearely make vaunt of that dayes chiualrie. But Minea ranne and caught Meruine by the arme, crying, alas deare ſonne, this eniuious day in blodd hath drowned all the hope of our god fortune: forbeare, forbeare, for Gods ſake vee forbeare, for either muſt weſſe ſlie or die for our miſdoing. Then went Minea towardes the Counte, and falling on her knees before him, ſaide: For Mahomet ſake, for Meicas honour, and thine owne reputation ( moſt excellent Prince)

## The fir st part of

Prince) take pittie vpon me, and my poore innocent syster, who through treason shall faultlesse consumie in fire, if with in this thre dales she be not deliuered by this happy nowe made vnhappy young man. When the Earle saw the constancie of her teares whiche issued from the true fountaine of griefe, he accorded to her desire, with this condition, that wheresoever Meruine shold goe, he shold yet be his prisoner, and that she shold deliuer him sufficient hostage for his returne: whereupon Minea deliuered to the Earle all the evidences, bondes and titles whatsoeuer belonged to her or her inheritance: all which he detained till her backe returne to Brandis. And thus was Meruins peace agreed, who mightily grieued that he shold be troubled or sought with, soz but onely making profe of his bodie.



### CHAP. VIII.

1. How Minea, Meruine, Iacob, Tyrus, and the other Merchants with the two hundred Pagans departed from Brandis, to deliuer Basina at Montesteur: 2 and of the batell fought betweeue Meruine and Brohars, and the enent.



When Minea had appeased the tumult, shee departed from Brandis, and with her Meruine and the other merchants, with them the band of two hundred Pagans: and the second day after, they arrived at Montesteur, where

## the historie of Meruine.

they found Croisant madde manlike tormented with griefe in his soule, for the supposed monstrous insignitie which the treason of Brohars had rooted in his head against his constant and loyall wife Basina. When Minca saw him, shee went to meet him: and he encountering her first, gaue her this salutation. Faite syster Minea ( quoth hee ) thy syster hath falsely betrayed the honour of my bedde, and giuen an immeztall scandall to my name: the deed is evident and apparently true, the rather in this that none can finde a knight, who will vndertake battaile against Brohars, to defend the iustnesse of her cause. Wherefore, if I live till to morrow, and beholde the Sunne blesse the earth with his countenance, I will see her burned, according to the execution of our law Brother Croisant ( replied she ) fortune, I hope, hath alotted her staires of much better influence: and for her innocencie I haue brought one, who shall defend it against Brohars and his treason: whome I hope to see at his hanging as publike aconuertite, as he is now a monstrous false accuser. At these wordes Meruine, whose countenance did both apprehend, and discharge a princely king of maiestie, stod forth, and sayd vnto Croisant: By the faith I owe vnto Mahomet, and mine homage to distressed ladies, I will voluntarily, and with an assurance of vndoubted guiltinesse, enter battaile against that false traitour, who vnder my swerd shall either publikely confeesse his villanie, or die for priuate concealing so worthy to be knownen an indig- nitie. Scarle haue hee finished these wordes, but Brohars came thronging into the presse, exclaiming against all men, that none durst encounter him: and withall sayde: Brother Croisant, euen the world, and babes not yet borne into the world, will condemne thee for a wittolde, and a wilfull cuckold, sith thus long thou deserrest the burning of that odious strumpet thy wife, whose implacable sinne none dare to make seeme vnfaultie. When Meruine heard Brohars

40  
The first part of

hars, he scratcht his head, and with a grizlie looke, wherein  
vertue shewed her selfe more then impatient, he sayd: False  
bastard, son of a most detestable whoare: whose hatefull spee-  
ches augment the abomination of thy treason: by Mahomet,  
this day I will see thee hanged, for thy wrongfull accuse,  
and vnjust slaunder of the vertuous Basina. Brohars more  
then wounded with Meruines fierie pointed speeches, grew  
madde with wrath: and drawing his swor, sticke at Mer-  
uine. But vertue euer awake to defend honour, taught him  
how to ward the blowe, and with his fist well armed with  
a gauntlet, he returned Brohars such a buffet, that he made  
the blood gush from his eares and nostrils, saying: Trai-  
tor, beholde the champion for the iust ladie Basina, who  
this day will make thy heart as sadde, as thy thoughts are  
false, and neither by any to be matched. When Croisant  
saw the incomparable valour of Meruine, grew enamou-  
red of his vertue, and sayd in himselfe: Beleeue me, my  
soule, mine eyes haue not seene a stame of youth so faire, so  
bigge, and in all parts so excellently accomplisht with all  
perfections: by Mahomet had nature but adorneed his chyn  
with dowlne, I should haue taken him to be (so much he re-  
sembled him) Oger, the renowned Christian, who slew lu-  
stament before Arius. After these cogitations Croisant  
came betweene Mernine & Brohars, desiring forbeareance of  
their furie till the next morrow, & sayd: Lords, let prowesse  
slumber, till this next dayes Sunne awaken you to combat,  
and then Mahomet give honour to him that hath the right.  
They both accorded, and then Croisant demanded pledge of  
both sides for their appearance. And Minea pledged her selfe  
to Meruine, but Brohars could finde neither baron, knight,  
nor squire, who would be hostage for his faith. Wherefore  
Croisant caused him to be imprisoned for that night in a  
strong tower, whither was deliuered all things necessary  
for him or his happelesse undertaken action. Minea with all

her

41  
the historie of Meruine

her traine went and lodged in a castle heare by, & tooke Mer-  
uine, Iacob, Tyrus and the other marchants with her, who  
though they spake not much, yet did their heauie countena-  
ces tel long tales of their tedious sorowes. But Meruine com-  
forted them, saying, Fear not my deare companions, neither  
let your watry eies any longer woe an evil fortune: for by my  
faith (my souls debt to Mahomet if you wil pursue my steps,  
you shall no more be marchants, but knights of regard & ho-  
nour, & then wil we tread ouer the face of the earth, and by re-  
doubted fight ennable and extoll our lawe through all nati-  
ons. But one, whose name was Braha, compact of the coldest  
constitution a cowards heart could be engendred of, replyed:  
Sir Meruine, for mine owne part, I loue no honour with di-  
sturbance, nor fame with a bloody forhead: let them fight that  
are angrie, for my patience is eternall except it be against this  
pleasant cuppe of wine, and that conflict may boade my ouer-  
throw, but no wounds. At these wordes they al began to laugh  
but Minea whose head at that instant was a Parliament for  
grauer matters, went unto Croysant, & with a graue discon-  
tentment in which was figured a modest suffrance, she desired  
leane for her sister Basina to come and suppe with them, that  
the burden of her grieues, though they were not vnaide, yet  
they might by that recreation be a little eased. He willingly a-  
greed, & so sent the iayler to fetch her, who instantly did as he  
was commauanded. But when he came where the forsaken la-  
dy was set, & had unlocked the two vnkind imbracing yrons  
that fettered her, he told her of Meruine, & how her sister Mi-  
nea had brought him to fight against Brohars in defece of her  
honour. Alas (said she) how vnfortunate is y vnfortunatenes  
of my malitious fortune, and how endlesse the spring of my  
teares! Before I wept, because I wanted a champion: now  
must I weepe, that hauing a champion, I fear I want forti-  
tude: for Brohars is invincible, and who then can conquer who  
never to be conquered? Here she sighed as if she had never be-

D

fore

42  
The first part of

fore sight'd while the iailer said Late, imbrace comfort, & be strong with an innocent hope, for this day hath Mern. givē Brohars such an unresistable blow, as the blood sprang out of his veines, and ranne through his ears and nostrils, A notable prologue to a wylles tragedie. The pore lady hearing this she gaue hope (which before was banished) leaue once againe to possesse her, and so rose & went with her keepper till she entered into the Castle hall: but when Minea saw her first appearance, she ranne to imbrace her, and she (albeit not with so much fury, for sorrow had weakened her indeuours) did the like. And being both lockt in each others insoldings, Basina asked her sister which was the champion whose unspeakable vertue had bowed once againe to make her happy. Faire sister, qd she, looke ouer all this assembly, and he is thy new creator who is most high, Strongest, and most excellently furnished in all his lineaments, and yet so yong: that he hath not attained to fiftene yeres. And as she was thus speaking, Meruine rose from the place where he sat, to go comfort Jacob, whose looks were sad and discomfortable. And Basina seeing him rise, knew by his proportion, he onely of that company was likeliest to redeme her; wherefore she ranne unto him, and falling on her knēs she imbraced his legs, making offer to kisse his feet. Meruine repulsed so much too diuine homage, and demanded of her what she was. Excellent creature (said she) I am the woful subiect of unspeakable misery, euen that unhappy Basina, in protection of whose innocencie, as I understand, you are come to make hazard of your celestiall honour: and as it is pure, so be the purtie of my redemption wonderfull in the eies of the beholders: for by him that gaue my soule motion, there was never moving of unchaste thought within mee. What is auerred against me, the traitor falsly suggesteth, because I truly with God his lasciuious affection, which he hath not left for the space of a yeare hourly to solicite, mine honoꝝ

43  
the historie of Meruine.

honoꝝ guarding what dishonour would violate, but rather shall a thousand flames dissolve me into cinders, then breach of my wedlock faith congeale frosty damnation within me. How the base slauē, slauē to his glauish appetite, came to be lodged by me, neither know I, nor can imagine. And more to make my ignorance perpetuall, he flue him, that by him might nothing be discouered: blameles are my thoughts, albeit my fortune faulty. If giltlesnes be any defence, be then assured thou art invincibly armed. When Meruine heard her words graced with a gracefull delight of moste speaking, he recomforted her, promising to die or behold her deliverance. By this supper was serued vp, and they set down, but yet Iacob, Tirus, and the other marchants whispering one against another, mightily repined at the sorwardnes of Meruine: for why, their harts were created in a cold clime, where the true sunshine of honoꝝ never shined. By Mahomet, said Iacob, if we pursue the humors of Meruine, we but run poike after our deaths: for say he win the honour of the field and release the Lady, yet if he escaps with life and returne to Brandis, there shal he be imprisoned, and for his late outrage aduenture as great a hazard. So that as his deſires are boundles, so shal his quarrels be endles, and we for being his consorts be disgraced: he is much too couragious to win wealth by trafeke, and to mad to be praised vnder the title of a merchant. Thus they grinded their tongues against their teeth, with repinings against Meruine, who all the while ate and drak without respect or heed taking. After supper they went to rest till the flight of birds gaue assurance of the sunnes presence, and told them it was morning: then arose Croisant, causing the lites to be prepared, and 200. horsemen to gard it, in the midſt wherof a Stake was set vp, at which his wife should be burned, if Meruine failed in the conflict. Then arose Meruine, and armed him ſelfe with all the royll accampliments his ſoule desired,

44  
The first part of

and being at alpieces furnishit, he caused Morbon to be sadled, and couerd al ouer with a costly habb, on whom he leapt: and though Morbon for strength among horses was onely excelling, yet his chine bended with the weight of the yongling. Then deuaunded Meruine his helmet, which Croisant deliuer'd him, and withall a mighty launce, strong, and till then vntaught to skirmish. Meruine thus sate like a second Mars, or an excelling Perseus, he made a solemne and religious vow to Mahomet, euer after that to be so, and in such maner, and never more to vse or inherite the trade or name of a Marchant: for (qd he) that trade abaseth an honorable disposition, and brings slander to the sword and lance which ever should be adored. Now was Brohars (who before ye heard to be impysoned) infranchised and set at liberty, immediatly causing his attendants to arme him, whilist his thoughts expostulates with feare, his soule holding argument with doubtfullnes, yet was he an unmatchable knight for valure; onely treason the impoisoner of vertue having got habitation, began to staine resolution. Yet the story saith that this Brohars was brother to Geffray, whom Karahew slue in the battel before the wals of Babylon, as is written in the history of Oger the father of Meruine. But in no maner durst Karahew euer after met with Brohars, as well for feare of his sortitude, as for a generall hate conceived against him, for offring to haue forced Rabions wife the son of Antifer. But that which gives Brohars the greatest title of dignity, and maketh all men feare to encounter him in combat, is for that he hath fought many fields, all with the sword, and preuauld, which euer after made him so fierce and proud of his fortune, that he held himself altogether invincible, as if by a parliament of the gods, he alone were deitised. Now was brought to him to mount vpon, a mare of his owne, which was damme to the god sted Marcheuall, which Oger lost vpon the sea: her colour was not black, but blackish

blackish

45  
the historie of Meruine

blackish dan, he got her of Baucamont king of Damas, and he was trainet, and made ready for the warres to go assaile Mermont in his city of Montment, thence to win the faire princely virgin Berea, whom Mermont had denied in mariage. This mare which was brought Brohars, was cailed Mordant, fiery and couragious: one qualitie of crueltie she had, which was, that no horse, how strong or violent soever, but she would instantly strangle, if there were not a more than vnuall regard had to hit manner of fighting. Brohars won her in an honorable combat, and being mounted thereon, he took his target and hanged it before his breast, fassined abattle ar to his saddle pouell, & griped in his strong arme a mighty lance: thus accouerted, he paced towards the field, where Meruine attened his comming. Croisant stil inuironed with ielousie and reuenge, had now fassined Basina to the stake, her executioners garding her, with fire ready to asaille the wood so soone as Meruine should be ouerthowne. By this time was Brohars entred into the lists, on whom when Meruine had fired his eyes, and saw the portly maner of the princely beast that bore him (I meane Mordant that gallant mare) he fell mightily in loue with her, and tooke a bow in his owne soule, never againe to esteeme him selfe, if that dayes conquest made him not true possessor of so highly to be esteemed treasure. Now the time sommoning an end to these great deuoires, a herald entred the lists, & after a solemne warning given by the sound of trumpets, he prounounced this charge: Lords and Knights belonging to the noble lord Croisant, I straitly charge and command you vpon paine of death, not to speake any word til the combat be fully ended: and further, vpon the foresaid paine, I charge, that none, of what estate or condicō soever, do either assist, resist, impugne or deliuer either by signe or actō, any of the combatants, but reser the triall of their trouths, to fortune, valure, and their sworuds. At these words the whole asembly

D 3

sembly

## The first part of

semblie of infinites silent, and then the Herald departed. Then entered Croisant to the Champions, and first spake in this manner to Brohars: by all the allegiance thou owest to thy earths soueraigne, by thy faith to Mahomet, thy hope of conquest, & thy spouts redempcion, I charge thee to me whether all thine assextion and accusation auowed against this lady Basina my wife, be true. For no. Noble Croisant (answered Brohars) all is true by Iupiter I sweare, and this day shalt thou see that trueth gloriouſ by my conquest. Meruine hearing him so obstinat, desired Croisant to desist fro further speach: for (said he) it is now then time the traitour had made his new recantation. Knights sayd Croisant begin at your pleasures, and this day let trueth preuaile.

2 So departed he the lists, and the two combatants putting downe their beauers departed either from other a godd distance, to adue more violences to their courses: and Basina with a more then speaking heart (for feare had bound her lips to silence) cried upon Mahomet to guard her champion, and confound the false confounder of her honour. Now were they farre enough asunder, when turning their stedes and couching their launces, they ranne against ech other with such swiftnesse, that they ouerran the windes, which overrun all other moving creatures: but in the shok, when their launces felt honours seales vpō their curats, Meruin stroke Brohars so hard (worthy a better name then that by which force is intituled) that he trembled him from the back of his godd mare to the ground: & on the other part he likewise assailed Meruine so couragiously, that both horse & man equally kist the earth together: but Meruine being quicke & nimble (and never more quicke then in the quicknesse of extremity) quickly gate vp vnamazed. But Brohars astonished to falliug from a beast so hie and lostie, arose (though not so well) yet as wel as he could, and drawing his sword came to assault Meruine, who

## the historie of Meruine.

who cried vnto him, Traitor, this deepe this day shall make thee a sorie tragedie. Brohars entuously angry at these words of Meruin stroke at him with almost a more then diuine courage: but he perceiving the blowe, retired a little, and toke it vpon his target: yet it came from so violent an arme, that it clauē it downe to the ground, cutting withal the spur from his right foot, and the sword unsatisfied entred into the ground more then afoore and a halfe, whose greedines to conquer, hindered his conquering: for hee could not recouer it againe but with much paines taking. Meruine dying to die in debt of so godd paliment, lift vp his sword and stroke the trayour on the helmet, from whence the sword sliding, descended on his thigh, and there cut away a collop sufficient though to gorge a faulcon two dayes together and better. Now was meze then time for Brohars to change his footing, for the weight of this blowe gave his hinder legge preheminence to be better and stronger, to his intollerable griefe & furie, making him raile on Maho, for suffring him thus of a boy to be mated. Meruine in whō valor held her residence, & of whom vertue was onely inamoured, bearing sword point blancke with the Pagans eye, ranne furiously against him, and in his course said: Brohars, the excreable treasons that damnedly thou hast suggested, shall end thy life before the day shall end his light, else shall my reputation die in his infancie, & truth hereafter never be accounted the Innocents protectresse: and with that he stroke a blowe (which the Pagan received on his target) with such violence, that it entering in an vnimagined way, Meruin by no means could pluck it out againe, though with sundrie twiches he gane, he almost pulled it from the Pagans necke. Brohars not vnderstanding in any aduantage occasion could offer in the extreameſt of those conflicts, waching (with a greedy deliverance of mischiefe in his head) and when he perceiued Meruine pull with all his swyng he let the target slip out of his hand, so that Meruine with his owne force

## The first part of

force fell backward to the ground, on whom immediately the Traitor leaped, thinking then to finish the end of all his wiles. All the Barons that beheld this infortunate misadu-  
soure, murmured amongst themselves and saide, What pitie  
is this, that fortune, not valure should be the ouerthow of  
vertue, & that this youth unconquered should not be conque-  
rour: Minca whose heart daunced lively on the sword of  
Meruine, when she saw this stourc boding euill, grew madde  
with grieve, that grieses power held her from beeing madde  
and whispered to her selfe. Ha Mahomet, thou whiche art ado-  
red in our pacheous, if thou thus giuest ouer vertue, and lea-  
uest this excelling creature to be slaine by a miscreant, for euer  
will I abiure thy deitie, rase thy Temples, and ere the sunne  
go downe, be baptizied a Christian. Whilste thus her waue-  
ring thoughts amongst themselves helde a ciuill dissention,  
soe Basina her tormentors exceeded the boundes of torment-  
ings, being runne a degré beyond the coast of illnes: so that  
what others in their priuate selues lamented, shew with lond  
shrikes, cries, & clamors publikely noted, insomuch that y ec-  
cho of her lamentations pearting into the eares of Meruine  
as he lay, conducted an honourable shame with theles to his  
heart, so that gathering a better strengthe then that which is  
Strength named, by vigour of his sprite, he turned Brohars  
topsie turkie vnder him. By this time Meruines horse, who  
through the cruelty of his fall, could no sooner get vp, arose,  
which Mordant the mare perceiving, came and assailed him:  
so that betwene the beastes begann a cruel and fierce bat-  
telle, but in the end Mordant strangled the god Morbon, to  
the small delight of Meruine, who at that instant was burde  
from intending any remedy, so long did Meruin remaine vp-  
on the traytor, that the whole company were in admiration  
at his indurance. But when he perceiued all meanes of releafe  
banished, and that no power he had, had power to ouerturne  
Meruine he said vnto him, Meruine this arst of burde is an  
vnwoun-

## the historie of Meruine.

vnwounding combat, by whose meanes we can neither win  
honor, nor bring our battell to a desired ending. I will offer  
thee therefore what in honourable censure shalbe honestly  
valiant, arte icom this vaine suppreſſing seruite, vnburden  
me and goe fetch thy ſword and I will goe to thy mate and  
fetch my battellare which hangeth at my ſaddle, & with them  
let vs ei her ſtrif our liues, or amind our forſtunes. Meruine  
in whom the ragefull fire of youth kindled a divine valiance,  
presently accorded & arose from Brohars, who ſound in him  
ſelſe a painefull weakenesse to get vp, through the great loſſe  
of blod which iſſuing from his wound, had already cald the  
earth where he lay in a ſcarlet manteli, as if he already had  
made it. Judge of his life or deſtuction. Now had eche of  
them taken their weapons according to their agreement: but  
Brohars as if his heart wholy dwelt on the edge of his wea-  
pon, hauing the are in his hand rysde it into the aire, & cried  
to Meruine. This day boy, ſhalbe thy liues laſt day, vntille  
thou ſwear and maintaine that all the articles are true which  
I haue imposed against Basina the wife of Croifant, which if  
thou doest, we will no more be foes but companions, and like  
men inauincible meaſure the earth, and conquer great Charles  
of France, who onely persecuteth our law and religion. Guilt  
tongued traitor, ſaid Meruine little ſhould I pleſe Maho-  
met to be treacherously minded, leſſe to be the companion of so  
base a miscreant, wherefore I esteine both ovidous. After this  
ſpeach they affailech other on every ſide, where their aduan-  
tages lay moſt apartant, and that in ſuch vehement ſort and ſo  
tediously, that they both became ſo exceeding weary as they  
were faine for a time to repoſe themſelues. After they had a  
while reſted themſelues, Meruine called to Brohars and ſaid,  
Traitor, this reſt is the laſt ſabbath of thy liue: for thou haſt  
wrongfully accuſed yonder innocent Lady: and therefore ere  
the eueninges eie ſhut in the day thou ſhalt dy moſt miserabyl  
Sorow at this repreſe ſo ſopt vp the ſpeacheſ of Brohars,  
that

50  
The first part of

that he only gnashd his teeth, and mounting his keen edged axe, he stricke such a blow, and with so great might on the helmet of Meruine, that if the greatest of diuine powers had not preserved him, and that the temper and the living were both more than extraozinary, that day had bin the last of his life and soztunes. Notwithstanding al the fauors of his staues, so strong a poise issued from the blowes falling, that Meruine was forced to fall vpon his knee, yet was he soon remounted: and as wise in danger as valiant in his fight, raising his good sword, strake the traitour with such puissance on his helmet, that if Brohars had not turned backe he had cloven him to the shoulde, the sword in his stumblling fell on the thigh of the Pagan, so as he quite disseuered it from his body, and with that threw the traitor vnto the ground, who with the grief of the blow cried, that the echo of his clamors were heard afar off. At this Basinas heart daunced in her body for ioy, so did Mineas, in whom was an equall sympathie: and all the barons that held either of the Ladies in regard, triumphed saying amoung themselves, no eie hath seen sozitude accompanied with such true fierenesse in any knight, as in this young youth unconquerable Meruine. Such spach spake every one of him. But the traitor Brohars, who had then lost a leg, took his axe into both his hands saying, Boy, bzaggard, and worse than a boyish bzaggard, stand but before me, and thou shalt see this losse the gaine of my better courage: for I shall never aspire my end or oozethrow, till I haue cut thee peice-meale into a thousand pieces. Meruine smiling at this vant, stroped to take him by the other fot, thinking to trate him into the midst of the field, but imprudence guided his action, for the traitour clasping him about his helmet, drew him to him with such manie strength, as he felouer and ouer. Great God of heauen haue mercy vpon him, for if thy pitty be not his saviour, death must be his redæmer.) Brohars was mighty

and

51  
the historie of Meruine.

and strong, and so was Meruine, insomuch, that betwéene them was shewed al the triumph and perfection of strength and agilitie. But in the end, Brohars, through the riuere-like effusion of his blood, was so exceedingly weakened, that in a happy time, and in despite of Fortunes wroth, Meruine arose, taking from him his battle axe: then hauering ouer him like an vngozged eagle, he said, *ITraitor, now behold the last date of thine affliction, confesse therfore the treason thou hast done against the god lady Basina, or by Mahomet thy own weapon immediatly shall diuorce thine accursed head from thy shoulders.* But he whom villainie had taught nothing but villainous replies, answered: *Thou son of a disfa-  
med curtesan, coward, recreant, I was never traitor, nor did  
treason euer lode in my affinity.* As he was about to say more, Meruine impatient to see such audacious impielie, with the axe gave him such a blow on the other thigh, tha: he cut it quite from his body, leauing him as leglesse as he was gracleesse: the paine whereof, togeher with the laboring of his lifes departure, made him bellow out such lamentatiōs, that all the mountains, and plaines were priuy to his miserablie soztunes. Then called he to Meruine and said, *Euen  
now I find my soule contending for her deliuerie: wherfore  
if thou hast as much pitty in thy heart, as force in thy hand,  
deserte alittle my judgement, and call Croisant and Basina  
to behold my departure.* Meruine forthwith called them, who willingly came thither. And being come, Meruine said Brohars, behold, Croisant and the Lady are present, say what thou hast to say vnto them. Ah Croisant, Croisant, saide he, euen for Mahomets sake that pardons all, pardon me, and haue mercy on my miserie, thy wife the vertuous Basina is most loyall, most true, and most vndefiled not any betwéene the Poles more honorabile. *Tis true, tis true,  
I haue importuned her long, more than a yeaare, but ne-  
ver could obtaine it. Tis true, tis true, I only for that haue  
hated*

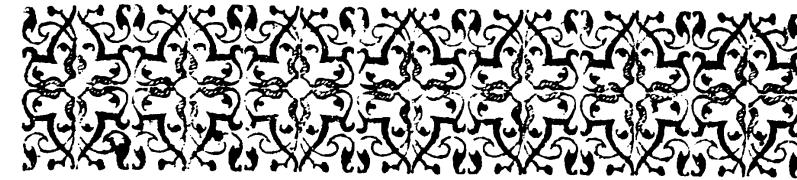
52  
The first part of

hated her. Tis true that this treason was mine owne in-  
vention: I brought Brilon to her bed, I suggested her di-  
sloyaltie, and I alone deserue this miserable infortune.  
Then he called the lady to him, and said, Divine Basina,  
and excellent Lady, for lounes sake, who created all things,  
create me anew with thy pardon, and from the white veile  
of thine innocency, let my misdeed find a shadowing forgue-  
nes: for I confesse with a wretting soule my monstrous im-  
parted treasons against thee, and will maintaine (whilst  
vanishing breath maintains power to maintaine any thing)  
my selfe the most falest traitor that euer was recorded a-  
mongest the Pagans. Neuer spakest thou more true than  
now, answered Meruine, therefore shalt thou indure the  
Law, and I onely will be thine executioner, and with that  
lifting vp the axe, he strucke the Pagan betwene the hel-  
met and the collar with such forcible vigor, that he compel-  
led his head to falle from his shoulders. So died the  
traitour by the hands of Meruine the sonne  
of Oger, in whom the excellencie  
of prowess was onely  
excellent.

CHAP.



53  
the historie of Meruine.



CHAP. IX.

1 Of the honours done to *Meruine* for his victorie. 2  
How *Meruine* brought him backe againe to *Branc's*. 3  
His imprisonment, and other aduentures.



After the death of Brohars, (whose death was  
as a festiall to the beholders, chiefly to Minea  
and Basina, who comming to Meruine, did  
him great adoration and worship) Croisant  
caused the body of the traitor to be drawne to  
a paire of gallowes, where it was hanged for a spectacle of  
monstrous villanie. But Meruine, whose minde was still  
making loue to honor, regardlesse of other accomplishments,  
went to the godly mare Mordant, and having caught her  
as his prize and honors right, he mounted vpon her backe,  
spurred her, ranne her, leapt her, and so thundred about the  
fields, finding in her all the rarest perfections could possibly  
be wish'd in such an incomparable creature, that his joy  
reached beyond the bounds of extreamest pleasure. & in this  
sort made him give praise to Mahomet. Ah Mahomet, quod  
he, behold here a beast of invincible puissance, I honor thee  
for the gift, and by her valure will exalt thy name in foren  
nations: she is my harts wish, & I prize her more, then her  
weight of the finest gold. Thus spake Meruine, & then rode  
on with the pagans, who honored him as a demy-god, even  
to the gates of Môlesteur, where he was received with tri-  
umphant ioy & solemnitie. After he was ascended the castle,  
and

54  
The first part of

and had disarmed himselfe, his wounds were found slight, and of small importance, yet notwithstanding there was an excellent Surgeon appointed him, whose skill in thre dayes would haue cured much greater woundings. After hee was dressed, & had given his mind a little recreation with easie hunger (in that he had fasted all the day) began to seize vpon his stomack so, that he desired the Barons to make hast with his supper, assuring them he had not felt so god an appetite before in his life time. One of y barons told him all things were prepared for his repass, & there wanted nothing but his presence. The late Meruine and the other marchants down, who were serued with all pompous magnificence, nothing wanting that wit, wealth, or wish could accomplish. When they had supped, they fell to discourse of diuers occurrents according to the time or humour of their opinions; but Minea taking Croisant vnto her, said: Brother, this princely yong man hath done thee great honour, and to my sister an eternall never to be requited fauour, even as much as her soules redemption. Thus Ma-dame (replied he) I acknowledge as much or more from his valure. Wherefore if he please to implore me, I am all onely at his service, and from this day do I reckon my new nativitie, binding my life to his dispose, and glorying in nothing more, then in that I am his subiect. Brother (said Minea) thy speeches are worthy of thy vertues, therefore now prepare thy people and goe with vs to Brandis, for there haue we actions of hie importaunce with the Earle thererof, where you must be aidant and agent, to performe vnto him the weight of our busynesse. Ladie (quoth he) as willingly is mine agreement, as your wish is ready, and I am proud of so happy an occasion.

2 Thus after their intercourse of speach, they remayned at Montestour vntil the next morning & so from thence they rode to Brandis to the house of Minea, wher they feasted them sororally, as either treasure or friendship could any way purchase

55  
the historie of Meruine.

chase; but after they were all disarmed, and had pleasantly re-created themselves one with anothers excellencies, on the sudden they heard one knocking at the gate: wherupon Minea commaunded the Porter to goe see who knocked, and to give them entierance. Away went the Porter, and demanding the occasion of the noyse, they bade him open the gates, which he had no sooner done, but there rushed in 14. knights, all well armed, of whom the nephew of Brandis named Merquier was one, & thence ascending into the hall, they beheld where Meruine was playing at the cardes with Croisant, on whom instantly they sette d whilste he by force thinking to purchase his deliuerie, found that force by their preuention surprised. When Minea beheld this more then cruell occurrent, she cried to Merquier, and sayd, young lord, for Mahomets sake, and the loue of vertue, forbeare and suffer this excellent creature till to morrow, at what time, by thallegeance my soule olveth to heauen, I will deliuer him to the Counte thy renowned knyght. Lady (repiled Merquier) pardon me, for I wil not, bican'e if he passe this houre, it is impossible tappese the knyght of them whom he hath slaine. Sirre hath he sent to communicate with the dead, therefore he may not live, vna-lesse he can, as none can, find any means to recouer the dead. To make a short tale of a tedious astonishment, this answer brought the lady to her lvi's end sorrow desirous to counsell her in her disputation, and notwithstanding all the force Meruine applied for his owne deliuerie, he was taken by them, bound caried to a stog castle, settred in an iron chaine, and safely imprisoned, all as vnplesant to him, as vnpitied of his enemies, both without bound.

3 Being thus all alone, haing no companions but anger, & his hartnes grieved, began thus to chide himselfe against reason, improuident man (said he) how much better had it bin had I trusted Tirus my brother, then mine own thoughts: for then

## 56 The first part of

then resuling the battel. I had diuorced my selfe from this mischance, which too unluckily laies hold on me: but he that impugns vertuous counsel with wilfulnes, shall be beaten with repentece, and haue no pity but his own tears. Thus spake imprisoned Meruine, while Tirus, Iacob and the other merchants, desperate to wish him any other god, than godnes in his death, prepared them to depart about the effecting of their sozen busines. They calling Minea said: Ladie, we are sooy for this disastrous misfortune which is chanced to imprisoned Meruine: yet the importance of our busynesse commands our departure for the mark at Boniuant approaching so neare, if we shold thence be absent, would highly redound to our losses: she answered them againe: Gentle-men depart at your best pleasures, and sooy all your care of Meruine, bestow it on my thoughts, which shall so busie themselves in that action, that before your returne I doubt not but purchase his liberty, so that he shall accompany you home to your country. To be briefe, her speaches so much satisfied them, that the next morning they tooke their iourney towards Boniuant: in which trauel we wil sooy a while leaue them, and speake alittle of the great king Baucamont, who calling Pimon a noble gentleman of his Court to him gaue him letters to carry to his two nephews, that is to say, to Brandis in Eclardia, and to Ancifer in Tartaria, which contained hie matter of intreay in the, so thend they shold aid him against the mighty king Meurmont of Montmét, who in despite had refused to bestow on him the beautifull Berea his daughter in mariage. The seruiceable gallant sonne effected the will of the king his master, and the two kings instantly upon thintreay, mustred so many of their men as were able to bare armes, and came to Damascus, where they were royally entertained, and among their discoussings Beaucamont discouered all the indignities conceiuued against Meurmont, first the denial of his daughter, then

## 57 the historie of Meruine.

then the disdaine of his embassade, and lastly, his threats of death to Pimon, whom he esteemed every way worthie of so great an employmen: the very encoutring whereof so im- prisoned his thoughts with such furie, that he sware by all the hie titles a king adozeth, not to leaue him a scote of earth in the world to be ruler of, if with penance he askt not mercie for his misdoing, (they two ayding him whom hee knew and ever esteemed invincible) with others. They quickly bound their consents to his impatience, and so forthwith caused all their naues to be rigged and thight in most royll manner, which in shott space they committed to the mercie of the mercifull god, hoysting vp their sailes, and sailing with a prosperous gale for many nights and dayes, til in the end Fortune (who ever will shew the nature of her condition, & clost them with a mighty scorning, which was more then grievously trouble- some unto them. And to the fauour of that same we wil leaue them for a while, and returne to poore imprisoned Meruine, whom Minea & Croysant with their never ceasing petitions, bribes, bowes, and protestations, had by this time deliuered: at the instant of whose enlargement, Tirus, Iacob, & the other merchants made their returne from Boniuant, and came directly to the house of Minea, who entertaines the most kindly: yet told them with a seeming countenaunce of sorrow, that by no meanes they could haue Meruin backe with them, be- cause he was adjudged sicke yeres imprisonment, and till the end thereof no releasement: and from thence forth an eternal banishment for ever from that countrey. This (said she is the agreement we haue made with the parties which pursue him and proud we are, we haue agreed vnder the price of his most precious life. Wherfore perswade reverent Barbin his father to expell griefe for his absence assuring him, my care shall ex- ceede, if possible, the care of a naturall mother, and my purse shalbe lauishly open to defray all the costs, charges, and his- detaines of Meruine from his auncles, and the famous Mor- dant

## The first part of

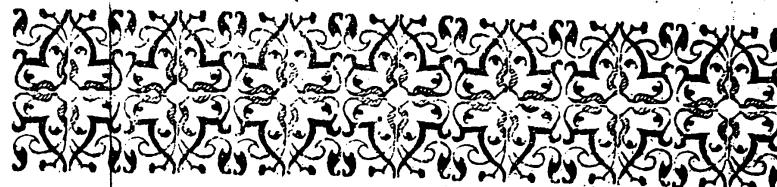
dant his excellent beast : I will preserue them for him as trophies wonne by diuine honour. Madam, said Iacob, the misteke of your wordes become well the vertues of your mind : wherefore, as reason bindeth vs, we are satisfied. To morrow before the sunne shall blesse the boosome of heareth, vs will begin our iorney, onely with this request, that we may see and salute Meruine before our departure. The heauens so bid, said Tyrus, Fie Iacob, thy speaches are too neare a kynde to thy old follies, for it will proue no saluation, but a prouocation to our owne deaths : for hence therby suspect may make vs parties to his actions. This speach of Tirus made Iacob cenderne himselfe of a little imprudente : so they rested with Minea for that night, and early the next moraing went aboard their shippes, and sallied with so fauorable a gulf, that in shart space they aymed at the port of Luternia, where they anchored their vessells, and from thence marched to Montment. The Historie saith, that this Iacob the marchant altogether frequented the court of king Meurmont, who for sundry vertues he shone in his honest simplicitie, loued him exceedingly, and tooke an intimate delight in his company. Now is Iacob entred into his owne gates, where his wife with all obseruances of true dety, kindly entertained him, and Tyrus the house of Barbin his father, who seeing him unaccompa- nied of any but his owne presence, blusht, as highly amaz- ed, and asked him, Faire sonne, where is Meruine thy brother that he is vreturned with thee, to make happy my desires. Deare father, replied Tyrus, he is taken psoner at Bzandis, which is a stong citie seated vpon the sea: pri- soner, said his father, tell me quickly for what cause? Sir, said he, with a fearefull trembling, Meruine whom you call my brother, is too fierce, proude, and of an ambitions aspicing spirite, me hath he altogether neglected, and bent his thoughts only on impoible indeuours. The cause of his

## the historie of Meruine.

his imprisonment is, for that he hath slaine seuen renowned knyghts at one instant with his sword. And from thence Tirus discoursed to his father all the deedes of Meruine, his promise to Minea to resuccor her sister, his danger in Bzandis, her deliuering him by meane of hostage, his going to Montfleur, his combat with Brohars, his backe returne to Bzandis, his deliuering Basina, his being there surprised, and lastly, his deliueray after six yeares imprisonment with perpetuall banishment, till when there was no expecting his returne. When Barbin with a grieuing toy had heard him recount all these famous exploits of Meruine, he askest Tyrus in all these dangers, what aid or help he had done for Meruine; and Tyrus tolde him, not any at all. Then the blood of anger started into the face of Barbin, and he said to Tyrus, False Pagan boy, recreant to true nobilitie, whyle didst thou safe him who would haue failed life for thy loues cause? Where was thy sleepy sword, that unsheathing it, thou didst not hazard to die in his rescue? By Mahomet, deare father, said he, I dare not fight, my weapons are only the wordes of an honest marchant: let Meruine, on whom the goddesse of warre is inamoured, fight for vs both, whille I in a peacefull climate winne hono, by my traffike. Thus disputed Tyrus with his father, to whom Chinalry was nothing beholding: but Barbin most sadly sorowfull for

the troubles of Meruine, flung away with great furie, making a solemne vow to Mahomet, either speedily to purchase his deliueray, or in the pursuite to spend his life and treasure.

60  
The first part of



CHAP. X.

1 Jacobs report to king Meurmont of the acts of Meruine. 2 Bereaes ioy. 3 The priuate conference betweene Berea and Jacob.



After Jacob was returned home, and had by a little rest giuen ease to his soare trauelled limbs, he demanded of his wife, if not any from the court had made inquierie of his returne: and his wife told him yes, a squire, whom as she imagined, belonged to the beautifull princesse Berea: therfore she persuaded him as a thing not vnecessary, to goe thither & to take with him from her to the princesse a most curiously wrought purse which of selfe purpose she had made for her. Smal persuasion preuailed. So Jacob tooke the purse and went to the Court, where being entred within the hall, he found the mighty king Meurmont, who was glad to see him, most gratiouly demandung of his welfare: to whom Jacob with hymble reverence answered as became a leial subiect. By Mahomet (qd the king) I feared greatly lest Baucamont the prouide king of Damas had met with thes, who is now comming to besiege me with so innumerable an host of men as to our seeming they double the stars of heauen. Credite me (redoubted soueraigne said Jacob) if it pleased Mahomet, or your gratiouous starres were so fortunate, that you had but to aide you xxx. such knights

every

61  
the historie of Meruine.

euery way as excellent as Meruine the sonne of Barbin the merchant, not Baucamonts power, nor the worlds infinitis were able to wrong you by swerd or violence: for why, Meruine is euen Victory it selfe, as fortunate as couragious, and both admirable, that wonder it selfe alone sits wondring at his actions, his hature instrueth valure, & his equal in euery vertue hath not issued from y wombe of a living mother, insomuch that my thoughts rather bind me to adore him as a god, then esteeme him as the son of Barbin my friend a merchant Berea, from whose eies loue borrowed a light to illuminate al the lampes of heauen, hearing Meruin thus highly exalted by the speech of Jacob, found a ioy exceeding al ioy, as much beyond compare, as her beauty aboue equalitie, triumphantly dominering through her royal beines, enriching her heart with the treasurie deliuered to hit parts. wherfore like babes, gredy of sweete meates till they even surfe with delight, shew further demandide of Jacob, where hee had beheld Meruin in that warlike sort, whitch made him eschew so rare a Martialist. Divine Lady, qd Jacob, by that religioun faith I owe our great god Mahomet, I haue seen him in so dangerous fight, and in such unspeakable trouble, that never knight hath indured or performed so mightie a warclare with such unspeakable vertue. And there haue in selfe maner discoursed al the exploits done by Mernin, as Tyrus before had reported to his fater: whitch not onely bred an amazement in the King, but an inwardntite loue, insomuch that from the boundlesse humour of his affection, he heartily wished he were his sonne. And withal fath, incomparabile Meruine, might but thy hature ingirdle my fortunes, excellently wouldest thou revenge me of these ouer datering Kings, who come to asaille me: but woe is me, base is the deserte of thy lineage, that should I hold thee as my supporter, diuourour wold attach me with indigneitie: yet I am assyred, shoud I send to thes Count Brandis, he wold not for a world deny his delivery.

C 3

Thus

## 62 The first part of

Thus reasoned the King in himselfe, diversly halde with the divers arguments of hate and desire.

2 But Berea in whome the extremitie of pleasure challenged an intent of inheritance, gaue to the possession of her heart, and surrendered al her spirits to the dispose of loue, and her happy fortune. Yet as a corrector of passion, when hee grew to great a Libertine, she would sometimes sigh, and chide her forgetfull conceits, saying Care to purchase his returne, ought to busie them from their delight: & then would shee create a thousand thoughts, how to bring him backe whose absence diuorct her from her happy longings. Whiles thus shee and the King were both musing, shee of his vertues, hee how he became so vertuous. Jacob, who perceiued in them both a dumbe wish ing, saide to the King. Trust me (my soueraigne) if either affaice may be had in my true intent, or trust in my counsel your Maiestie shall vndoubtedly send for him, sith his presence is an assured conquest, & the gods alone haue sworne he shall command & control victorie, whose like for mightinesse of shape, & courageous resolution hath not bene seene in all our former ages. The King to these words would returne no answer, but as one desirous to forget his own deires, talked of other matters, to expel the thoughts of these proceedings.

3 But Berea, who made pretious every time with the pretielenesse of her regarde, now finding opportunity (a kinde agent to her hopes,) drew Jacob aside into a private corner (greedy to know an end of that which in her could attaine to no end) said vnto him, Jacob, by that excellent creator which created me, thou hast maried my delight to a delight beyond delight, in thy longe prayses of that delical yong man whome we cal Meruin, because I haue knownen him, even from the infancie of his infancie to these riper yeres of youth that haue infranchised

## 63 the historie of Meruine.

infranchised him from the artifices of schole rudimentes: yet in all that time, nor in my time haue I seene a creature more admirably compact, or in whom valure, and aduenture haue held more preheminence. Believe me, and by my soules god Mahomet I protest, it is a pitie deserving more then a pitiful regard, that he wanteth lands and revenues worthy to enrich him with honour: but most of all grievous, that he is no gentleman, in whom al the condicions of gentrie chalengeth such a wonderous prerogatiue. Ha, diuine lady (sayd Jacob) Meruine hath all whatsoeuer Nature or heaven can infuse into a mortall creature, or man or woman can bestow of a blessed infant. As for land, it is as fruitelesse as tassellie, if labour gyne it not a stedet relash: valure is the merrits of his deuotion, and he is excellently valiant the heaven climbing conicte, wherof doubtlesse will mount him on the highest steppe of honor. If I may well say what in my conceit portendeth to a well meaning intent, were I King of Hotigaria, Calabria, & Polonia, and for a blessing of thole hie dignities, had but one sole daughter twise fairer then the fairest euer Mahomet creasid, I would give her and it only to Meruin: yea, and imagin it a dowrie much to little for the vertue, force, and true magnitutie with which he is so gloriously adornd. When the paragon of al perfections, the most beutiful Berea heard these words, first she blushed as a rayd, lest his eyes had stopt their sight in her inward desires, and then drivn away the blushe with a pale mantle of shamefull rejoycing, to heare him so admired, exchanging white & red so often in her countenance that the beholders might well growe incharmed with those colouris, and perholt them never more excellent, & yet for alott excellent when equally in it, they bare like sonet aightle in her angel exaulting face. After this contending superiortie of looks, she turned aside, & whispered thus to her selfe. I am Meruine, Meruine; the many prases of thy retorne, are the infinite golde whis thy lone induceth out my hart, leaving

## 64 The first part of

no restraint to my desires, but the palls of vertue : & yet thou knowest it not, it is now more then six yeres since first lone  
fleight from thine eies to harbour in my heart, yet thou  
knewest it not : onely haue my bowes aspiced to heauen, soz  
thar, yet thou knewest it not, neither dare I (alas) for the base-  
nesse of thy linage take away this ignorant mischiefe of my  
blisse. Alas thou knowest it not. Yet shuld I live an exile fro  
my fathers countrey (so a divine vnioun, cald mariage, had  
made vs one soule) I had rather endure a tormenting quill  
with thy presence, then al the gorgeous aduancement, heauen  
or mine own wishes could giue or desire, with the greatest pa-  
gan emperour of the world. Thus spake Berea the glory of  
Nature, who when Jacob perceiued so passionat, fearing less  
the so great liberalitie of his words had offended, in this ma-  
ner began to excuse them. Deare lady (sayd he) be not offend-  
ed that the height of my praises haue attained no higher a  
subject then Meruine, who is higher in my thoughts, then  
heauen is: the eie of any man: neither impute errore to my spe-  
ches, sith by heauen I haue not lied in any thing, neither spo-  
ken to flatter the priuate conceit of any peculiar, nor the pub-  
lique auditorie of so gracious an assembly: but what I haue  
said, even the wings of every wind will whisse. Then graci-  
ous madam wouldest your countenance from me, neither be-  
displeased with my rude reporings. Ha no, quickly answered  
Berea, who was willunger to increase bolums, then abridge  
a letter, thy words moue me no amasement of dislike, there-  
fore I beseech thee saile not, but come and speake with me in  
my chamber before thy departure from the court. At this the  
lady and Jacob discouered themselves, and Jacob went ag-  
aine unto the king, who euuen then was riotally set at dinner,  
and commanded Jacob to attend him & the Daegene. Then  
began the king to discourse ths hie malice of Baucamont &  
of his warlike expedition towards Montment, with all the  
occurrences of that intended warfate, as a troublous them  
whereof

## 65 the historie of Meruine.

whereof only his mind noted. After dinner was ended, and  
the king risen Jacob humbly took his leaue to depart, yet ere  
he went, he inquired the way to the yong pryncesse Bereas  
lodgings, and thither he went: but she, poore lone-toorne lady,  
was laid on a little couch couerd with rich tissue, tormenting  
her heart with her thoughts, and her thoughts with loue, so  
exceedingly, that the abundance of her sorow gave liberty to  
her tongue to vtter, and in uttering to double her languor:  
ay me, qd she, dearer then the dearest of my selfe to me. O  
only absolute Meruine, thy absence is my death, and thy re-  
membrance the continual obsequies for my deceas'd happi-  
nes: yet is my death blameles, sith I die for the most wise,  
most beautifull, most valiant, and most accomplit shrewe  
in the world, whose renowne is spread throughout Galile, and  
all the corners of the earth. Ha Meruine, Meruine, when shal  
I behold the day of thy arriuall: when shall I bathe my eies  
in thy eies, whisper in thy eare, and hang on thy bosome? O  
excellent loue unknowne to ths, thou hast my loue, my ver-  
tuous loue, governe me then as thy captiue, and dispose me  
as thy servant. At these wordes beating the pallace of her  
breast, she turned and tossed, as if the motion of her bodie  
could remoue her passion, but it was impossible. Then cal-  
ling an eunuch to her commanding him to marry his voice  
to his lute, she bade him sing some canzonet that might rather  
kil than increase passion: the eunuch sung as followeth:

I doe not now complaine of my disgrace,  
Though neuer soule of greater grieves could bost:  
Nor of the houre, season, time nor place.  
Nor of my foile, for any freedome lost.  
Nor of my liues ioy by misfortune danted,  
Nor of my wit, with ouerweening strooke,  
Nor of my fense with any sound enchanted,  
Nor of the force of fierie pointed looke.

Nor

## The first part of

Nor of the steele that strikes within my wound,  
Nor of my thoughts, by worser thoughts defacde:  
Nor of the life I labour to confound.  
But I complaine, that being thus disgracde: (flaine,  
Fetterd, feard, frātike, charmd, fied, shorthrogh,  
My death is such, as I may not complaine.

On the last clause of this sonet, the noble merchant Jacob entred her chamber, whom so soon as Berea beheld, she gaue some respite to her mones, while a sēming ioy ouershadowed her face, and an inward resolution (for many god parts she knew in him) toke hold on her heart, giuing her assurānce without feare, to make him priuie to her long hid affection. Wherefore after due reverencē done to her greatness, and a gratiōus welcome deliuerd from her silent looke, she bade him sit downe by her, and with a trembling voice the true herald of a vertuous meaning, chus said vnto him: Jacob, let it not sēme strange to theē, that hauing gone one step beyond wisedome, I ſæk by danger to ouerrun feare, and let me coniure theē by that power, to whom in thy deuotion thou haſt giren power ouer thy being, to keepe ſecret in thine inward ſoule, what my ouerburdened hart shall vnlode vnto theē. Jacob in whom wonder had raised a hie colour of amazement anſwered: Lady, by that inuolate faith due to our great god Mahomet, I promise to keepe ſecret in the inclosure of my ſoule whatſoever you propound vnto me. Know then qd ſhe (I chide me not wheſt thou knowſt what I blash to know) at ſuch time as I lay at Turgen with my mother nurſed: not farre from thence the beautifull Meruine (on whom boating Nature had beſtowed all her treaſure) went to ſchōle, whither I much frequented to learene the knowledge of diuine philoſophy: but alas the knowledge I learned was the conſounding of my understanding: for there, even there became I ſurprized with the beaſties of Meruine,

## the historie of Meruine.

Meruine, and ſo intangled with the loue of his perſecutions, that his thought is my torment, and his abſence my death: ſo as if his returne be long, my life will be ſhort, ſo much my loues martidome wounds me with intolerable loue: yet I take Diana to my witnes, that al my loue hath bin honorably chaste, in ſuch ſort as became my vertue, or my faſthers daughter, neither is he yet acquainted with my deſire, nor haue I to any but thy ſelf, bemoned my vnhaftines, or diſcouered my loue. Wherefore I pray theē by the hebenet paſſion of an unſainted louer, make meaſes for his return, ſith many yeares are paſt in my remembrance ſince his depar- ture. Lady ſaid Jacob, it is but x. montheſ the laſt weeke paſt ſince his depar- ture. Ten montheſ anſwered the Lady: Ay me, every day is a woldes age in the computa- tion of my mind, ſo flown is the paſſage of my ſorowes: wherefore, by all the vertues of thy mind, & the loue thou beaſt to Meruine, I coniure theē, to yoyne with me in ſome happy ſcata- geme by which we may wooke his returne to this country. By Mahomet, qd Jacob, Lady I can not poſſibly inuen- tione. Then haue I deuiled the way (replied Berea) & thus it is: You ſhall to morrow morning come to my chamber to ſpeak with me, at what time I will haue written a letter in my faſhers name to the counte Brandis, & hauing this night priuily taken his ſcale, ſigne it therewith in ſuch ſort as you haue Mernine deliuered you. Then ſhall you take Barbin with you, but by no meaſes make him priuie to our complots, but ſithy maintaine, it is the act of my faſher. When you haue Meruine, at ſuch time as Baucamont who ſhortly wil beleager vs, ſhal detaine his army, bring him grimed at all points into the field, to yoyne with my faſher, and doubt not of his intertwine whose ſucces wil be ſo graciouſ. Jacob accordeed to al he could inuenient or deſire, & ſo departed, leaſing the lady to herſelfe, to ſtudy on the inwiting of a letter ſo weighty, which at length ſhe perſited to hir own con- tent.

68  
The first part of

tment, and then sealed it with the kings alone seale. And in the morning Jacob came and received it, protesting a diligent regard in performance of such a royll affaire. The lady gave him infinite thanks, with promise of an inspeakable reward, and then she delivred him an C. duckats to defray his ordinarie charge, and a curious wrought chaine, of pearle and gold, which she charged him in hit lounes name, to present to Meruine, and withall to let him understand the interest he held in her loun. All which with solemne othes he boyled honestly and zealously to performe. Then Jacob tooke leuge of the Lady, and came to the house of Barbin, to whom he said, My best friend Barbin make your selfe ready with all sped to go with me from the R. to Brandis, to fetch your son Meruine home againe. Barbin, to whom no sound could bring swester melody, told him the newes was balme to his grieses. So dispatching his busnes, and taking order for his home occasions they departed together in great hast, whom on the seas sailing towards Brandis we will leue, and a whille speake of king Baucamont, and thother pagan princes, who after the late forme sound so prosperous a gale, that he arrived at the port of Luternia, a moneth after the departure of Jacob and Barbin. Thence they marched with conquest to Mermont, which city they besieged with two hundred thousand Turks. After they were lodged and entrenched Baucamont caled a council of his chiefeſt barons, and consulted among them what was to be done, and whether it were best to assault it at their first approach, I or no. To which opinion of assaulting Eclamard diſſented, saying, Rather would I hold the first decree agreed of amongst vs, which is, to ſend y. of your approued knyghts to Mermont, to whom wherfore we came hither, and what caule hath ſown thiſſed of warfare among vs, requeſting his daughter the beautefull Berea, which if he will ſend to you to be ioined in the holy bands of mariage, that then we wil return to our countries,

69  
the historie of Meruine.

countries, otherwise indure the ytermoſt wroſt of warres afflictions: and this hold I the ſafeſt course in our proceedings, because if here we lengthen out time with a long and lingring warfare, Gualtier the Dane, now raigning in Babylon, and Guion of Denmarke both brothers to the euer renowned Oger, who at this instant beare ſuch eternall hate to pagana, may in our abſence exile our peace from our owne countries. Againe, which is of greateſt auiale againſt vs, one of great knowledge reuealed to me, that the mighty emperor king Charles of France, meaneſt this ſeafon to viſiſe them, and to adore the holy ſepulchre of their god. Wherefore the ſpedier we make our returne, the ſtronger our owne peace, and ſafetie of our countries; for the abſence of kings are the deaths of nations.

CHAP. XI.

1 Of the diſpatch of Baucamonts two knyghts to Mermont. 2 Mermont in diſpight of Baucamont imprisoſeth them. 3 Of the assault, 4 and death of Clarissa the coward.

He couiſell of Eclamard, Baucamont and all his Barons applaude as moſt excellent, wherfore at that preſent was Morgant and Nigron roialy diſpatched for the embaſſade, who in ſolemne maner entered into the citie, and thence were conueied to the pallace, where ascending a paire of ſtately ſtares, they entered into the great chamber

## The first part of

ber; where they found the king Mermont accompaned with a number of worthy Barons, to whom Morgant first speaking, gave this salutation, That Mahomet the eternall regent and possessor of the whole world, who kappeth from euill & lendeþ vñending dayes to the myghtie Baucamont king of Damascus, the same Mahomet confound his enemies, whose weapons mainefaire warre against him. Then he proceded thus in his ambassage: King Mermont, the king my master salutes the by vs, and saith he wondereth whither thine ancient wisdom is dead, that thou refusest to give him thy faire chaste daughter, whose euery excellencie, the height of his roiall dignities shall counterpoise: therefore these ars his latell summons, either now send her by vs to make happy his desires, or hereafter it will be to late to repent thy lices end, ending thy glories: If then wold thou scoup the ambition of thy will, sending her with a trée consent, the mariage without delay shall be solemnized, and all his roiall army shal depart without damage to thy countrey.

2 When Mermont with an often exchanging cheeke had heard his deliuerie, cholerike anger roused vp his lion spirits teaching his brow such frowns of displeasure, that Morgant quaked to behold the. Then said Mermont, take those insolent oratores of disgrace, & cast them into some hideous gies, covering tungacon, for that is both my reply and resolution, where in despight of Baucamont, their woes shall consume their breathes. At these wordes they were each one on every side (having nothing to say for themselves, but prayers to Mahomet for their protection) taken & cast in most lothsome imprisonment, where their day was blacknesse, and the breath they drew, the aire of their sighes before breathed.

3 After this the king Mermont caused an alarme to be cried oner all the city: then calling Clarissa, said unto him, let

it

## the historic of Meruine.

It not be troublesome to thee honorabile Clarissa, that this day I commit into thine invincible protection, mine ensigne, the glory and badge of my digntie, sith to thy worth the earth hath refused to beare an equall, as the glory of thy carriage at our last triumph was a sufficient witnes, thy wisdom is the gouerner of my faine, & thy fortitude the hope of my redempcion. By earthes god (answered Clarissa) banish al doubtfull feare, for I will support thy standard with such resolution as shal become the greatnessse of so royal a burden, (wo alas, had but Mermont knowne his extreme cowardise, not the world could haue made him hazard his honour in so weake handes) & his imaginid reputation was but y stolne shadow of Meruines perfection. Now Clarissa wounded to death with his owne glory, had no succour to flie unto, but his chamberlaine that only was privie to what passed betwxt Meruin & him, who at that instant lay exceedingly sicke of a quafane feuer. Wherefore comming to him, Clarissa sayd, either must thou note rife and sustaine my falling fortune, or all the honor that I haue won by y euer conqvering handes of invincible Meruine, will now utterly be lost, & I confounded: for the myghtie Standard of king Mermont this day is delivered to my protection, and what a neuuer dying shame it were thou know st, if it be not carried with redoubted valiancie, when inumerable blowes eternizeth the holmes of deaths tragedians. Sir. sayd the chamberlain (who euene then was piteously ague shaken, were all the golden mines of the world proposed to me for recompense, it were impossible to raise me, because in my boode wantes vital habilitie. When Clarissa heard him, he stroke him with so fierce a cowards blow, that two of his teeth flew out of his mouth, & then departed out of the chamber in great choler, and came to king Mermont whom he intreated with al the spad he could to give an alarme to the tentes of his enimies, who as yet secure dreameit of no danger, & by that surprise, doubted not but to attains infinite renowne. And these words

## The first part of

wordes were uttered with such a trembling sprite, that king Mermont in that fader, might haue read his cowardise, if soverne reueline had not blinde suspect. But he feared him not so, that at his entreatie, he with all his Barons sallied from the towne, being 10000 well ordered souldiers. When as Baucamont beheld the comeingesse of their march, he called all his barons together, and sayd. Behold lordes in what warlike pompe king Mermont bringerh the paragon of beautie, divine Berea, to be espoused to our greatnesse. I charge therefore every soule on allegiance and my loue, that they be ready to receve them with all y honour possible can be devised. Thus spake he whose thoughts were fowlen beyond y Alpes farre from the purpose of Mermont for he came accopanied with the king of Calabria named Sallaries, and of his bwother Marandus, to whom he vied contrary eloquence, saying. Valiant and heroike commanders, we are but a point to the great circle of our enemies, a handfull to a boundlesse masse, let vs keepe together, and making of our many but one true strength, fight like a not to be sundred mountain, that when the great hoste of our foes is conuictid, we may with smal or no losse, make an honorable retrait to Montment. To these wordes the whole armie gaue a shoute of consent, and withall spurring their horses, gaue a gallant charge on the face of their enemies: but Clarissa, whose heart was then bentid with a cold palsy, durst not carie y standard upright, least the viewe of that marke of honour shold encline the ambitious minded mighty ons to assaile his faint hardines which al the armie of Montment, to their griefe perceived, so y Mermont with his fellowes in unspeable furie, thrust himselfe amogst his enemies, even amogst their tents which they cut & hewed down in admirable maner, killing their foes as they went in huge multitudes. There was never a turke that Mermont met, but he stroke him dead to the earth, crying to al his host, Lordes and renowmed fellowes, strike couragiously, & neither feare

## the historie of Meruine.

feare king, prince nor peasant, for this day haue I taken conquest my prisoner. At these wordes, a pleasant angry Turk went to Baucamont, & sayd: Glory my soueraigne be to thy wedding day, for Mermont hath brought his daughter on his sword, and tendered her vnto the priest, with such memorable blowes, that if you seone acknowledge not satisfaction, his painment will impoverish you of all your attendants. Baucamont hearing, & angry to heare this, tooke his lance, and swore by all the deitie of Mahomet, to bee gloriouly revenged on Mermont, and then like a stormie whislewind he ran into the hoste of Montment, crying Damas, Damas, for the glory of Damas. Then began the fight to renue his age, and to shew himselfe in his lustiest youth, doubling the deaths and wounds, of the both sides pursuing pagans. A none Baucamont being mounted on his sted Marcheuall, which sometimes belonged to the euer renowmed duke Oger, the father of Meruine, he perceiued where Mermont rode triumphing in the conquest of his sword, whom he pursued with a valiant emulation, till Mermont beholding him, turned to encounter him, and sayd: Now Baucamont receiue from my sword the lone salut of Berea, whom before thou shalt enjoy this earth, the common receptacle of the dead, shal be mine instant habitation. Then with their wounding heeles spurring their horses, they encountred either other so furiously, that both flied from their horses to the ground.

4 Assone as Clarissa beheld the king his master ouerthrown, as if his coward heart had a sympathie of euery mans afflictions, he before himselfe to flight, but far had not the wings his wee borne him, but a pagan, who all the day had obserued his faint hartednes, came vpon him, and gaue him such a blow with his sword, that he fell smore dead from his horse, yelding to a shamefull life, a sodaine death. But al this while Mermont & Baucamont assailed ech other with

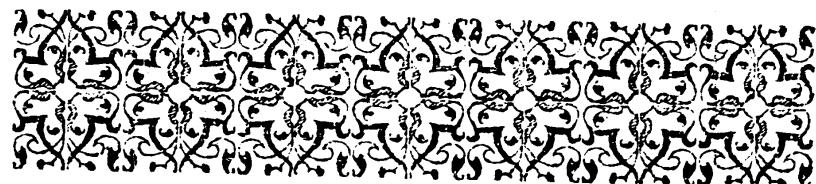
## 74 The first part of

such kingly magnificence, that al the army stood in an amaze to behoile them. In the end Mermont by the helpe of many handes was remounted, after which he assailed Baucamont with inestimable cruelty, yet he by the miraculouſe aide of his pouers, which were infinite, defended himſelfe, & deſpit of ſpight got on the backe of Marchial. Then began the bat-  
tel, as if til then it had not begun, during which lamentable effuſion, the king Sallames perceiuing Eclamard who had ſlaine a countleſſe number of his hōſt, came running againſt him & gaue him ſuch a well wiſhing blowe, that if the pagan had not ſpedily turnd, he had neuer turnd more than the laſt turne which turneth to life eternall: notwithſtanding, the blowe was ſent from ſo willing a ſpirit of anger, that glan-  
cing downe, it diſſeuerd his hand from his arme, which when Eclamard ſeit, he ſpurred his hōſle, and betooke his flight to his tent, whilſt the whole armie which then were ſadly diſ-  
comfordeſ, aduifeſ him to returne and incloſe Mermont, which Sallames underſtanding, ſoorthwith gaue counſell to retrait, leſt that a ſodaine incloſure ſhould deſeit their gotten happyneſſe, which they diſ moſt honorably, retirg pace by pace to the towne, their faces ſtill fixt on their ene mies: but in this retrait Mermont loſt much, because Baucamont fo-  
lowed exceeding cloſe, yet neuertheleſſe, the other ſide loſt much moſe, who returned to their tents diſcontented, be-  
cause unrevenged. Now was Mermont brought to his pa-  
lace, where his Daueine and daughter roialy receiued him, deſmaunding both his health and ſuſſeſſe in battell, which he reſpoſed in doubtfull maner, ſaying, both ſides had loſt, yet allſuring them that Baucamont ſhould neuer live to enioy Berea, to which words Berea gaue humble thanks with princely reverenſe. Then deſmaunded Berea what was be-  
come of Clarissa, to whom the king ſayd, If thou loueſt me daughter, name not the base traitor, whose cowardiſe would neuer giue him leauue to ſtrike one blowe, either with ſword

02

## 75 the historie of Meruine.

or lance, till he was ſlayne by the hands of a common ſoul-  
dier. Many other diſcourses the king and his barons held, til ſupper being ſerued, they ſate downe: which no ſooner finiſh-  
ed, bat Berea went to the chamber of Clarissa chariſterlain, to whom ſhe reported his maſters deaſh. Lady ( ſayd he ) grine not for his deſtine, for why, his merite was of al men leaſt deſeruing, & he altogetheſ unmeete, either for ſkirmiſh or battell. And there he diſcourſed unto her all his ſtolne glo-  
ry, how the prize he had before wonne, was not his, but the prouelle of young Meruine, and that he himſelfe had bere many times arm'd in his name. And laſtly, of the ungentle-  
manly blow he gaue him, because he refuſed to weare his ar-  
mour, & beare the ſtandard of Mermont in that laſt battell.



### CHAP. XII.

1 The arriual of Jacob, and Barbin at Brandis. 2 The pre-  
ſenting of the letter to the Counte. 3 Meruine is deli-  
uered to them. 4 Minea perſuaded Croiſant to accom-  
pany Meruine, which he did, with 400. horſemen.



Then all the worldſ beauteous eie, beauteouſ  
Berea underſtood, that Clarissa had got the  
honour of the Joust, and the priz'd cup, not by  
himſelfe, but by the diuine valiant hand of her  
best beloved Meruine, moideſtly her heaſt  
capred in her boſome, and ſhee vnaile to conteine her  
thoughts, departed to her chamber, where ſitl thidwing  
her ſelfe upon her bed, and then taking a well ſpeaking

F 2

lute,

## 76 The first part of

lute, he apparelléd her voice to the sounding strings, and  
sung in this maner:

Eyes with your teares, blind if you bee,  
Why haue those teares such eyes to see?  
Poore eyes, if your teares can mooue  
My teares, eyes then must moane my lone:  
Then eyes since you haue lost your sight,  
Weepe still, and teares shall lend you light,  
Till both dissolve, and both want night.

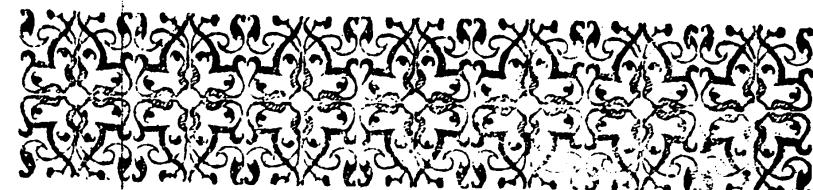
No, no cleare eyes, you are not blind,  
But in your teares discerne my mind,  
Teares is the language which you speake,  
Which my heart counting, it must breake:  
Then cease ill tongue to tll my wrongs,  
My sighes shall get them better tongs,  
To tell what heauen to loue belongs.

After she had sung this, as if the lute doubled her imagina-  
tions, she threw it from her, & with erected hands & beteared  
eyes, she sayd. Thou onely honour to beautie, exellent Mer-  
uine, be grattous to my thrall, and retoze my miserie, & you  
gentle windes, quickly and with easie muruare, conuey my  
passions into his eares, whereas yet never entred my lamen-  
tations: be spedie honourable Iacob, and assure the hono: of  
my affections, else shall my desires be my death, and loue my  
burial: thus lamented she, in whom woe was louely, because  
adorned with her loue: but Meruin altogether skillesse of her  
complaint, led in Brandis a most pleasant and delectable life:  
for why? the Countesse therof did loue him with a most per-  
fit and sincere loue, so likewise did Minea, whose careful in-  
timacie so regarded him, that it was more laborsome for him  
to wish, then to attaine the end of his wish, but the absolutely  
virtuous

## 77 the historie of Meruine.

virtuous Meruine never had unchaste thought, nor euer ac-  
companied woman but Berea, whom he married, and begate  
of her Orient, the fater of the seauen signes, as is written  
in the holy historie of Godfrey of Bullein. But I will leaue  
them, and returne to Iacob and Barbin, who attaing at  
Brandis, and comming to the house of Minea, were solemine-  
ly received of her and all her attendants. Then Barbin in-  
quired of the health of Meruine, and was assured by her,  
that he was excellently well, for that she had supped with  
him the last night. Then he told her, that his occasions im-  
pouuned him to goe to the earles court to deliver him a let-  
ter for the release of Meruine. The musike of this newes  
entred harshly into hereates, for that she wylt nothing less  
then the departure of Meruine, yet she couered it vnder a  
deceitfull shadowe of contentment, and then conducted them  
to the earles pallace, where they found him with a falcon on  
his fist: ( for his delight was wholy in hauking ) but when  
the Counte beheld Minea, he sayd, Lady, what occasion hath  
drawen you into these parts? Then Iacob drawing forth  
the letter, gaue the earle this salutation.

Mahomet that is our god, and the god of Asia, preserue  
the mighty king Meurmont, and blesse you, whom that  
god king kindly regreath by these letters. Then in most  
humble maner, kissing the superscription, he preser-  
ved them to his hands, who breaking open  
the seales, read them, the tenure  
whereof was this.  
( : )



¶ The letter of king Mermont,  
to the Counte Brandis.



Ost thrise excellent and re-  
nowned Counte Brandis,  
we haue beene aduertised,  
that for lan occasion of no  
great moment, more then  
the defence of a spotlesse re-  
putatiō, you hold one of our  
liege people prisoner. Wher-  
fore, by vertue of our royll authoritie, wee com-  
maund you, that without delay, or further pro-  
longing of excuse, you returne him to our sauved  
handes, and send vs in writing all the articles of his  
imprisonment: and we protest by the holy title of  
our Crowne, to make full satisfaction. If o-  
therwise you repell, and effect the  
contrary, expect nothing,  
but the vttermost worst  
of our indgnation.

Written at Mermont,

and signed Mermont.

79  
the historie of Meruine.

No sooner had the earle read this letter which Berea had composed and sealed with her fathers seale, but he says to Iacob, honourable sir, your welcome is as god as your owne desires can intreat, and most willingly shal you haue Meruine restored, who, if he had wronged me a thousand fold moze then he hath, yet would I deliver him for the loue of the famous king Mermont, to whom I am in kinred nearest allied: & assure his highnesse, that if I had knownen him for one of his subiects, I would not haue detained him for a kingdome.

¶ Tis vaine to make a long tale of a light subiect: Meruine was sent for, & delivered to Iacob, & his father Barbin, who accepted him with al ioy, and imbraced him with the highest contentment: and he on the other part did that duetifall reuerence, which either a son ought, or a father expecteth. Then the earle sayd vnto him, Meruine this night will I do thee hono: to sup with me, because for the loue of king Mermont I haue forgotten thy misdignes: & then the Seuer being arived, the kings service was sent vp, & they feasted with great pompe. The solemnitie being ended, Iacob, Barbin & Meruine, went with Minea, to her house, where they lay for that night: yet before they went to their rest, Iacob drew Meruine apart in secret, and told him in wel couched phrasēs, adorned with a most graue & stately countenance, that the diuine lady of all hearts, only beautifull Berea saluted him, sending him that sacred chaste affection which no time could outweare, nor force violatē. In briefe, he laid open all the large volume of her loue, & how she had composed that letter which was the meane of his redemption, with many other testimonies of her holy desires; vuen on the tip of Iacobs tongue, as he was tal-  
king, late Loue heading new darts, and from thence toke his flight into the heart of Meruine, wherē he commented of all that was spoken, doubling each praise, and redoubling every perfection, and in the end, in that religious Sanctuarie, set

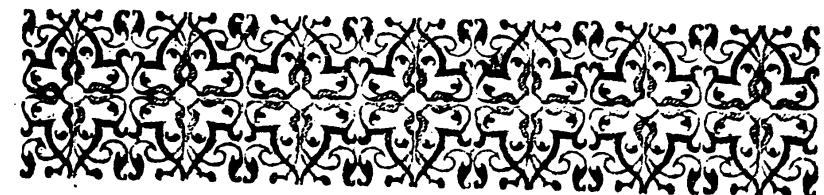
## The first part of

80  
dowpe this immoueable iudgement, that Berea was most excellent, worthy of all loue, & therefore by him shouleuer be beloved. Hence began the sparkles of loues purest order, and hence grew an vnlimited desire in Meruine, spedily to behold his new selected goddesse. Then Iacob presented to him from hit a paire of gorgeus gloves, on which was imbrodered a turtl done in a bower of roses, and this Pette, *N*ever euer alone, which Meruin received as kindly, as they were sent willingly, often killing and rebilling them, as the blessed ensigns of a fortunate loue. By this the night grew old, so that euery one betooke them to their rest: but Meruine that night indented with his new thoughts that they should exile sleepe from his eyes, and make his rest the resting on his loues imaginacions: and so they did.

4 But when Minea perceived that Meruine must so soone depart, she sent a messenger in all hast to Croisant, to intreate him to bring all his power to conduct Meruine to his owne country: the which he did, bringing with him to Brandis foure hundred horsemen his attendants. When the morning had set open the gates, through which the day might passe, Meruine arose and desired his father & the rest to make haste in their departure: he longed exceedingly to see his brother Tyrus, and the rest of his kinred: but they that could haue read on the table of his desires might haue seene it was Berea to whom his wishes aspired. By this they were all ready, then Minea brought him his armes, and his sword, and one of his squires brought him his mace shordant, whereon he lightly vaulted without the aide of stirrop, and said: Ladies, to whom my service is bound in an eternall band, be Mahomet euer gracious to you, and graunt you all what you can desire. At this the countesse and Minea kill him, and then they departed: but the earle himselfe wold needs be their conduct to their shippes, giving Iacob

## the historie of Meruine.

Iacob a letter to deliver king Mermont, imposting that he had set Meruine quit of all accusations. And further, that if his maiestie pleased to commaund him or his power against the enemies of his commonwealthe, hee was ready, and would take it for a grace of unspeakable kindnes. Thus haing brought them to their shippes, and seene them abord, with triumph he returned to his castle, and Iacob, Barbin, Meruine, Croisant, and the 400. horsemen bequeathed themselves to the fauor of the seas, and the winds mercy, of whom we will cease to speake, and treat of other matters.



### CHAP. XIII.

1 The incounter betweene Gallien, Rotherus, the sonne of Oliver and Meruine, 2 Of the good knight Drobis. who yeelded himselfe to Meruine.



He euer memorabile record of this famous history maketh mention, that in the same time that Meruine was departed from Brandis, as is before written, there was sailing upon that sea, vpon whiche he then daunted, many French Christian knights, that forsooke the flowrie countrey of Fraunce, to behold the divine sepulchre of their holie Sauour, amongst whom Oliver that was exterminated by Marfilius, had begotten on Iaquelin, whom Oliver the beauteul daughter of the rich king named Hugues of Constantinople, at such time as the truce was made by Charlemaine and his twelve peers. There was also with this Gallien

## The first part of

Galien, Rotherus another knight, the remembrance of whose vertue, might exceedingly wel equal the most praise-worthy reputatis: he had to name Droles, who after that time became friend to Meruin, as shalbe fully mentioned in this present history. Behold now these christians chased by the unmercifull fury of a violent storm, arrived neere unto Meruin, who first perceiving them, cried to his companions, this day is better then a Sabbath to my desires, for I discover a ship laden w. th christian gallants: if it be rich, be yours the profit of their wealth, vouchsafe me no bootie but prowelße, and honor to my sword, which is al I desire to deserue. And at these words a courageous fire of valiant fury invironed his heart. Now if the zealous minded christians, when they beheld the pagans were ouerun with a doubtfull feare of their successse wonder not, for they were but thirtie and those il appointed both for armour and munition, so that if the eie of heauen behold them not with a pityng aspect, their liues and honoura are all in jeopardy by the valiancy of Meruin. Cosin Gallien said Droles, behold how these pagans draw neare to assault vs, if Iehouah looke not from heauen, he ie shal our liues pay their last soule. Feare not cosine (replied Gallien) for by that faith I owe to th. Almichtie, so long as I can hold my battel ax in my hand, so long wil I maintain my liberty, and doubt not but to send thousands of them to hell. Ha cosine, against the foes of religion we ought to be eternaly valiat, yet if God in his great booke of destinie haue set dor ne our tragedies in this conflict, let vs receiue with ioyfullnes what we cannot repel with unwillingnes: Yet I protest to you by the greatest protestation of a christian soule, that before I be taken, Ile infranchise so many pagan soules from their cursed bodies, that the crimson currents of their blood, shall vouchsafe my hands a perpetuall couerture. While Gallien was speaking this, Meruin and his companions, being already prepara for the battel, boorded Gallien, to whom Meruin haled & dema

## the historie of Meruine.

demanded whence, and what they were, whose white crosses were (said he) the signes of christianity which he had boorded to root from the face of all nations. Scarcely was his last word ended, but the pagan mariners assaulted the christians whom Meruine & the rest with their swords in their fistes, violently seconde, making almost the beginning and ending one moment. Where might the eie of man behold a lamentable spectacle; for of xxx Christian soules in a trice were xxvi. breathlesse, only iij. suruiving, which were Gallien Droles, and y. others, which breathed scarce a breath, before their breaths vanished, but Droles turning aloft his steelebewing sword (which the counte of Meulant had giuen him, when he fought against Sodonas) slew an infinit number of the valiant Sarazens but Gallien caried himselfe so couragiously that he never stroke blow with his axe, but he dispeured the life from the body. When Croisant sawe the prowelße of Gallien, he cried unto his people, that they shold not for a world kil him, because he would present him as a great estimate to king Mermont: but that word of lifes safety cost him more by much than he desired to tender: for Gallien smote so thicke with his axe, that the Pagans in abundance tumbled into the sea, Gallien still crying H. George and me; and withall crying; Thou holy Lamb of Iuda, comfort thy people. All this while the valiant acts of Meruine the son of Oger did, were wonders beyond wonder, and more than words haue power to deliuer: yet what he did, he ill did, sith it was to exalt Mahomet, & shew himselfe an invincible pagan, yet ought he not be hated for his misbelieve, but curse with immortall malediction, that false fairy Gratiana, who stealing him, told not the truelth of his birth and being. Gallien and Droles made great resistance against the pagans, but the highest valure is profitlesse against an higher resolution. Wherefore cosin Droles, said Gallien, let me kille thee, and bid thee farewell, for here shal our

## 84 The first part of

our bodiees unsundered, sunder their acquaintance, but our soule I hope, imbaze in the highest pallace of heaven. Well dost thou know, D that we had such cause to know! how Ganelon the traitor by his treason delivered unto the king Marcilius, my father Oliver, and the famous Orlando, who died at Roncegwalli: D Oliver my father, thou scourge of Sarazens turne back into heauen. Thus spake the wise Gallien, whom Meruine beholding with the eies of perfite anger, and seeing that none of his people durst approach him, cried, retire thou valurelesse amated nation, whose earthly spirits are consumd with the fire of this christian, to me belongs the conflict, to me the reparation. Approaching to Gallien, he said, Traitor, all thy defences are but mistes that vanish from thy safety, great hath bin thy conquest, greater thy fault for such conquest and greatest now shall be thy ouerthow: Yet soz thy valure sake, I will contradict my iudgement, yield, and thy life is saued. Were it not soz chritte (said Gallien) I shold hate thy soule, but thy bodye be assured, I detest, yet my selfe much more, shold I haue but halfe a thought of submission: never was there pagan boozie, to whom I will be obedient: and at that word he stukke a pagan that approched him with such furie, that he fell dead before Mernin. Meruin beholding this true magnanimitie, had not euen at that instant iwrath thrusst pittie from her soueraignty, he had both saued and loued him, but being blinded with emulation, he rusht upon Gallien, and stracke him vpon the head, that he clauie him euen unto the girdle. Wo alas Gallien the sonne of Oliver, as memoza ble for his vertues, as famous for his victories, is now slaine: soz give him great loue that slew him, and yet it was a wound that wounded all christendome.

<sup>2</sup> Now is Drohes alone, and yet not alone, for seeing Gallien dead, he was consoled with infinite perplexities,

and

85

## the historie of Meruine.

and as twere armed with their inuisible tumults, he sware that before he died, he wold reuenge his death, then flew he amongst the proudest Sarazens sending infinites to attend him whom he loued, but alas their courses were contrary, for Gallien ascending, they descended. So like a carelesse mad man, only discreetly wise in the wates of prouesses did Drohes behaue himselfe, that leauing his own, he boorded the shipp where the Pagans were inhausen, and there defended and offendred with such unspeakable corage, that not any but started backe and refused to assaile him. Jesus, said Drohes, that madest the crosse glorious by thy passion, shall I, D must I die here, and thus unreuenged, with that word he leapt into a litle boate that was behynd at the st:ra of the shipp and swore by holy Mary that who so entred there, he wold be his deaths man: for uthence he was alone, he wold sell his owne & his fellowes lynes, at the rate of a bloody tribute. Then came Meruin all amazed, saying: Christian, for pure loue only of thy vertue, if thou wilt yield, and trust mine honorabile reputation, by Mahomet, and him thou callest thy redemer, thou shalt haue no harme, only the title of my prisoner, and for the renowne of thy valiancie shalt goe whither fortune shall conduct mee: this do, and so do, otherwoise by Alcaron, my honour and my swerd, instantly either thou or I will be entertained into deaths mansion. Drohes hearing the thunder, yet the swet thunder of Meruins speach, albeit it made but a dolefull melody in his eares, yet entring into many souldierlike considerations, both of after aduenture, and present danger, guided by the grace of God and his god Angell, he accepted a will to accept those conditions saying to himselfe: By that celestial virgin who bare the fruit of life, it is better to be in prison, and prelong life with some hope, then pre sently die, and the soule unsatisfied. Then raising his voice aloft; Poble pagan, qd he to Meruine, on these conditions, that

## The first part of

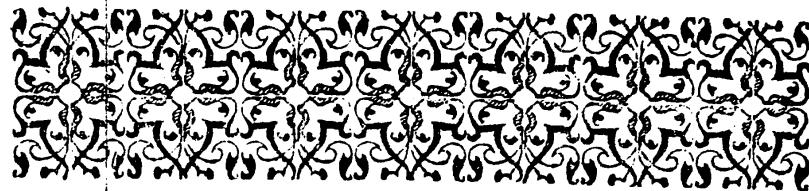
that neither my life be violated, nor I urged to deny my religion, I yield my selfe. Christian qd Meruin I assure it the: then Droles delivered vp his sword, and Meruine received it. At the instant of this aduenture, there stood by a pagan, who boold to shew himselfe a notable varlet, and seeing Droles without armes, he smote him ouer the face, saying Villaine, thy death is swoone. With that Meruine turned back, in whom rage by desert challenged an interest, because both his faith and honour was profaned, saying to the Pagan, Thou son of a common unsatisfied whore, proue why thou smotest this Christian, who is yielded my prisoner, and to whom by warranty my reputation is ingaged: with that Meruine listed vp Droles sword being naked in his hand, and stroke the Pagan, that he clau him to the fæth: then amplifying his protestation said, By Mahomet, if there be any man, of what estate soever, that impeacheth my promise, or doth my word wrong to any christian, this hand, and this sword shall minister revenge: for all my deeds shal be iust and religious. O immortall creator (said Droles to himselfe) how well worthy is this Pagan to rule a monar- chie! I haue not seene a creature moze wise, gracious, nor more valiant. O thou that disposest all things, dispose and conuert his thoughts to christianity, so shal he be well wor- thy of all honours, otherwise my thoughts are prophets, presaging an vnspakeable losse to ensue by his chivalrie. These praises whispered Droles of Meruine, being but the first sacrifices of a greater loue which ensued. Now came Barbin to Meruine saying, My beloved sonne, too strong a witness is this blow of thy heauy displeasure, I pray thee of loue give not to thy followers matter of indignation, as you haue done to him you haue slaine. Father qd Meruine, dissimulation is a branch of cowardise, I will be plaine and iust, if the greatest monarch vnder heauen wrong me, my sword shall right me. Pea but (said Barbin) feare is fellow

with

## the historie of Meruine.

with tyrannie & soldiers must be preserved with assabilitie, By Mahomet answered he againe, I will be feared throughout the world, & who so is not feared, is not truly beloved: of whatsoeuer is gotten by the conquest of these christians, I desire nothing part it amongst you, save onely this prisoner: wherefore let none doe him villanie, for it is mine indignitie. This sayd: al the pagans trembled, till with a chearefull countenance he gaue new life to their terror: such effects of won- der was in his beholding. Now all troubles being appeased, the pagans diuided the bootie amongst them, and Meruine withdrawinge himselfe into his cabin, onely made himselfe rich, with heaping to himselfe infinite wishes to behold and enjoy the most admirable Berea: and in these cogitations he sayled with such prosperous successe, that in few dayes they arrived at the port Luternia, where they landed, two leagues from the host of king Baucamont, who as you haue heard, had besieged Mermont within Montiment, with two hun- dred thousand men, and had so continued ffe moneths, from the time that Barbin and Iacob departed in quest for the on- ly valiant Meruine, whom they brought with 300 fighting men, 400 they had at their departure from Brandis, but in the conflict at sea, they lost 100. Now as they marched, it was told Meruine that the next morning shold a great bat- tell be fought betwene the kings, wherefore Meruine sayd vnto Iacob, I pray you let vs adde wings to our fæte, that we may flie to the beginning of the battel, for in it shal Berea behold me either honoured or infombed. Thus, and in these discourses, they shorftned the tiresome way, passing by a little cottage, and thence entred into a small village, but there they found nothing to eate, for Baucamont had destroied al. Thus will I leaue to speake of Meruine, and will returne to Mermont, and his fortunes in the next dayes mighty battell.

## The first part of



## C H A P. X I I I.

1 Of the great battell before Montment. 2 Mermont taken prisoner. 3 Meruines arriuall and recouerie of Mermont. 4 Meruines exploites in the battell. 5 His second deliuary of Mermont, & other accidents.

 Soone as the sun had put on the dayes golden armour, Mermont arose and commanded proclamation through the towne that every one armed shold mount on horsback, for that day he would give battell to Baucamont: and when all the host was assembled,

he ordered his battalions according to the customs of the most ancient Romanes: which done, he gaue his standard to be carried by a notable pagan, the sonne of his sister, named Tufer, who had in his regiment 2000. horsemen. The second batallion was commanded by a most fierce Sarazen called Arufait, who also had 20000. Murgaffier his brother conduced the third: the fourth was led by the high Admurrall, a man both proud and valiant: and the fist, the king himselfe commanded every regiment being 20000. stō rank to ranke. Mermont the king in great maiestie pased admo- nishing his people with excellent persuasions, saying, Lords and my fellosws in this high worke of sortitude, behold now the prize of the most excellent resolution, make her the aime of your thoughts, and winne her by your almighty actions: right is your assistant, and Mahomet your guide, the thing

you

## the historie of Meruine.

you defend, is your inheritance, & the man offending is Baucamont a traitor, an usurper, and worst of all, a tyrant: be ther valiant, and spare none, stth his malice spareth not to tote out you and your families. Many other arguments of encouragement he used and then issued out of the towne in a well ordered march, and pace for pace, in as orderly equipage approached their enemies, who staled, for them ranged and ordered in most formall proportion. When Baucamont beheld the power of Mermont so well detained and denided, he went from ranke to ranke, & cheareed his men with these speches: By Lordes and Barons, for the honour of your names ever till now eternized, lap vp in oblivion the remembrance of your wiues and children, and saue honoꝝ alone, kepe nothing secret: our enemies are but few in number, it is impossible for them to hold long, if everyone do his indeuour: We then wondered at soꝝ nature, for the easier to attaine, the greater dishonoꝝ not attaining. Sir, replied the chiefe commanders of his armie, he resolued, that this day we wil either win Berea, or al be dissolved and in that hope set forward to fortune & our conquest. At those words Baucamont mounted on Marcheuall, which sometimes was Ogers, In whose damme Meruin conquered, when he slew the traitours Brohars (as you haue before heard) and when Baucamont was mounted, he caused a charge to be sounded: & his foes on the other side, answered with like musick. How gallant a thing it was, to heare the rewining clamors, to see the ioyning of the hostes, to behold the shot of one and other side, in such abundance: that it seemed like a snow descending from heauen: when the shot ceased, then began they to fight hand to hand, Mermont crying Montment, and Baucamont, Damas. There might you see a fierce skirmish, as well of the valie pagans, as the dying wounded: there ran the hostes vp and downe, trailing their remes in contempt, after them that hatere while ruled them. There might you see a hand holding a

G

sword,

## The first part of

sword, but wanting a body to rule it: a man that but now fought to kepe away death, now lamenting for nothing, but that he could not haue death, all things confused, all things tumultuous: for such and no other is warres beauty. Mermont being valiant, prickt amongst his enimies, exclaiming against Baucamont, and threatning reuenge for the wrongs both to come & perfited. And in this furie he smote a pagan named Malcuidant, that he tumbled dead before him: thence he passed and incountred Africant, whom he slew likewise. Wher shall I make laboursome my discourse? Mermont, before he ceased, slew five, & then eryed on his standard bearer, whom he brought to the strength of his battell. Then Artifalt of Luterne, and Murgaffier his brother folowed him; on the other syde Baucamont cried to his armie, come on gallants, if any haue courage, let him follow me, and he shal not onely win gold, but kingdoms. With Baucamonts speaches his souldiers toke such courage, that in despight of fortune, Mermont and his hoste were compelled to retire. During the blacke sunne-shine of this contagions day, Berea was at Turgon standing on a tower, from whence shre beheld the battell; & when she saw her fathers army retire, with a pity-sigh shre sayd, Ah Mahomet, that our men had new strengths, or better fortunes: with that wish entered the thoughts of Meruine into her memorie, for whom she exceedingly lamented, saying Deare loue most excellent, because onely worthy to be excellent, O how tardie are thy plumes, that conuey thee with no more speed to our affiatiō: thou staiest too long, O thou staiest too long, come speedily my loue, or these iron blowes of our enemis will confound vs, O blesse mine eyes once againe with the sight of thy valure, els shall my soule leau my body, because my body shal be compelled to forsake thee. Thus, and with these feares of lamentation, complained she for her absent loue, who staid in the village where we left him, even vntill morning, at which time he arose.

## the historie of Meruine.

arose, armed himselfe, and gorgeously adorneed the top of his helmet, by fastning thereon the gloues sent him from Berea. Thus armed, he mounted on Mordant, and pacing sooth, found all his troupe ready attending his command, and so in warlike maner they all departed, but in their marching Meruine called Drohes to him, and sayd, Christian, if by that faith which so much thou holdest inviolate, thou wilst this day aside vs in the battell, to which we are marching, I will both doe thee honour, command thee armes, and reuERENCE thy reputation. In faith (replied he) or what els thou canst imagin I esteeme deerer, I will: reither doubt me for disloyaltie, sith if all thine army shal renounce thee, Drohes woulde die faithfully by thee. At those wordes Meruine commanded him armes; and when Drohes was armed, he made a boyl, that if that day he encoutred the pagans, then the Discipline and Justice issaing from his sword, should suffice, that the death of Gallien Rothorus shoulde not sleepe unrevenged. Now had they ridden so farre, that by the giant-begotten cloudes, and the murmuring rumoz of the troubled aire, they might see they were not farre from the battell: a none they might heare the noise, the cries, and the incounters, all which assured their former imaginacions.

2 Then pricking more eagerly forward, they hasted to be made parties in the conflict, yet ere they could appach, by ill chance Mermont was ouert hrown by Baucamont, & in despight of his followers, taken prisoner: to whom Baucamont with reviling wordes, sayd, Vassale to my fortune, this day is the last of thy lifes date, and thy death shal be shamefull, thy daughter in spight will I seare from thy possession, yet wil I lie with her but one sole night, for after I will bestow her on Pimon mine embassador to who thou threatnedst death for bringing my message: such shame will I heape on thy crown, such scandall to thy fortune. This said, Baucamont callid Antifer,

## The fyrst part of

tifer, and commanded him to conuey Mermont to his tent, til he had utterly discomfited the rest of his army. Then took they Mermont and bound him with strongcords, and mus-  
tling his eies lest he shuld see any alteration in that base ma-  
ner, haled him to their tents.

3. But as Meruine rid aside discoursing with Iacob, the god merchant Iacob perceiued how pitifully his king was martred with his tormentors: wherefore, as if his eies had wounded his heart, he cried to Meruine, O saue him, saue him: behold, king Mermont taken, dishonored & tor-  
mented. Meruine, as if awaked from a slumber, at such exclaim-  
ing, looking about, and seeing him, smote the mare with his  
spurs, who like a whirlewind carried him against Antifer.  
He approaching so neare that the sound of his words might  
be retained, he cried, Mermont my king, feare not thy ill  
fortune, for in despite of these villaines, I will recarry thee  
into Mowntain, at that word he encountrued a pagan called  
Esclardy, nephew to Baucamont, and with such coman-  
ding violence, that no steele durst withstand it, but the head  
of his lance made a passage both through his haire and body:  
he dead, Meruine cheareed his followers, chiefly Drohes, to  
whom he said; Absolutely valiant Christian, I challenge  
thee, make god the couenant betwixt vs, spare neither king  
nor prince, commander nor follower: then spurred they two  
in amongst the pagans, in such sort, that as the ripe corne  
before the shearers, so fell they before them. Then Meruine  
approaching to Mermont, whom a Turk holding, Meruine  
gave him a blow that claued him to the girde. After val-  
uing the kings bonds, and giving him liberty to see his re-  
demption, said vnto him, famous king, and my loues soue-  
raigne, my work is but the work of duty, command my lise  
for thy ransome. As Mermont was about to reply and im-  
brace him, Meruine staid him, saying, what I do, I ought  
doe,

## the historie of Meruine.

do, hereafter shall write mine allegiance: hold, lace on your  
helmet, and I will prouide you a horse to mount on.

4. With that he beheld Antifer, who was princely moun-  
ted, & came thus to him; Pagan, of necessity you must pre-  
sent me your horse for the king my soueraigne: and for a  
fulpoint to his speach, he gaue him a blowe crosse the heuer,  
as he fell downe mortally wounded. Meruine tooke his  
horse, and theron mounted king Mermont, whose toy none  
can speake of, but those that haue tasted his affliction. Now  
began a maruelous battell, wherein all did very well, yet e-  
very one couetous to do more: pleasant and louely it was  
to behold Drohes, who thinking euery pagan he mette the  
marderer of Gallien, sent thousands to heil, that had not  
seen Gallien, but aboue all, Meruine surpassed, whonener  
lifted vp his hand, but death followed the falling. At these  
two Mermont wondred, swearing within himselfe the one  
was Mahomet, the other Apollo, and that they were come,  
the one to shew deit y, the other to attaine a greater conquest  
than the death of Pithon. In fine he said, both were his as-  
sistants, because his quarrell was lawfull. In such sort did  
Meruine and Drohes behaue themselves, that of 3000 that  
caried away Mermont, not one escaped, but either slaine or  
soore wounded. A Sarazen beholding this fight, seeing two  
thus triumphant oner so many thousands, smote his horse  
with his spurs, and came running to Baucamont, crying,  
King of Damascus retire for euuen Mahomet and Iehouah  
are come to fight against the. Mermont is recoverd and thy  
men discomfited, two for two millions are much too mightie,  
retire then, retire, for saue death thou canst haue no compa-  
nion. Right-rauen, quoth Baucamont) care for thine owne  
soule, I scorne thy prophesies, yet tell me from whom, or  
from what part are those people arrined. Instantly (said he)  
you shall see them ascending from yonder valley, lie, lie, for

94  
The first part of

death is in their foreheads. Traitor said Baucamont, turn thee and bring me to them. Not for the wealth of the world answerd he againe, for by Jupiter I had rather mountaines should fall vpon me, then the wrath of those enraged people shoule by aduenture find me: and in this saying, he stroke his horse and flew ouer the field, feare giuing him wings and flight bearing him beyond the compasse of eies prospect. So soone was he gone, but Baucamont perceiued the approach of Meruine. Then mustred he his people together, saying, Neuer till now houered the crowne of Glorie ouer vs, win it, and weare it: for see, he that commands it, comes vnto vs to present it, and with that he smote Marcheuall, and charged Meruine. Meruine on the other side gaue Mordant the reine to encounter with Baucamont: their carier was like the meeting of two tempests from two severall corners of the earth: but Meruine hit Baucamont such a blow, that he fel from his courser to the ground, neither had he euer raiſed his head from the earths pillow, had not a band of 4000 come in to his rescue. Betwixt him and them, a singular to an infinit plurall began a fierce, doubtful and vndying combat. Iacob this while the god merchant valiantly behaued himselfe, so also did Croisant and Barbin, whose wordes bare liueries of their Lords wages: yet when I thinke on Meruine and Drohes, the deeds of the others were but as margent notes to their huge bolums: there might one see cōbodies, legs without feet, thighs like fat mouing: there you might see stones broken with bodies burden, yea burdened bodies by stones broken: all things horible, yet nothing but honorable: there lay pagan slain on pagan, misbelieve on vnbelieving, while Drohes smilid to see selse religion, selse discipline and law confound one another, and by ganne to pride himselfe, that that day his deeds should be eternized. But at this time what Meruin did is impossible to describe, because they

95  
the historie of Meruine.

they ascended higher than mortall capacity. He encountered Africant, and slue him, so did he thadmitall, whom horse and man he bare down to the ground. What shal I say moxeral force was no force, when his force gaueit, as Hares from drams, Lambs from lions, Fawnes from tygers, so flew the pagans before him. What he did, what his power sought to do, was all this while beheld both by Berea and her mother, who stood next her, and from the tickling spirit of her heart, said to her daughter: Fair soule, seest thou not yonder pagan, whose armes are like sunne shire, and his deeds better then the sunnes beauty: in his helm he wears two gloues, a swimming swan in a bower of roses: on my soule he is not mortall, for his deeds are celestiall. his personesse is heroicall, and his carriage like the god of warrefare. Berea hearing her mothers speaches, it seemed the Roses in Meruines headpiece were fled thence to her cheekes; for she prettily blushed, and thought of her lone Meruine, and as she looked downe toward him, her thoughts, the truest heralds of a louing conceit, told her it was he alone that so gallantly behaued himselfe to the wonder of all men. Now with that imagination loue gaue new fire to his old flame, and surprised her with delicate thinkings: then grew thee dumbe with admiring, sighing because she was dumbe, blushing to heare her selfe ligh, & then grew pale, lest hit dumblenes, sighing and blushing, shold of other than her owne eies be perceived. After this war of maiden looks had taken a little truce with her intentions, thus to her heart her heart whispered. Thou God of my foreshafers, how excellent hast thou made my loue! death being most fierce, fearing, is become his bassaile, attend him death, but touch him not. As she was imagining more, her mother turned about, and perceiving her distraught in countenance, challenging the diſtemperature of looks, asked what she aileid, and desired nothing to be hidden from her. Madame (said she) I felt a sor-  
G 4  
ment:

## The first part of

ment of such behemenie take hold on me, as no creature can imagine. Mahomet defend my father, for I feare some euill. Thus dissembled she with her mother, Meruine being the loadstarre by which all her lodgings wers guided. All this while self destruction from the sword of Meruine upon the pagans who like larkes vnder the wings of a hobby, sought holes in the earth to hide them. Drohes pursued his foote, steppes, and the nearest of any imitated his vertues. Now was Baucamont remounted once more, and passing thoro wth his ranks, gaue them newt incoragement, reuiling the new come strangers, and disabling their actions, through his wounds bare bleeding witnes of their worths.

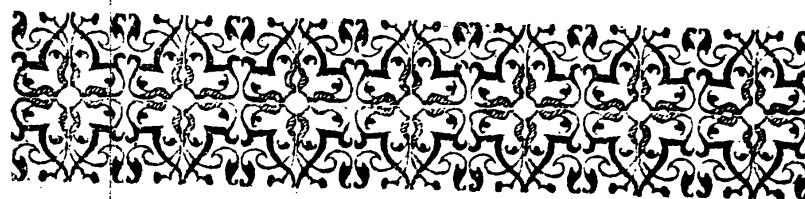
5 When he had done, he charged afresh vpon Mermont, and that with such impregnable violence, as he ouerthrew him horse and man to the ground, but with nimble agilitie, he soon recovered his fete, and drawing his sword, brandished it for his defence. All that shew of magnanimitie had but little availe to his profit, if Meruin had not againe by chance come to his rescue, who cried aloud, Mermont my king, deserre thy fortune but a moment, and ile yeld succor to thy life: and then rushing amongst the thickest, he strake Gyron on the head, cleaving him to the wasse. After him, the next, and the next, sparing none that was within his encounter. When Baucamont sawe death and destiny lie in Meruins sword, like a man made desperat, because his estate was desperate, he toynd himself to Meruine, striking so violent a blowe, as he clane insunder the crest of his helmet, but to his head did no harme but amazement. Meruin displeased at his entertainment, drew Entrant his sword, and without other salutation stroke at Baucamont with al his puissance. The pagan king fearing the blowe, retired alittle: yet had hee never breathed anie more malice, if the sword had not turned in the hand of Meruine, which like a thun-

## the historie of Meruine.

thunderbolt fell on the arme of Baucamont, and that in such heauy maner, that the armoz, shoulder, & all, were cut asunder. When Meruine saw him thus spoiled of his defender, in iesting maner he sayd, king Baucamont, it is time now the world excuse you from these martiall occurrents, sith the fittest for you is a monastical function: say henceforth for the loue of Mahomet you will abiture your folly, having pated to this god king your right arme for a ransome. Thus having sayd, he returned to Mermont, & remounted him the second time, but Mermont in whom was ingrafted a strong beliefe, that Mernine was Mahomet, with prostrate humblenesse sayd vnto him, great and almighty God of most excellent authortie, this day hath thy godnesse newly created me, and made my life more happy then the liues of my forefathers, henceforth be gratioues to my procedings great lord of our religion, and I wil make thy name berung through all nations, thy temple I wil multiply, & all thine ornaments shall be of purest siluer. Meruin seeing the blindnesse of his amazement, raised him from his prostracie, saying, no, but you are deceiued, you are deceiued, I honor him & you: and with that he rusht agayne into the battel. Thus while Drohes and the other behaued themselues valiantly, effecting such feates of knightly chivalrie, that force perforce, they drave to retraite the hoste of Baucamont, many flying, none abiding till the mighty king Esclamart caused all his troupes which cam for the succour of Baucamont, being 10000 Sarazens, all fresh and unspoiled, having as yet not striken one blowe, to furne upon their enemies like a storme begotten by a Northe in the moneth of Aprill. When Mermont percevued them, and considering his people and horseis were weareie, vnable to withstand them being fresh, caused a retracie to be sounded, and in honorable sort retired into the citie: but when he came to enter, Esclamart and his men, being wift and nimble, had gained the post, had not Meruine & Drohes withstood them, who

## The first part of

who marched behind, and Meruine in that last encounter slew the nephew of Esclamart, with many other pagans, and they so well defended themselves, that king Mermont and his host entered into the citie, & Meruine and Drohes after them, to the confusion and dishonor of Esclamart, who returned sorrowfull for his nephewes slaughter, whom he caused to be brought with great solemnitie into his tent, doyng to Mahomet his god, revenge for his misfortune.



### CHAP. XV.

1. Of the honours Mermont did to Meruine. 2 Meruine made chamberlaine of the Court. 3 Gratiana for his sake made lady of the chamber of Berea with other accidents.



Ing Mermont and all his knights, being entred into Montment, were most royally received both of the quene his wife, and the most beautifull lady Berea his daughter, to whom he said, thou golden planet of mine age, my dearest daughter, I beseech thee honoz with all the excellencies thou canst imagine, this admirable creature who sits armed and mounted on this mightie mare, I once imagined him to be our great god Mahomet, so godlike was he in mine understanding, and so impossible it was for the force of man to enterprise what, he hath effected. When Iacob came and heard the kings speches, pleasantly he replied: My gracious soueraigne,

## the historie of Meruine.

soueraigne, it is a common saying, that a soles bolt sometimes as wel hits the marke, as the wise mans arrowe. True said the king, but I pray thee, to what ende doest thou cite this adage: to this my liege lord ( answered he ) I who am basely unwoorthy to counsell kings, yet anciently experienced in warres doubtfullnesse, went in your maiesties name to Brandis, and thence brought this Meruin, the sonne of Barbis, who this day by his most celestiall prowesse hath twise preserued you from death, and the dangerous hand of your enemies. Now if the actor be worthy his honour, is not the agent for the acte worthy to be rewarded: els let my fortune refuse me, said the king. Iacob I will heape wealth vpon thy wealth, and on Meruine I will double a thousand honours of knighthood: for by Mahomet I imagined him to haue bene Mahomet, so farre excelled he all creatures, yea even Brahier, and Iustament his valiant brother, who were slaine by that renowned Oger, the scourge of our religion. O Meruine, if Mahomet continue gracious to thy proceedings, our law shall be by thoe exalted as much aboue christianitie, as the first maner is resident aboue the earths center. Woe alas, this prophesie was too true, for with the eyes of infants shall be watered with teares, as hereafter shall be declared. Now Mermont looking vpon Drohes, asked Iacob what he was, and Iacob in every point described him both their meeting, conflict, and conquest, and how he was a christian, whose name was Drohes, adding withall, that if any myracle could make him renounce his religion, that then the law of paganism by him more then by any christian, but Oger, would be raised & admited, but this wisdom is so great that no will can remoue him. Then Mermont asked Iacob from whence & by what meane Meruin had gotten that band of men which he had brought to the battel. Then Iacob shewed the king Croisant, who then was busie in talke with Meruine, & from point to point declared his fortunes, both how Basina

# The first part of

na was accused, Meruin engaged, Brohars slaine, and Croisant remoored from his unbelieuing: the king hearing all this, his heart danced for joy, and he solemnly vowed to raise Meruine higher in authoritie, then the conceite of man could aspire unto. Whereupon, calling the gallant yong knight before him, who came with all the reuerence belonging to so great a maiestie, the king with a dumb, but speaking countenance amazedly, as if in a maner skared at his beauty, and with his long looking and intimate searching in every lineament of his proportion, he suddenly apprehended in his memory the diuine features of Oger. Wherefore he sayd, be leue me Meruine, by that Alcheron in which I trust, thou resemblest both in body, figure, and beautie, the famousest of all christians, renouned Oger the duke of Denmarke, whose fortunes if thou counteruaile, the pennes of all men shall write thee most happy. By this time the day had exchanged the colour of his garment, and put on the nightes vesture, wherefore al the tables being rotally apparelled, and supper set on the boord, water was brought for the king, he late doun to eate: but because all his studie was to doe hono<sup>r</sup> to Meruine, he commanded him to sit doun before him, after him Droches, swearing by the faith of a christian, that he would never part or obscure himselfe, vntille it were by the commandement and consent of Meruine, and for that vlowes sake, he was neither restrained nor imprisioned, but suffered to goe and dispose himselfe round about the towne at his own pleasure: the roialty and solemnity of that nights service, I will leue to speake of, because tediousnesse inuenometh a willing hearer. Supper being ended, and every ceremonie performed to a kingly magnificence, the king called Barbin, and spake to him: Barbin, I bind thee by thy fealtie, neither deceiue me in thine answere, nor restraine from the knowledge of that I intend to demand of thee: who, and on whom diddest thou beget this wonder, this Meruine.

# the historie of Meruine.

uine, trust me he resembleth thee in nothing, neither by his deds the scufts of a merchant-like generation? My deare soueraigne (answred Barbin) I begot him of a noble & renousmede arzen lady, as great in dignite, as the hause of Ottomane, who through her paine in childe-birth, piteously died. After whose decease I tooke the infant & a most delcat lady (the sister of my dead loue) who sware to hit in hit last partys never to depart from him til ferme of yeres had brought him to manhood, & transpored them with me into these parts: if now you maiestie mischent my protestation, I haue the lady at my house, who is both an eie, and an eare-witnes. Let the lady be commanded before vs said the king, which imediately was done. To her likewise the king propounded these articles, with many other egressions as he had done to Barbin, and she in every point answred without differing, insomuch that the king beleued them, so artificall was their cunning.

2 The king demanding her name, she told him it was Gratianna: then said the king; faire damosel descended of a divine issue, for loue of Meruine thy nephewe, whom al loue that haue any splendor in them, how faire a thing loue, is my pleasure is, that henceforth thou be lady of the chamber of Berea mine only daughter: by thee be she disposed, by thee be her vertures increased, loue her and like with her, for thou canst teach her both excellencie & honour: this was the faire lady Gratianna borne vp to the cloudes in honour for the loue of Meruine, whom falsely she had stolne, as was before mentioned.

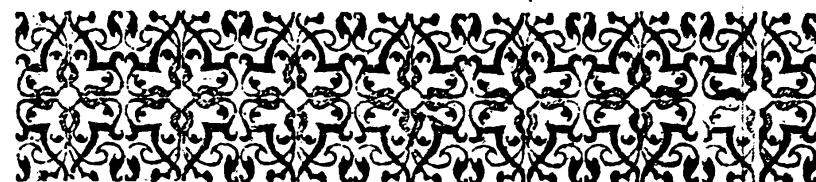
3 When this was done, the king called Meruine and asked him if he found no decaying in his memory strem that he staire of vertue, which hitherto he scaled, but that he would perseuer in his beginning, and bear the glory of Mahomet, as far as the sunne was born in his chariot. My earthly god (sayd he) and the next in my loue to Mahomet, my whole de-

## The first part of

ture is to make famous my religion, and the aime of my con-  
tent to proue my force greater than any christians : this I  
loue, in this I live and thus shall my life consonant. The  
king hearing this, was very ioyfull : wherefore embracing  
him in his armes, he said, Dearer than my kingdome, Mer-  
uine my champion, henceforth for thy propresse, valure, and  
magnanimitie, and for thou didst twice resorte me fro death  
to my former being, I create thee the principal chamberlaine  
of my court, be thy rule like thy selfe, righteous, and let all o-  
bey thee. The thankes which Meruine gaue the king for  
these honours, were such as made glorioous the gauer, yet the  
receiuer seemed only glorified. Thus in great pomp Mer-  
uine continued in the kings house, beloved and feared of all  
men, except of the traitor Marant, nephew to the king, be-  
ing his sisters son, and espoused to Butor that gouernor of  
noy, where Meruine was imprisoned ffe yeares, as here-  
after you shall heare. This Marant could by no possible  
meanes loue Meruine, so hugely had enuy taken possession  
on his soule, to behold the honours the king his bruke had done  
him, wherefore he watched to do hym villany, for villanie is  
ever waking. It hapned one day, Meruine rising earely in  
the morning euyn with the sunne, there came to him a cer-  
tain spie, who gaue him intelligence that king Baucamont,  
with 800 of his approued warriers was intended to hunt  
the wagge in the great forrest, bordering vpon the citie. As  
soone as Meruine heard it, he called Droles, the traitor Ma-  
rant, and 500 expert souldiers, and with them priuily issued  
out of the city, taking an vsuall path, through which he pa-  
red so long, till at length he perceiued where Baucamont  
with his hoste returned from the chasse, his arme as then  
healed, and he mounted on his steed. Meruine am'bulshed him  
selfe and his men within a little groue, whence he intended  
to charge Baucamont, holding both his laces redy in his fist,  
and hauing vnder him his mare Mordant : anone when

## the historie of Meruine.

Baucamont was appreched so neare, that he was hopeleste  
of retiting, Meruine caused his men to march against him,  
saying, felowes in armes, think not of fortune, but victorie,  
for in my seise there is no other imagination.



## CHAP. XVI.

1 How *Baucanson* and 800 souldiers were discomfited, and himselfe taken prisoner. 2 With him the King *Antifer* & 24. pagans, all by *Mermine*. 3 How he deliuered them to the traitor *Marans*, to present to king *Mermire* his vncle, in *Mersans* name the conqueror.



W  Hen Baucamont beheld Meruine, whom he knew by his helmet, because in many battels, which I leane to speake of, he had taken notice of the same, he turning to his traine used these speaches: You followers of me and my fortunes, reniue your selues, and in the name of Mahomet, be now or never courageous, battel surely we shalbe offered, be fortune as auspicious as please her, for behold an enemie whom my soule hateth, even he whose single sword did me more hurt then Mermont or his huge hoste could haue effected, by a godlike incoragement, yet is he no other then the base son of a ware-exchanging merchant, whom some diuell hath nursed for a damned execution. At this word he tooke a battell

# The first part of

hell are in his hand, & brooching Marcheual with his spurres, charged so aglosly, Meruin on the other side, as nimble as lightning, ran to intercept him, their ramming, meeting, & coniunctiō, being louder then thunder, & stronger then a north tempest, & when in midſt of the assembly, they had discharged vpon either other, the wonders of chivalrie, Meruine having broken his lance, drew Entrant his ſword, and therewith alſailed Baucamont with ſuch furie, that he threw him from Marcheual his gallant beaſt to the ground, & that with ſuch incomparable prouelle, that he lay a long time on the ground in a deadly paſſion. Meruin descending, unlaced his helmet, and was euē ready to diuide the long coniunction betwixt his head and body, whē Baucamont awaking frō his tranſe and beholding himſelf bitterly exiled from the hope of longer living, with erected hands cried vnto him: thou flower of chivalrie, and the bed-mate to fortune, be as honourable as thou art valiant, & take me to thy preſence: then turning his ſword in his hand, he deliuered the hilts to Meruin, who perceiving it, deliuered him vnto the traitour Marrant ſaying, Prince Marrant, take king Baucamont to your charge, and guard him ſafely, because I know the king your unkle wil ſteeme this fortune much better then the gift of an empice. Marrant accepted him joyfully. This while Drohes and the reſt were in the midſt of their enemies, where the deads they did were moſt the of immortal memorie. Notiaſter Meruine had leſſ his roiall prisoner in ſafe keeping, he flung himſelf into the heart of the battell, like a hunger-starued Wolfe amoungſt a flocke of ſheepe, the firſt he met, he ſtrake dead to the ground: ſo did he the ſecond, the third, the fourth, and the fifth: why ſhould I bee tedious in deſcription: ſenne to their deaths he ſent with one breathing. Drohes ſeeing him doe theſe excellent ſeates of knighthood, grew in amore of him, & praiſed him in his heart neare his creator: but God of heauen (ſaid he) how wonderfull beyond conceit are theſe actions!

# the hist orie of Meruine.

if his thraed of life lengthen like his courage, and ſome pettiſing powder of heauen alter not his unhappy misbelēving al chifſendome thalquake, and the hoſe of Dauid be forſaken: thus from the anguſh of his ſoule ſpake the moſt righteous Drohes, whose valure and ſeates of armes were bounden in no limite, augmenting hourelly; the rather to beholde the ex-amples of Meruine laide before him.

2. All this while was the ſonne of religious Oger ſtrroying through the middeſt of the army, & had euē now ouerthrown king Antifer to the ground, whose head had paged his rameſon if ſcarefull, humblenesſe had not made him ſubmit to mercie: him likewife hee gaue to the keeping of Marrant. Now had Drohes incountered a giant-like pagan, with whom he maintained a oreadfull batell, but in the end hee ſmote him a blowe with ſuch vigour, that he clauē his head to his feet. Which another pagan beholding, ranne at Drohes, and with his launce ſtrake his horſe through the heart, that he fell downe dead at the instant. But with great agilitie Drohes recovered himſelf, and flouriſhing his ſword, bothed vengeance for his iniurie. But Meruine ſeeing the pagan by ſuch diſhonour had ſlaine the hoſe of Drohes, preuented his intent, and with one blowe ſtricke the pagans head from his ſhoulders. As this was in doing, the gallant horſe Marcheual came galloping maſterleſſe by them, running here and there, hauing his reines at his owne rardon. When Meruine ſaw him, hee thrust his ſpurres againſt Mordant, and flew after him, and that with ſuch violent ſwiftneſſe, that in ſhort time he tooke him, and deliuered him to Drohes, who being mounted thereon, ſware by him that with blood Iuſhawd the world from her transgredions, that if euer Meruines fortune ſlave in neede of his imployment, his life ſhould be waſſed in his ſeruice. Then againe Drohes thraſhūl himſelfe into the middeſt of his enemies, of whom

## The first part of

he made infinite destruction, that both pen and wit are too blunt to describe them, and yet were they to be toyed with Meruine in no degree of comparison, no more then the night to the daies glorie, for he never lost his sword alost but he kild either horse or man, or both horse and man together. Let mee not dull your eares with a heauie tale: such excellent feates of armes were performed by Meruine, that of 800. which went with their king on hunting, there were left alive but twentie & fower, whiche with Baucamont and Antifer were likewise taken prisoners: great was the bootie and riches which there was taken, but Meruin refusing to touch it, caused it to be equally diuided among his soldiers. Then commaunding a restraite, and summoning his band together they marched in scouldierlike manner to Mowntment. But amongst the rest a Pagan, whose name was Hebie, thrust spurrers to his horse, and polled from the troupe with such swiftnes, that he cam to Mowntment before the rest a long season: assone as he was lighted he ascended the pallace, and knelling before the king he said. My dread soueraigne, more ought you to adore our God Mahomet & greater incense to Meruine this day by his never sayling prowlisse, bringeth bound in triumph Baucamont, Antifer, and twentie fourre of the most couragious Pagans, taken al prisoners by his only sword: when the Paragon of al ages (divine Berea) heard this, if her ioy exceeded her beautie,) and yet than her beautie was nothing more amiable, (let no man wonder noz demand the reason, syl lone is beyond y bond of a larger limit.

3 Now whilste the king and his nobles were increasing their conceites of pleasure with imagination of these aduentures, the Prince Marant, with Baucamont, Antifer & the 24. Pagans entered into the hall, & knelling before the king with a stiffe knee, faintly, as unwilling his tongue shoule be

guiltie

## the historie of Meruine.

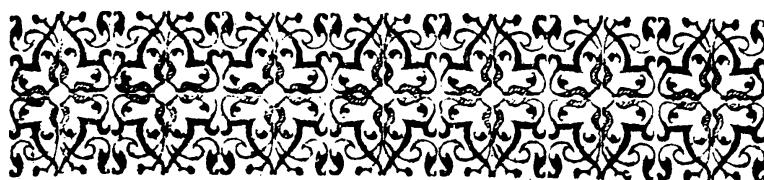
guiltie of any vertue, he vttered these spachess, Faire buckle and my liege Lord highly may you (if you please) honor Meruine your great chamberlaine, whose renowned probesse & true valure hath taken these mightyous prisoners, in whose name, and with al humble reverence, I present them to your Maestie, assuring you the daedes he hath this day done, are more then the wisest hath power to describe, or the strongest force to counteruarie. When whispering his malice to his owne soule, he said: Meruine, these praises which in giving I haue giuen mine owne deuises the lie, I wil shortly heape upon thee with an eternall vengeance. Now heauen that saueth al things saue therowned Meruine, against whom the thunderbolts of priuate enuie threaten destruction: whe Mermont beheld Baucamont, Antifer and the other prisoners, his ioyes exceeded in greatnessse his kingdome, and hee repeated the wrongs their unlawfull armes had begotten in his countries, threathring a requital for these indignities. But Baucamont regardlesse of all miscusinge fortunes, without any amazement in his countenance, made a petition to Mermont, that all the twentie fourre prisoners might be deliuered, onely himselfe and Antifer detained for the satisfaction: which if it would please him to vouchsafe them, would restore him recompence for all the iudgements, they or their warre had procured, and that their mighty armie as yet not wholly vanquished, shuld returne to Damas. Upon these Articles the king concluded, so the 24. were infanchised and with them also the two impzisioned Ambassadores of Baucamont, to wit Morgant, & Nygron, who as then had bee prisoners the space of a whole yeere, during which time the warre had continued. Now when they were returned backe to their tents, they found the king Esclamart mightyly perplexed with sorowe for the taking of Baucamont, and Antifer his brother: yet notwithstanding they tolde him the conditions of compromise agreed vpon betweene the

## The first part of

kings of each party, vpon which report hee made proclamation for the raising of his tentes, and leauing the siege in perfitt manner, departed without further trouble to Mermont or his country: and betaking himselfe to the seas, sailea so prosperouly, that in shott time they arived at Damas-cus, where they reported to the state their vnhappy occurrents which had befallen them. Thus will wee leauue them to the sorowes of forsaken subiects, and returne vnto king Mermont, whose ioy was the greatest of all ioy, to see himselfe hold in his subiectio[n] Baucamont and Antifer, two of the greatest kings of all Asia, whom he had sworne upon Alcheron & a kings maiestie, that they should not pretend any flight or escape without his royll will and licence. All this while was Meruin in the court no lesse honored, exalted, and admired of the king, the queene, and the nobles, than of the basest vassall living by the graces of his fauour. The reason, because as he was valiant, maiesticall, and invincible: so was he sweete, courteous, affable and pleasant in the eyes of all creatures. Yet Marant, in whose heart enuy had built her a blacke sepulchre, increast his malice, and hated him the more, because no man else hated him. Thus being great with child of damnable imaginacions, he grew thoughtfull and sicke, how hee shold be delivere[n]t: anone hee bethought himselfe there was no so ready meane to heape ruine on the rich daies of Meruines prosperitie, as to come to the true vnderstanding of the loue betweene him and Berea, wherefore to that marke hee ayued all his thoughts, but yet his leauell carried him farre away, and his labour in that point was vt- terly frustrate, as you shall heare in the next Chapter

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XVII.

Of the priuate discourse betweene Marant and Berea, and of her answere. 2. How she came to the vnderstanding of Maranes enuy to Meruine. 3. The treason he intended, which he had procured Calix his Colis to execute.

It happened on a day that Marant espied the princielle Berea, set all alone in her chamber without other comfort then her owne cogitations, wherefore drawing nere vnto her, and saluting her with an humble dissembled reuerence he said: my most excellent colis, and the ornament of your sex, excuse me to speake boldly what loue and nature carefullly stirres in me; I find no profit in moze liberall sorte abound to this nation then the happy counion of you in a lawfull mariage, which if the king mine buckle neglect, he robbeth both his yeres and this kingdome of their greatest felicitie. And in mine opinion(if the loue of vertue leade me not into a blindfold path of forgetfulnes) there is not any whose excellencies better meriteth, whose wisedome can reach to higher desert of gouernment, nor whose valure after the decease of my most gracions buckle, coulde better defend this Realme from disquiet, than incomparable Meruine, the glorie of mankinde, and the loadstarre to alhonourable actions: now tell mee my dearest diuine colis, can you not loue his person, whose inward goodnesse lies be-

## The first part of

word common admiration. Berea whose naturall wisedome had taught her a politike dissembling, answered: Cosine, wert thou not in iest, I should be angrie in earnest, or if thou hast in earnest I must needs iest at thy extreame folly: sie, that thy tongue is so loose to deliver words without thoughts: counsell of better aduisement: Believe me, thine erroz is inexcusable, and thy punishment worthy no ending: alas, imaginest thou me, because a woman, thereforee a fole, or that I am so infinitly poore of vnderstanding as to build the hope of my life, I meane mine affection vpon Meruine, which is but the bastard son of a silie Marchant? Believe me, believe me, rather would I be toke in pieces: neither is my loue augmented to you for this perswassion, but rather abated for prophesying my dishonour. Thus with an angrie countenance speake she to the traiteur, who many daies before had watcht to behold their proceeding. But so wise were they in the course of their affections, that not any creature, more then Iacob, and Gratiana: no, scarce Cupid himselfe knew of their selfe likings, yet all their loue was honourable, chaste, and the harts heralds, and imbracings, the knots of sacred affections, with which they consumed two yeres in unspeakable contentment. When Marant beheld with what affiaunce she had deliuerd him her answer, he imagined she speake from her heart, as indeede she did, for such thoughts never lodged in that habitation: wherefore he replied. By Maho met (sweete Princesse) thou hast answere d excellently to my motion, and in nothing art more wise, than in not leuving Meruine. Alas, what is he but a boy, whose descent not any knoweth, saue that one saith he is the bastard of Barbin the poore marchant: as for his honour, I thinke all the deuilles in hell haue conspired to make him famous: but if I live, I will bring to an end all his glorie. Berea hearing this, was stricken dumbe, and had not power to answere a word.

Then

## the historie of Meruine.

2 Then the Traiteur taking his leaue, departed: but she into whose breast Marant was stowne to make sweete his lamentation, stayed, and with beteared eyes cried out in this manner: Alas, alas (said she) now may I well say that Meruine my loue, he that in all loues alone ly is gracious, he in whom my loue liueth, liueth to live unhappy: ay me! now goe my ioyes on their last date: and Meruine must die by vndying treason. Forsaken that I am, what shall I doe? I know not. Help me memorie: O thou wylt helpe me, but to record whose horrore? If I discouer what I conceiue, I am guiltie of my kinmans tragedie, for that nothing but his life can make Meruine satisfaction. If I hide what I haue heard, Meruine my Lord shall be my Lord no longer: woe alas: misery in my minde hath made a perpetuall dwelling. If Marant die, Berea is dishonoured; if Meruine die, Berea is forsaken. Live Marant, so Meruine liue, and die Berea to sauue them both from misfortune. Thus argues the virgin, whose heart by this occasion was helde with a thousand sorowes: and in the middest of the agonies, Meruin entred into the chamber, who beholding her in that confit of passion, grew wonderously amazed, and deuauished both a reason for her sighes and the cause of that infinite torment, vowing by all the yeals of his unspotted loue, that if any creature, of what estate soever, had eyther in deede or word giuen occasion to those teares, that he woulde die or wondersfully revenge it.

When Berea heard him, shee was at her witts ends, what aunswere to reply vnto him: yet on the sodaine shee apprehended this fiction, and thus excused them: My most deere loue ( said she ) mistake not my wee, which is no other but an entire desire to enjoy thy company, which I am afraid will too soone vanish from my happiness. Sith one told me, not long since, thou wert determined to depart

from my fathers Court to seeke aduentures in strange countreys: this is the reason of my teares and cause of my mourning, no other thing at all afflicthe me, ther and thy losse is my whole lamentation. Deare Lady mistresse of my life (answered hee) falsely they lie that haue so falsely blazed my thoughts into thy bosome, by Mahomet in whom I affie, my loue shall never be dislodg'd from the sacred tents of thy Celestiall eyes, til an eternall night overshadow the Clement, and then imbracing her in his armes, with a world of inumerable killies, he sealed the daedes of his perpetuall possession. My deare loue, said Berea, I beseech the (not for knowledge, but for suspition sake) that thou haue alwaies a regardfull respect to the daedes of my cosin, prince Marant, for hee is false and full of insupportable pride, & withall, the sonne of a mightie King, euen Butor of Minor, that is so strong & impregnable. Madam (replied he) all that is nothing in my estimation: and by this right hand of yours, in whose Spheare my hart is contained, & Alcheron so worthy as shall never be prophesied, if your cosin Marant doe me the least touch of honour may be imagined, his life shall make god mine indignitie, neither will I desir for his parentage, sith the naughtines of the man makes the art of dishonor almighty, when received. Thus spake valiant Mervine, but Marant stil notwithstanding continued, both in thanking & contynuing how to bring a domes day on his praises so manfully atchined.

3 It hapned on a day that king Mermont for his recreatioun intended to ride a hunting, & took Baucamont & Antifer with him: which whē the traitor Marant vnderstood, he was exceeding glad, and instantly assembled a band of traytors together, to the number of 500. all nobly borne and of his owne lineage, to whom he made this short preamble: Lords & Princes, you are royally descended from the same stemme of which my selfe am issued: in you then either doth or shoulde remaine

maine a lineall thred of amitie to support mine honour, and reuenge me of my protestes enemies. Cosin answered one, whose name was Calix, tis true, therefore without ceremonie, whers loue and nature bindeth allegiance, display thy grieses, and be it right or wrong, we are the executors of thy vengeance. Calix (quoth Marrant) thy loue is stowen into my bosome, and there shall find an immortall residence: the thing whereof I complaine, is of that honoz-deuouring Mervine, whose pride if it take roote, and his life flourish, the king will giue account to no man, but him, for happiness: but if my wits faile me not, that as yet never quailed in like Stratagems, this day will I bring his praises to a full point, and entombe his body in a graue of destruction. And thus it is, the king my vnkle intends this day to hunt in the forest, it is needfull then that you lie in an ambush in some priuate bordering groue, vntill such time as you shall see Mervine passe along by you: for which purpose there shalbe an espial to giue notice of his passage: then when you haue him with, in your power, he being naked, & you armed, shalldismount him from his lostie mare, and with cordes bind him to the body of some oake, growing in some desart & forlorne place, to whose abiding traceth the footstepps of no humaine creature, and so leaing him without more torment, because by that meanes, if you shall be examined upon any point of his misfortune, you may iustly sweat you were no agents of his death or funerall. And I doubt not but in a moments space, the wild beasts of the forest, which so abound in this region, will sone be the actors of this wished tragedie. This is the reuenge I haue inuented, and the meane I would pursue for his affliction. Cosin, said Calix) you haue spoken excellently, and by my life all shalbe performed, as you haue devised. Upon this traitors conclusion, they shakē hands and departed, he to the king, and the band of 500 to the woods, where they ambusht themselves in a couert, through whose thicknesse

## The first part of

thicknes, as yet the sunne had neuer pieped. Now earely in the morning before Meruin went tastrand the king on hunting, he went to the chamber of lady Berea, who that night dreamt a fearefull and strange drieame, whiche had not onely put her senscs in amazement, but drowned her heart in a deluge of extreame sorrow; yet when she beheld Meruin like a flame, she threw her selfe about his necke, heaping vp on infinit kissses infinit redoublings. said: Ah Meruine my loue my deare loue Meruine, for thee my soule breaks, and for thee my heart dieth. This night I dreamed a dismal drieame the solution whereof belongeth, I feare to thy fortunes. He thought I had a most delicate and princely greyhound, so swift, so nimble, so deliver, that it was impossible for Nature to conceue how to forme such an other. This greyhound me thought, went into a chamber, where were many serpents, who with accustomed malice so inclosed and assailed him on every side, that it was impossible for him any more to returne to my company: the griefe for his wāt made teares burst from mine eyes, and those teares invited fadder lamentations, that striving to make knownen my languor, I awakned with my sorrow: what this pretends, I know not, only I beseech thee for the honoꝝ of Mahomet, that above all men thou beware of mine unkind cosin Marant, for he is traiderous, and treachery hateth alwaies the vertuous. Is it possible qd Meruine, that in Marants faire countenance should lodge such distemperate malice? Ha my one onely excellent loue (said she) trust him not, looks are liers, and his cheeks are a table of falsehood. Madame replied he, I trust none but my swōrd, and that in extremes shalbe mine onely redēmer: what shall be shalbe, onely deare lady, I beseech you commaund some carefull attendance to be giuen to my never-failing friend Drohes, who is fallen exceedingly sicke of a feuer, for his like in constancie and manhood, is not to be found among living creatures. To this she gaue

## the historie of Meruine.

gave him assurance with many protestations, and so after divers kisses and imbraces, they departed either frō other. But when Berea was alone, her sorowes gave a new onset on her soule, and put all her hopes to slaughter, and that not without god cause: for before her eies again shall give salutation to his forhead, his life and honoꝝ shalbe both in dangerd, if God himselfe, and the virgin mother of the greatest moner, with a gratiouſe eie pity not his huge misforſtune. Mermont with Baucamont, Antifer, Meruin, Marant and other noble gallants, departed from Montnient, and came to the forrest, where they had kingly pastime, and killed many wild beasts, continuing their spōts iij. dayes without thought of returning: all whiche space, an espiell of Marrants attended ſoſt, by ſoſt upon Meruin. The fourth day approaching, Mermont prepared to go home againe to the city, which he did, but Meruin ſtaid behinde: the reaſon was, he had that morning ſounſ out a dairie ſpotted yong goate, whose colour and beauty ſo well pleased him, that he ſware he would haue it to beſtow on his ladie Berea: but no ſoſer offered he to aſſaile it, but it fled, and with all ſpeede purſued it, even till in the maine chace, he had utterly loſt ſight of it, whiche not a little grieved him, but when wiſdom told him there was no auaile in anger, he ſought to returne, but the greedines of his ſport had expelleſ the knowledge of his way from his memorie, and he ſhakeſ not where. The ſpie whose eies neuer forſoake him, perceiving his ignorance, thwarting through ſtrange paths, placed himſelfe in a way through whiche Meruin of force muſt paſſe. When Meruin ſaw the ſpie, he was moſe than well pleased and demaunded of him: which way king Mermont his Lord rode: Sir ſaid the ſpie, if it please you to follow me, I will conduct you: ſo the ſpie led the way, and Meruin followed him, whiche hart was thoughtles of any treason. After they had traveled long in a nightconcealing corner, Meruin ſaid, friend,

## The first part of

friend, I feare me we are both out of our way. O sir, ( replied he ) feare not, I will bring you to the king my master presently. And as he was thus saying, they were arrived in the place where the traitors were ambushed: and as soone as Calix beheld him, he, and with him soxie lanciers charged Meruine behinde him, not speaking any word, and that with such violence, that ere he dreamed of disadvantage, they had throwen him to the ground from his mare forsward: but like the flower of all knightly chivaltrie in a trice he remoued himselfe vpon his feete, and drawing Entrant his sword, flew vpon the spie, and gane him such a blowe that he cleane his head & chaps in two pieces, saying: Villaine, thou which hast led me to my death, in death shalt be my first companion. But scarce were his words ended, before he was assailed on euery syde, with all stee hundred: but he defended himselfe moze like a god then a mortall man: and questionlesse, had he bene armed, as he was naked, twise so many as they, had not taken him prisoner, for before he remoued his right foote, he had laine an hundred dead before him. But now faint heat engendering within the torment of his incessant labour, distilled such a weakenesse through his all too extreme trauelled members, that his handes began to weape in sweateie drops, that they had power to weld his sword no longer, and his boode faultered, as most willing to die, sith it had lefft strength to relieue his master: when they perceiued this, all at once they cast themselues vpon him, and like a tempest against a princely forsaken building, ouerturned him to the earth: then, as it to seve, they all lay vpon him, some taking from him his sword, some blinding his eyes, and some bindyng his handes behinde him: this done, violently they dragoone him to a forsaken pte, whose mansion was so horriblie, that no living eye till then, had seene where he was planted. Against it they bound him, and so leauing him, returned to Mowntment. When Meruine beheld his pitilesse estats, he saye,

## the historie of Meruine.

said; Ha divine prophetesse of the wold, faire Berea, ercelently didst thou foretell my danger, and the hatred of kinred, but my deafe resolution would never, till too late, beleue my misfortune. Thus said Meruine, and in thus saying, sighed out such heart-killing lamentations, that if the most barbarous vplandish pesant, had but heard his meanes, he would not onely haue melted, but haue beene partner of his afflictions: All night continued Meruine in this wofulnes, who in a moment had bin devoured of savage beasts, if som heauenly power had not inspired his galant mare Mordant with a man-like vnderstanding, who defended and preserued him from a thousand deadly daugers. Mermont who was returned to his court in Mowntment, and vnderstanding Meruine was absent, grew exceedingly sorie: but the traitorous Marrant tolde him, he was ridden alittle out of the way to visite a gentlewoman, who dwelt neare vnto the forrest, and that no other occasion withheld him. Whiche report, although it satisfied the king at that present, yet notwithstanding, it was nothing sufficient to quiet Berea, who incessantly inquired for her Meruine, and that not without abundance of teates, and intollerable sorrow, which when her heart, too publike a tell-tale of her loue, could with no moze patience conceale, she went into the chamber, there to publish the mountaine of her cares, which else would wound her body by her hearts breaking, and thus she beganne: Thou patron of our countrey, thou great God Mahomet, conseruest thou alas, so soone to diuorce me from that most diuine creature, in the temple of whose ries, my heart and thoughts are inlyned? Ha, speake, speake thou immortall prophet: and at that word she wrung her lillie fingers, and tars her haire, her haire moze fine than the golden thred of Diana: and as she was in this lunatike trance of complaining, the Fairie Gratiana entred into her chamber, who seeing her perplexitie, grew moze than her selfe amazed,

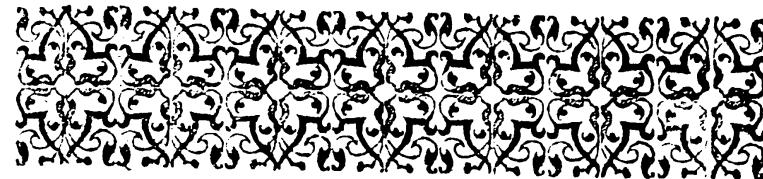
## The first part of

niazed saying: Madame, what wonders wrought griefe in your countenance: trust me, they did him wrong that loded him in so rare a receptacle of beauty. Ha, peace, peace, said Berea, my moanes are worthy no measure, and then she declared how Meruine her Lord and loue was not returned from the forest, and that not any could tell newes of his absence, and then she began afresh to wape, as if these winter cloudes of sorrow had but then overcast her faces element: but Graciana with not to be refelled arguments, lent such comfort to her comfortlesse imaginacions, that she desirred, though took not away the worst of her extremity, and with a dissembling countenance of contentment. Berea went into the hall to supper, for the king her father was then set at the table, about the middest of supper, Calix and divers others of his traiterous consorts entred into the hall, whom as soone as Berea saw, she said in her selfe, this is the cosin of Marrant, and in his looks are written

tyranny and treason. O my heart presageth  
that some notable villany by them is  
wrought against my loving  
Lord thise singular  
Meruine.



## the historie of Meruine.



### C H A P. XVIII.

1 How Berea hiding her selfe, came to vnderstand the treason. 2 Her reuealing it to Drokes. 3 Drokes challengeth Calix before the king, and pawneth his gage.



Freas thoughts were the true augures of hir louers mischances, which so vehemently vexed her, that she swore by Mahomet, her eyes shold never close in rest, till she knew the trueth of her presages: whereof privately unsene of any, she went into a secret chamber, whither Marrant when he had any priuate occurrents to discourse of, vsually repaired: and vnder a cupboard ouer the which hung a rich turke carpet, she closely conuied her selfe: but no sooner was she inclosed in that forgetfull cell, but Marrant and Calix entred, and Marrant leaping vpon the cupboard, therre late to vnderstand all the misfortunes of Meruine, which Calix described altogether, as fearefully as it was done tuthlessly, and hwo before he could be taken, an hundred were slaine. My deare cosin (said Marrant) well haue you performed my wish, no more shal that boyes great pride pester the courts of princes, and for your exploit assure your selfe it is more full of hono: than midnight of stars. After this was said, Marrant and Calix went to their bedchambers, and the heart-consuming carefull Berea rose from her blacke lodging, deeply wowing that this damnable prasise shold be declared to the king hir father, and so she went

## The first part of

vnsto her owne chamber, where the Fairy Gratiana attened her comming, and when the Fairy beheld her, she said; Madame, your lookes are gashly and dispairesfull, how fareth your Larielship? or where haue you bin? At that demaund Berea with a sad countenance reported from point to point all the treason committed against her Meruine, and with such feeling protestations, that all her amazement flew to Grariana, and she looked with a greater terror. At length gathering her sences together, she said, It behoueth vs madame to be wise how we manage this mischievous action. By heauen, said Berea, I will tell it to the king my father. Not for a kingdom quoth Gratiana, for so may you draw your selfe in danger.

2 Rather let vs accuse false Calix, and lay the treason on his shoulders, but because we will not be vncircumspect; let vs go to the vertuous Drohes & take his counsell, to which they agreed, and so came into the chamber of Drohes, who had been long sick of a burning feuer, whom when he beheld he knightly saluted, and demanded what occasion they had, that so late an houre brought them from their rest. Berea without circumstance, in plaine, but pittifull speaches, denounced vnto him both the treason and the treason: which when he heard, his manly heart was mad at the misadventure, for Meruine was as deare to him as his soules safety. Yet with a staid countenance he said: Lady, banish al feare: for to morrow I will not faile, but befoze the king I wil call Calix to account for the treason, and euen so God deliuer me from my extreame malady, as I will without dissimulatiōn shew the true loue I beare vnto the princely Meruine. Thanks god Drohes, said Berea, and so departed to her bed, but no rest could draw the motions of her sunny eies, but al night she wept and lamented for the loss of her only beloved Meruine. As soone as the morning had thrull his fozehead

onar

## the historie of Meruine.

ouer the montaignes, Drohes in whom could flamber no forgetfulness, arose with a lion-like resolution, to combat against Calix, and make him confess his treason: but alas he hadien by. weeks sick of a fierie ague, & through want of food, was now weak and fable: now God be his guide, for his attempt is dangerous. When Drohes was ready, he went into the great hali, where he found R. Mermont, Iacob the Marchant, and Barbin: inconueniently when Drohes saw the king, he said: King of Montaigne, iustly maiest thou be accounted vntire, and traiterous to thine owne maiestie. When thou sufferest the death of the most wise and valiantest creature of the world, who had done thee so great honour and profit, as to the like may nothing be compared, whose sword thrise in one day hath ransomed thee from thine enemis, and whose prouesse hath deliuered captiue to thee, the kings of the greatest nations. Alas, how little right v2 lare is backe repated him, when he is traiterously murdered? It is Meruine of whom I speake, he in whom valure is proude to haue an habitation, he that took Baucamont and Antifer, who yet are the prisoners. When Mermont beheld with what a settled and displeased countenance of discontentment Drohes speake, he said; I pray thee desist thy speach, for there is neither king nor prince vnder the cope of heauen, who shall wrong the gentle Meruine, but ile die or worke a mighty revenge. Pea said Drohes, these speaches are of roiall value, know then he is in your house that hath murdred Meruin in the forest where yester day you hunted: name him (said the king:) tis Calix said Drohes. At that word the King changed his colour, and calling before him a Sergeant at armes, commanding him to take a band of soldiers with him, and fetch Calix before him, which immedately was done, the rumor whereof astonished Marant, who went after to behold the occurrents.

## The first part of

3 No sooner approached Calix before the king, but Drohes said: Traitor thou, euen thy false selfe, who hast murdred renouned Meruine in the woods, which if thou denest, my lwoord shall make thee confesse with repentance, before this day be fully banisht: in signe whereof there is my gage, which I payne to you e all my assertion truer than thy religion. When Calix heard him, he beganne to ware pale, bowing his head to his heaſt, without ſpeaking any word: which the king perceiving, he ſaid: false traitor, why takeſt thou not the gage which he offereth: by the ſaith I beare unto Mahomet, if thou be guilty, all the golde in the world ſhall not ransome thee from a shameful death. I refuſe it not qd Calix, and then lifting aloft his head, took vp his gage. Marant ſeeing what had paſſed, aduizing himſelfe ſaid to the king: Now your maieſty muſt affigne vs a day of combate, to the end we may aſſemble our friends and kinred together, to behold the combate, and my ſelfe will be pledge for the fealtie of Calix my kinſman. By Mahomet ſaith the king, I understand not your intention, but as I am king of this region, I will not eate, till I ſee an end of this diſſentioп. Then forthwith was Calix coniamaunded to be armed, and Jacob carried Drohes to the chamber of Berea, who gaue him the moſt excellentiſt wines, and rareſt conſerves, that time or expeſcience had found out, of all which he taſted with god appetiſte, making himſelfe ſtrong and lufſy. Then was he armed in every pece according to his owne likiпg, and when he was readily prepared, he mounted on his horſe Marcheuall, which ſometimes was belonging to the famous duke Oger, then taking a launce in his hand, trotted in ſtately maner into the great court, ſeyning on the caſtle of Targon, which the king had then caſed to be prepared for that dreadfull battell, a woſd of gallant cheualiers attended Drohes into the lists. And a ſhort ſpace after Marant brought Calix, whom he earnestly besought

## the historie of Meruine.

besought, that if he were diſcomiſted, yet that he would not accuſe him, and he would quickly procure his peace with the king. Calix agreed, giuing his faith theron to, and entered the field where Drohes attended him, whose boſte, though ſickeneſs had made weake, yet his couraſe as invincible, was moſt mighty, albeit he knew Calix to be renotomed for faſh of chivalrie. When both the combatants were in a readines, the king ſaid, Champions ſtand forth, for I will that the occaſion of this battell be published unto every one, ſay therfore Drohes of what thou accuſeſt him. I ſay qd Drohes, and what I ſay, this ſword and arme ſhal witnes to be true, that this traitor Calix here preſent, hath murdred Meruine in the forſt, where your highnes yesterdaу hunted, as I will proue upon his body before it be night. It is a faſle lie ſaid Calix, I never had thought of ſo monſtrous treaſon, in ſigne whereof, I defie thee, and crave no other redameſt than this hand and the combat. This ſaid, retiгing themſelues, the trumpets ſounded, and they putting ſpurs to their horſes, charged ech other. Calix valiantly attaileſt Drohes, breaſting his launce into manie ſhivers, but Drohes anſwered him with ſo ſtrong a counter-buffe, that he threw him to the ground backward: but in a moment he roſe againe, and drawing his ſword, ſaide to him, Traitor, if thou diſmounteſt not thy ſelfe, I will kill thy horſe: at that word Drohes alighted, & with his ſword charged Calix ſo mightily, that had not his weapon turnd, it had bin the firſt & laſt of the battell: yet for all this ill hap, it fell with ſo huge a power, as he woule away his pouldrons & laces, it pierceth his fleſh ſo far, as the traitor ſhunke. Then ſaid Drohes, Villaine, ere thou and I depart, I will make thee dance before the B. a Morisco galliard. Calix, as muſh aſhamed at the contempt, as grieued with the blow, culched upon Drohes, and ſtrucke him with ſo manly a puissance, as heaſt and flowers thereon trembled, and withall, the

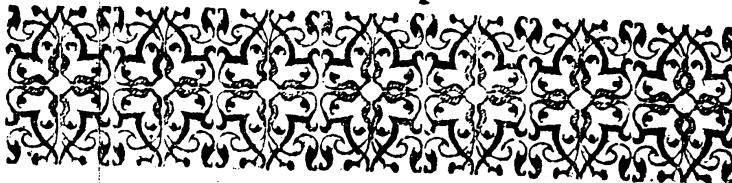
## The first part of

sword glauncing downe, cutte away one of Drohes spurs, and alittle of the flesh with it, insomuch, that he wanted lit-  
tle of falling ouer and ouer : and let no man thinke it anie  
dishonour, considering his weaknes, and the long living  
paine of his sicknes. Then Drohes lifting his heart to hea-  
uen, said ; Sweet Iesou, thou diuine saviour of the wold,  
look downe from heauen vpon me, and lend strength to my  
weake arme to vanquish this miscreant, sith all the end of  
my arme is to exalt thy diuine Godhead. As he was thus  
speaking, Calix strucke him againe with such mercilesse vi-  
gor, as he turned about and staggerd iij. times in amaze-  
ment. Then said Calix (whose pride lifted him higher then  
his fortune:) by the allegiance I owe to our great prophet,  
if thou doest not immediately confess before the king, that  
thou hast accused me falsely of this treason, ere the sunne  
descend from the heauens, I will diuorce thy head from  
thy shouulders. Wilaine (qd he) I esteem thee not a pin, then  
mounting his sword, he smote Calix on the helmet, that he  
fell to the ground : yet instantly he rose vp againe, but by  
the glauncing of the blade, was cut from his right thigh a  
piece of flesh enough to haue gorged a cast of Falcons for a  
whole day. Calix made mad with this ill misfortune, grab-  
ping his sword in both his hands came right against Dro-  
hes, meaning with that blow to make an end of the com-  
bate : but Drohes turning himselfe sodainely, for the sword  
came as thunders or lightning, wisely slipt aside, & the sword  
unstated by any interception, drove into the ground more  
than a foot and a halfe, and that with such vnusuall vio-  
lence, that by no power he had, could it be drawne backe a-  
gaine. Drohes seeing this leapt before Calix, and strucke  
him in such maner, that he cut off the arme which then was  
contending with the sword for mastery : the anguish wher-  
of made him fall to the earth. But Drohes striking, in his  
falling, cut one of his legges off also : the torment whereof  
mad

## the historie of Meruine.

made him cry that the whole assembly heard him. When  
the traitorous Marant saw Calix thus vanquished, in a  
moment he mounted himselfe on horseback, and never gaue  
ouer syring, till he came into the stong city of Minoz that  
was governed by king Butor his father. Drohes now  
seeing there was no power left in Calix to defend himselfe  
any longer, said, Traitor, this mischiefe hath thy knane hea-  
ped vpon thee, know then I wil kil thee in the sight of this  
assembly, if thou confessest not thy treason, and the murder  
of Meruine. Now by Mahomet said Calix, my thoughts  
are guiltlesse of his euill : at that word Drohes cut off his  
other arme. Then said Calix, ha excellent knight Drohes,  
be no moze my tormenter, but call the king, and to him I  
will report all things touching Meruine. Then came the  
king, and with him many barons to heare his confession, to  
whom he told all their committed treason : the first com-  
plotting, the continuing, and executing : lastly, how, and  
in what maner they left him, & the place where his sword  
was hidden. Then to the king he said, My liege, lay hands  
on your kinsemann Marrant, for it was he alone wrought  
vs all the mischiefe, for which now my heart is inwardly  
sory. When the king had heard all he could say, he caused  
him to be draggerd by the strength of horses into the field,  
where he was hanged according vnto the custome of  
traitors in those countreis. And thus will we  
leue to speake of him, and returne to  
our former matter.





## CHAP. XIX.

1 How king Mermont went to the forest to find Meruine. 2 The occasion & maner of his finding. 3 How he brought him to Montment, & other aduentures.



After the death of the notable traitor Calix, Drohes was carried into the chamber of Berea, where he disarmed himself: then calling for the skilfullest of the kings surgeons, he had his wounds bound vp & drest, which with carefull regard, were spedily healed. Now Mermont who was piteously perplexed for the losse of Meruine, commanded Jacob, Barbin, and divers of his chiefeſt nobilitie, to mount themselves on horsebacke, for he woulde instantely to the forest in queſt of Meruine, to which they all accordeſt, and being come to the woods, they ranged a long time, but could not find the fatall place of his abiding.

2 But at last Mordant the courageous mare, neigheſt ſolowd, and with ſuch an unuſuall ſwiftnes, as the k. hearing her, ſaid: without doubt I heare the cry of Meruine mare in theſe parts: let vs ride towards her with all ſped, which doing, they found the mare in the midſt of the high way, but Meruine by no means could their eyes recover. Then halowed the king alowd, ſaying: Ha, my deareſt and beſt frennd Meruine, where art thou? I pray thee ſpeak, if thou be neare me, conceale not thy ſelfe from him, who ſo lovethe thee. When Meruine heard the king, whose voice he knew by the reſounding, hee turned his head with great paine,

paine, and ſaid: Come hither my lord to this unhappy tree, and behold how I am tormented. Then went the king to him, whose eies ranne ouer with pitie, neither was there any flinty heart ſo obdurate, which would not haue relented to ſee Meruine ſo neare the doore of miferie: for he was bound with ſuch ſtraintneſſe, that his nose gushed out of blod abundantly, and his necke, his armes and legs were ſwolne and coloured like a man in leproſie. The vertuous King Mermont quickly cut his bands in ſunder, and Iacob and Barbin held him vp, for his legs were not able to ſuſtaine him: whereat Barbin wept grievously. But Meruine recompenced him, ſaying: Father appeaſe your ſorrow, for albeit my body be thus tormented, yet my mind is ſo free fro bondage, that at this instant I could incounter with xx. knights well arm'd, could I find Entrant my god ſword, which unmanly the traitors tooke from me. Meruine ſaide the king, thou ſhalt ſcōne haue thy ſword, and then went to the place where Calix had affignd him, and brought Meruine his ſword again. By gracieſs liege ſaid Meruine, how knew your highnes where my ſword was hidden? Then reported the king unto him all the circumſtances of Drohes chalenge and victory againſt Calix. To what purpose ſhall I double my diſcourse? the king forȝate not any point of the ſtory, Meruine was well contented with the historie, and loued Drohes, if poſſible, more than he did before.

3 Then being mounted on his mare, he returned with them in gallant maner to Montment, where all the burgesses and rulers of the towne ran forth to meete him, for Meruine was eſteemed the patron of peace, and highly loued amongſt them: then was he brought to the pallace where he was moſt roial-ly received of the queene, and more then may be ſpoken, of the beautiſull Berea, whose joy to ſee him aliuie, like the highest heauen, had no circumference; yet durſt ſhe not proclaimme it

## The first part of

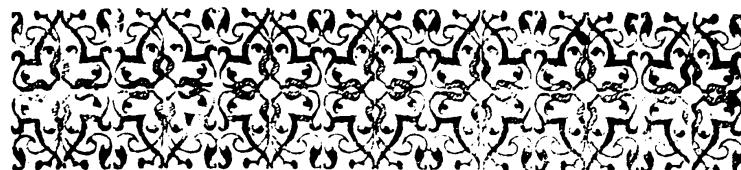
but oft sighed, that vnder clouds she was compelled to containe it. vchich when he perceiued, he smild, & loued, for she was wonderous faire, and withall most wise and prudent. Di her Meruine begat Orient, who was father of the seuen signes, of which one had to name Elias, who begat Ydaim, from whom issued Godfrey of Bullen, which conquered Ierusalem, as it is written in the famous historie of the saue Godfrey. Meruine at that instant was of all men most tostally receiued, and the king commanded his phisitians & surgeons carfully to attend, who in one moneth, ther row their art & diligence, deliuered him safely recovered: for which the king being glad, both praised & rewarded them. After Meruine was healed, make no question but he ouerslipt no time or occasion to visit his hearts goddesse Berea, who to either other read al the legends of their misfortunes, he making her, she him, a cabaret where they stord by their chieffest treasures: after they deuised of their loues, whose last hope and conclusion, was, chastely to espouse one another, which before they could bring to passe, they passed thoro many worlds of greater troubles: for Meruine after he was returned to be a Christian, he was fwe yeres detained in Minor prisoner, during which season Berea indured infinite mischances, being twice enforced for her lyses safetie to renounce the redeemer Christ Jesus: yet not by any meanes would she ador Mahomet, but what she did, was womans weaknes, and her lyses loue: for always the true God of heauen was mighty in her memorie.

as shalbe declared hereafter in this history. And thus will we a while leue to speake of them, and intreate of another occurrent.

¶

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XX.

1 Of Pimons embassage from Esclamart to Baucamont, touching the 4 sonnes of Gualter of Denmarke, 2 and how the peace was concluded betweene Mermont and Baucamont.



Done after Meruine was recovered of his late misfortune, as Mermont was sitting at the table with Baucamont, and Antifer, Pimon the embassador of Baucamont entered into the hall, and after howable reverences performed, knelling vpon his knes, thus saluted the kings: That Mahomet which gouerneth the vniuers, saue and defend the puissant king Baucamont, my lord and soueraigne, the god king Mermont, and Esclamart, that hither bath sent me. Know then you myghtis kiugs of the most myghtiest nations, that king Esclamart desires you, & in the name of Mahomet, commands you to knit an eternal peace between you, both for the profit of our religion, & the maintenance of al your kingdoms: which if obstinately you refuse, all your dominions are in hazard, and Baucamont my soueraigne shal assuredly lose Damascus: for the false christians, who leake to confound our great prophet, are entred into his confines with sword and fire, consuming his territorie, not sparing infants, or taking any pagans to mercy, that willingly without compulsion falleth not downe, and adoreth their God the God of heauen, as your maiestie shall more plainly behold, by the contents of this letter which king Esclamart by me hath sent you, then killing the letter, he deliuered it Baucamont, which contained this that ensueth.

To

## The first part of

To the king of Damascus,  
health:



Hrise hie and mightie king of Damascus, my soueraigne vnkle: sithence these three yeeres that your sacred maiestie hath vnhappily bene detained prisoner, I haue not budgde my foote, nor remoued from this citie, which I haue gouerned and ruled in most peaceable quiet, vntill the end of this last moneth, at what time the hare-braind sonnes of Gualtier of Denmarke, inuaded thy dominions, the names whereof ensueth: The eldest as it is reported to mee, is named Guion: the second Bertran, whose valure not any creature is able to resist: the third, Thyerry, and the fourh, Florion, all exiles, and banished their countreys: wherefore I intreate your excellencie, finde some meane to give an end to your trouble, and come home to defend your owne nation and if possible, bring some aide, for your foes are mightie.

From Damas,

Esclamart

Gathen

## the historie of Meruine.

When Baucamont had read this letter, he sayd to Mermont: behold, king of Montmet, if this newes be not a reaso meane to thy fauour, assure thes it is a hie trut to my vter desolation: for sith these fourre brethren are entered into my countrey, I know them so redoubted in armes, that nothing is able to withstand them. By these fourre brethren in one yere, was the most famous Gratiana, and fve other kings, before renoumed for chivalrie, utterly discomfited. Besides, Brandis hath written to me in inclosed letters, that they are the most renowned conquerors this day vnder the firmament. These things considered, I beseech your highnesse let vs concluce upon agreement, and leue the hostilitie we haue maintained one against another: the beginning whereof is my griefe, and the ending that I aske thy mercy.

2 Baucamont, sayd Mermont, moze to defend the law of our religion, then for any other zeale I haue to thy kindnes, I freely pardon that the forfeit of thy life and kingdome, and withall promise thes by a kingly protestation, to aid & defend thes against thine enimies. Thus with diuers other ceremonies of sticer combining, was the truce concluded betweene the kings, and instantly edicts sent abroad into every countrey for the assembling together of an infinite number of pagans, to make an vnvanquishable army: which being mustred & enrolled, instantly there betoke themselues to the sea, King Mermont, Antifer, Baucamont, & the wise alconquering Meruin where for a while we wil leue them, & return to the 4. brethre, to wit Guion Bertran, Thierry, & Florion, & noble Huon of Burdeaux, who at that time was in the armie with them. In their host was 20000. god christians by whose provesse they had marched so farre, that now they had kied their fledge to Damascus, which then swarmed full of mis-believing infidels, because since the returne of Esclamart, he had still in that place detained the ancient armie: thre

132  
The first part of

there was also with him in the towne the king Brandus, Herades, and Isay the king of Iuda. In b[ri]e[ve], there was f[ive] kings, and their powers at that time in the citie of Damas-  
cus. When Esclamart sawe how gallantly the Danes  
had besieged him, hee called Bandus and the other kings,  
and sayde vnto them, You kings of Asia, and defenders of  
Alcheron, let vs issue out courageously, and visite these chi-  
stians, and I doubt not, but if wee vertuously shew our re-  
solutions, we shall before the Sunne touch the highest point  
in the heauens, vanquish and amaze them: for they imag-  
ned to haue found vs altogether vnprouided, because mine  
vnkle king Baucamont is at Montment prisoner, and so in  
his absence, thought suddenly to surprise vs. Tis true, sayd  
Bandus, therefore you haue my consent, to fallie out imme-  
diately. To this stratageme every one concluded, therewith  
arming themselves, and then with a crie able to dea[n]s[er] than-  
der, they sallied out of the gates, and in a trice, cast them-  
selves into battalio[n] order. Bandus ( sayde Esclamart,)  
bear you the Standard, and for your garde, take twentie  
thousand of the best souldours. You Herades shall haue  
other twentie thousand, and incompa[n]se them about, through  
vonder valley, my selfe with the rest will charge them in the  
faces, and doubt not, but so[n]e to behold their destructions.  
In this politike sorte, Esclamart traied his troupes, who  
burnt with desire to bring our god christians to confus-  
ions: but they as to wise to bee soyled by inuention, had  
aduertisement by their espials of this app[ro]aching, where-  
fore Guion called his brothers and sayde, Princes, remem-  
ber you the blood from whence we are descended, and the  
vertues of our famous father Gualtier, whose backe was  
never turned to the face of the proudest pagan. Remember  
you also our renowned vnkle, whose almighty p[ro]wesses  
have conquered the realmes whiche they now gouerne: eu[n]  
now is the time for vs to imitate their vertues, and with like  
p[ro]wesse

133  
the historie of Meruine.

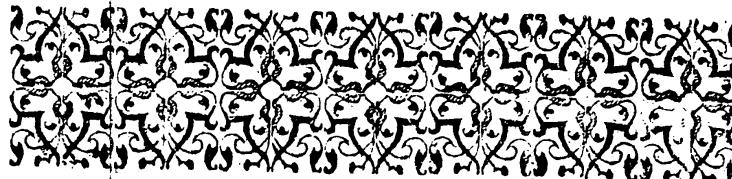
p[ro]wesse to obtaine to our selues crownes of perpetnall in-  
duranc[e]. And for mine owne part, I bove by him that  
died for me, this day to give my name such life amongst the  
pagans, that the rumor of mine honour, shall indure beyond  
all ages. To this they all answered, with an equall desire of  
honour, whose courageous sprites like lions, were neuer  
tamed, yet they were all exceeding yong, the oldeſt amongſt  
them haing not as yet attained to the age of xxx. yeres.  
Now God of his goodnesse prosper their procedings, for im-  
mediately begins the battell, which will be both fierce and  
dangerous. When ensignes were displayed on all sides, and  
the signe of battel giuen by the trumpets sounding, Bertran  
toke a mightie lance in his hand, and spurring his horse,  
was the first that charged: whom, when a Turke named  
Butor, wh[o]s was king of Ecalion, beheld, he diſtranged him-  
ſelle, and ranne to encounter him, but Bertran who toke his  
ſight like a tempest, came againſt him after ſuch a fashion,  
that at one blow, both horse and man tumbled to the ground,  
which when Bertran had perfourmed, he returned with his  
ſword drawen vpon the Turke, who with the blowe was  
ſo affonished, that locking his hands together, and lif[ing] them vp,  
barely begged life, and pardon. Then Bertran demandide if hee would renounce Mahomet, and beleeue  
thenceforth one onely Jesus Christ: to this the Turke an-  
ſwered, no. Then by heauen, sayd hee, in me thou ſhalt  
ſinde no mercie, and at that word ſtrake his head from his  
ſhoulders: then turning to his brother Guion, who then  
was come vnto him, hee sayd: Brother, if to every one I  
pay this payment, I beleeue the pagans will gaue nothing  
by my tenure. Nowe began the battell to be mightie on  
both ſides, and Guion leauing his brother, th[ro]uſt himſelfe  
amongſt the middest of the pagans, where the firſt he met,  
he threwe dead to the ground, and in like maner made an end  
of the ſecond. Briefly, before his lance was broken, he ſent  
ſome

## The first part of

some to the earth to accompany their forefathers: but when his lance was broken, then he drew his sword, and meeting with a pagan, he clave his head to his teeth, and then pursued another. Bertran this while being amongst the thickest bandes of his enemies, encountered a pagan, who was the cousin to Esclamart, to whom he lent such a salutation, that he clave him downe even to the girdle, which another pagan beholding, ran to Esclamart, and sayd, Generall, thy noble cosyn is slaine by a christian, see where he lieth, and see where his foe rangeth. When as Esclamart saw Bertran possessed with a felonious rage of immoztall revenge, hee thrust spures to his horse, and assailed Bertran with such puissance, that with the force of his present blowe, he strake his horse dead vnder him: but Bertran quickly balstred on his feete againe, and with his sword in his hand, ranne a straight blow, but by any meanes, he could not so the preele; yet notwithstanding reaching one, he light so violently on the head of his horse, that it was more then time soz Esclamart to heare him compaine on fote also: and Bertran then running against him, had there slaine him, but there swarmed such innumerable troupes of pagans about him, that if God himselfe had not bene his defender, Bertran then had breathed no longer. Yet soz all this, the gentle yong gallant miraculously behaued himselfe, soz he strake not any pagan, but he seuered the life from the body. I say the king of Iuda seeing Bertran thus courageous, thrust himselfe against him, but there was mightie follie in his worke, for Bertran met him in the middest of his carier with such a blowe, that hee clave his head to his collar. O Mahomet, said Esclamart, this christian is possessed with some deuill, what mischiefe he doeth me: and then he cried to all his soldiery, promising prizes of great worth to him that could take him. Then was the famous gallant assayled on every side, but like an enraged boze,

## the historie of Meruine.

boze, he ranged amongst them, and in such sort defended himselfe, that the pagans like larkes fell vnder the houerings of his wings. But yet alas, all his prouesse had profited him but little, and he was at the point of taking or killing. When Thery & Florion his brothers, with Huon of Burdeaux, with diuors christians, by great chance came to his rescue. Brother Bertran (said Florion) now or never remember who you are, and banish the feare of a pagan infidell, and with that word he thrust into the preele, ouerturning and killing al that stood betweene him and his brother. When Bertran saw him, he tooke newe courage, and like a lion couz-ed himselfe with greater furie: in so much, that he strake Esclamart to the earth, whom Florion like a gripe seized vpon, and delivered him to two stoute christians, who bare him to their tents. Then began the battell Hydra-like to renew, in which the pagans died without number, for whom soever Bertran touched, never more stood need of the phisition. On the other side his brother Guion did wonders who encountered a king named Afriquant, who was exceeding strong and valiant, him Guion ouerthrew to the ground, but a band of Sarazens despight his head, mounted him againe, and assailed Guion in cruell maner: but like a wise and valiant knight, he defended himselfe from their furie. Then came Huon of Burdeaux, who like a valiant knight of un-speakable vertue, slew infinite troupes of the pagans: but when he saw yong Guion in hazard, he turnid vnto him, & in a moment delivered him from the swords of those miscreants. At al this, the battell weakened no deale, yet might you haue seene as many knights lie dead on the earth, as starres in a winters night shine in the heauens, and so many mackerel-like horses postling about the fieldes, as atomies playing in the sunnes beauty: yea, so valiantly our christians bare themselves in that conflict, that in the end the pagans were discomfited, as you shall heare hereafter.



## C H A P. X X I.

1 How *Florion* the yongest brother was taken prisoner  
; by *K. Brandus*. 2 How the pagans were ouerthrown.  
3 How *Florion* was giuen in exchange for king *Gobam*  
*Gaisiers* brother, and other aduentures.



Rightie was the sturre, and most dreadfull  
the battell, in which our christians shewed  
the renome of their baliancies, but above  
all, the price of victory seized on the helmet of  
Bertran, for the number which he slew, were  
accounted numberlesse: even the yongest of  
the brothers, most delicate *Florion*, did that day marve-  
lous acts, who beholding a pagan in his presence to kill a chi-  
stian, swore devoutly, his hand shold be his reuenge: but the  
pagan flying before him, thrust himself to a bataillon of Sar-  
azens, where *Florion* ouertaking him, slew him in his en-  
terance. But euill befell that chaunce to the yong gallant,  
who imaginin g to returne, found himself inclosed on every  
side with the power of king *Brandus*, which the were twen-  
tie thousand pagans: all with one violence they laied siege a-  
gainst *Florion*, but preuailed nothing against him, buttill by  
an euill misfortune, they killed his horse, who in his falling,  
fell vpon him: by which meane, and no other, they tooke him  
prisoner, and sent him to Damascus. Then *Brandus* brought  
his armie into the heart of the batel, with whose sight, it rec-  
uered

uened new life, became sharper then at the beginning.

2 Yet was *Bertran* so scared amongst the pagans, that  
not any durst stand before him, but if any by chance did, they  
neuer after were behoden to their surgeon: so myghtie and  
invincible was his force that day, that by him king *Gobam*  
the brother of *Gaisier* was taken prisoner, whom he com-  
maunded to be brought to his tentes. Not farre from him,  
his brother *Guion*, like a demie-god of armes, incouraged  
his souldours, charging them for the heneur of *Jesus*  
*Christ*, and his deare passion, that day to be invincible: for  
though the pagans be infinite, yet their flight is shamefull.  
To this renowned *Guion* belonged a squire, whose name  
was *Regnier* the sonne of his suster, who with a battell-ax  
which he held, strucke a pagan named *Tufier*, thwart the  
helmet, with such vertue, that he gaue his head to his shoul-  
ders. When *Guion* sawe the myghtinesse of his blowe, he  
went vnto him, and embracing him, gaue him the second  
order of knighthood, saying. Thou branch of the stocke from  
whence I am descended, continue thy mygnanimite, & by  
that honour, to which I couet to aspire, I will make thee  
the commandet of a towne, or a stately castell. Even in his  
greatest myghtinesse was the battell, when *Brandus* had  
ioyned his armie with the others. There myght you haue  
seen so many lost heads, so many forsaken bodies, so many  
ouerthowone knights, so many vnbuckt horses, who trai-  
ling their bridle vnder them, made their masters to pieces:  
that since the Lamb of Glory was shadowed vnder the  
spotlesse wombe of a vrgine, the like hath not bene seene,  
nor heard tel of, nor that so great resistance could be made by  
so few as our pore christians: For the pagans were in num-  
ber one hundred thousand and more, but our christians by  
their valure, lest but ten thousand which were not slaine or  
taken. The king *Brandus* was in the midle of the christiani-

## The first part of

armie, of whom he made mighty destruction. Among whom he thrust one noble christian to the hart: and after him, like a Wolfe in a flocke, sent a number to follow him. On the other side of the field was Bertran triumphat with victory, ranging to sake his brethren. Two of them bee quicklye found out, who were ioyfull to behold their conquest. Brothters, said Bertran, where is Florion? I know not, quoth Guyon, it is convenient that we goe sake him. Then put they thei selues into the battell to search him out, but could not find him: and there was reason, for he was straightly imprisoned at Damascus in a strong tower. When Bertran saw he could not find him, he took a solemine oath, that nothing but the extreame darknes of the night should dñe him from the field, and with that he beganne a new conflict, proposing his body against a world of swords: but how manny soever he dismounted, never rose againe to become armed. Amongst the rest he encountered Croniquant, unto whom he gaue such a blow, as he classe him in two pieces. Now began the pagans to recolle, & flee toward the towne, whereof when Bandus was aduertised, he vsed all his force and eloquence to returne. But it was in vaine, for they reported hote king Esclamart, Goham, and diuers others were taken prisoners, and carried to the Christians tents: which so soone as he heard, he betooke himselfe to flight also, whom Bertran, Guion, Thyerry, and Huon chased so fercely, that they put many of them to the sword, as they entred the gates of the citie. Reignier in this chace, whom Guion had newly made knight, behaued himselfe so valiantly, that he was named the Pagan tormentor. Thus entred king Bandus into the towne, with tenne thousand that survived of an hundred thousand and better. Thus the Sarazens were overthowne by the valure of our Barons: who as the storie reports, were so noble in their conquests, that nothing could resist them. They in this battel lost but

soure

## 139 the historie of Meruine.

soure thousand men, and the wealth they gained was so innumerable, that the basest in the Christian army, was able to purchase a castle. Besides kings, they had an hundred of the greatest pagans prisoners. Yet for all this, the generals were not committed, but sorrowed for the losse of their brother Florion, to whose fortune they knew not what had chaunced. Briefly, their woe was so great, that no tong is able to report it. But leauing them in their doubtfulnesse, let vs returne unto king Bandus, who being entered into the citie, and sad for his discomfiture, commanding Florion to be brought before him, saide: Christian, I charge thee without any dissembling, tell me thy name. Pagan, answered he, in whom it was impossible for feare to haue anie residence, I hate the thing from which thou bindest me: know then I am called Florion, and so they baptized me, as those know that are acquainted with me. I haue these brethren whom thou oughtest exceedingly to hate, for they haue vsed never to part or turne aside, vntill they haue taken the city of Damascus, and converted his people unto our Religion. But I wonder much, I sawe not Baucamont all this day, surely he either oversleipeth his glorie, or wanteth courage to sustaine himselfe in combat. Christian (said Bandus) he is at Montment, and from thence is comming with a mighty hoste, to chassise your follies, amongst whom is a Pagan named Meruine, whose very rumour of excellencie, will daunt you with amazement. But letting these things passe, tell me I pray thee, from what line art thou descendede? My fathers name, said he) is Gualtier of Denmarke, that now ruleth Babylon, whose mighty powesse hath conuerted millions of your faith, to a perfitt and true religon. Duke Oger also is mine unckle, who converted king Moysant, and that was the sonne of his called Florion, who as the fruit of baptisme gaue me the name I now carry: know then, if by thoe my death

## The first part of

death be procured, not all the kingdoms of the world can shilte thez from vengeance. We therefore aduised by me, and let me returne to my brethren, so shalt thou please them, and rescue thy fortune from a greater mischiese. By Mahomet (replied Bandus) though thy youth and smiling eloquence might in a miske regard then mine, pay thy ransome, yet know, I am so farre at enmity with relenting clemencie, that before the sunne decline an hower lower, thy head shall be twentie score from thy body.

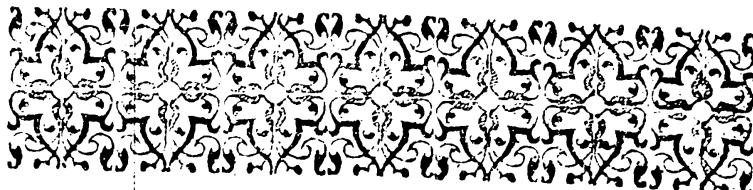
3 But when Gaifer heard him, he sayd, remember king Bandus the famous prisoner & our fellow kings who bide within the christians iurisdictions. In my conceite it were more wisdom to exchange him, then by his death to hazard al their fortunes: & I beseech you, if they will render my brother Goham for him, that you will yeld and be pleased. I am most willing answered Bandus, try your fortune in the afoaire. Then departed Gaifer, and came to the tents of the christians, at such time as our barons were set downe to supper, whom in this maner he saluted. The great god Mahomet preserue king Bandus, and direct his counsels; and that God which you adore, scorne dispatch you from the borders of these countreys. Guion, & you other commaunders of this christian societie, Bandus by me deauands if you will ransome your brother from imprisonment for one of those kings you haue taken, whch I shall nominate. With all my heart (sayd Guion) whose heart for ioy would haue leapt from his bosome, when he heard Florion was not dead: name whom thou wilt, and he shall bee giuen for his ransome. Then deliuuer (said he) Goham my brother. Immediately was Goham fetcht, and his forleit armes deliuered him, and so conducted by Guion, Bertran, Thierrie and Huon, even unto the wals of the citie. And Florion armes stod in the poort where the exchange was solemnly finished;

## the histrie of Meruine.

finished: Gaifer and Goham entring in, and Florion it selfe forth, who bower by the gory of his Sauour, to pay his hoste a round payment for his short entertainment. Then came his brothers who imbraced him, and pomposly brouȝt him to their tents, whre stul remained many pagan prisoners, unto whom Bertran said, that if they woul not remoue their false god Mahomet, and be wilfully baptiz'd, they shoulde al dñe: but they like devils haue denier in their consciencie, refusid. Then said Guion, We shal see vs preserue these kings safelie in prison, vntill the emperor Charles retorne from the holy Ierusalem, who intende to repose a space with our father: so shal the emperour be vixell with our gift, and applaud the horoor of our swordes. It please the excellency, iarde Bertran: so dispatching their prisoners into strong safetie, they went to their self, till earely in the next morning, at what time they valiantly assualted the towne, but with fruitlesse successe: for why the citie was strong y fortifid and peopled, with abundance of all nations, who defendes it (though with losse) to their hie admiration. And in that dootfull manner we will leauue them, and speake of King Mermont, and the euer to be feareid Meruine.



142  
The first part of



C H A P. XXII.

- 1 How King Mermont, Baucaumont, Meruine, and two hundred thousand Pagans arived before Damascus.
- 2 The losse the Christians receiued by the valure of Meruine.



This while was Mermont upon the Seas accompanied with Baucaumont, Antifer, and the puissant Meruine, but not with the good Knight Sir Drohes, for when hee knew the expedition was made against the Christians, he refused the Kings colours, and staid with the Angell of women, diuine Berea, who was richer in nothing than in the riches of his company: so prosperous were the windes to their sailing, that within a very shert space, they attainted to the sight of Damascus, where they landed about two leagues from the citie.

Now the Historie reposeth, that there was a certaine espiell, who beholding their landing, ranne to the tents of the Generall, and cried out, My lords, why haue you neglected to defend yonder hate-nourishing hauen, where even now there is landed so many Pagans, as it is impossible

143  
the historie of Meruine.

possible to number. Bertran more angry to feare, then heare his words, said Anault villaine, thunder thy threats in the eates of dead men, we feare no Pagans a pinn. Sir, said the spie, believe me for certaine, I haue scene an hundred thousand or more. When the rest heard, and saw his constancie, they said, let vs armes our selues, prouidence auoideth had-I-wist. When they were all armed, Guion calleth Bertran and Thierry, and said, I pray you stay behinde with ffe thousand soldiars, to this end, that if they of the citie issue vpon vs, you may preuent them from inclosing vs behinde: to this they were agreed. So Guion and the rest went against the Pagans, who beganne to approach a little before the euening. The rigt renowned Meruine marched before the rest, and with him onely Croisant, and Iacob, whose conference was the praysing of Drohes, in that he had refused to beare armes against his owne religion, to which praise Meruine lent double commendacions, affirming him as well worthy the title of a King, as the honour of knighthode. All the while that they were in praysing Drohes, Mermont was encouraging his soldiars, saying: Now was the time for them or never, to raise on high their god Mahomet. In these discourses they did march alongest a riuier, which led them to a broade and spacious field, where the Christians were ready to charge them.

2 Amongest whom, Huon with his launce in his rest, discharged himselfe against Meruine, vpon whom he broke his staffe with such fury, that the more Meruine was astonished, the more he highly esteemed him, that lent him the cause of armement, yet not accustomed or willing to die in any debt to so good a creditor, he assailed Huon so valiantly, that hee bare him from the crupper of his horse backe: the shame of which fall, lent sorrow to the soule of

144  
The first part of

Huon, because till that houre, not any, how puissant soever, had power to make him loose his stirrups. When as Meruine had thus dismounted him, he turned to Huon, and deliuering him his horse, said Noble Christian, mount thy selfe againe, for so excellently haue I tasted of thy vertue, that I will not wrong thee to purchase a kingdome. Then vaulted Huon uppe into his saddle, eased with this hope, that a world of Pagans that same day shold pay for the shame which Meruine had done vnto him. Now by this time was Meruine like vnto lightning flouering into the muddes of the armie, and Mermont like him, was amongst the strongest battallions, whom the gentle Florion at the first encounter ouerthrew euен vnto the verie ground, and had in the same moment cut off his head, if he had not bene retened by a strong band of Sarazens, who mounting their Lord againe, flew all vpon the infant, but so gallantly did he defend himselfe, that they all started backe, and the boldest durst not give another onset. Then cried he aloft. Deneurke, and victory, which as soone as Huon heard, like a madde man he ranne into the battell, and the first he encountr'd, was Marquant, whom he so saluted, that his head flew in two pieces: and after him, a second, a third, and a fourth fell dead to the ground before him, so noughtily he sought to reuenge the shame Meruine had giuen him. And in briefe, such was his prowesse that he soone deliuered Florion from the thong of his enemies. Not farre from them was Guion, who had made a great slaughter of the Pagans, for from one at a blow he stakke his eare from his head, and his head from his shoulberg. Then did Baucamont aduance himselfe, who had but one arme, in which he held a strong launce, wherewithall hee was inflamed to assaile Guion, but he failed of his intent, though Guion failed not at all of his purpose, for with his sword, as he passed by, he stukke that arme also from his shoulberg,

145  
the historie of Meruine.

shoulberg, to the ferroure of the beholders, and torment of Baucamont, who hauing neuer an arme left, cryes out: Now am I the most miseraile cafffe raigning vnder the sunne, who am as hatefull to my selfe as fortune: and with that passe through his armie, who sorrowed to beholde his misfortune. When they of the Cittie heard the rumor of this battell they issued out of the towne, but were immediately intercepted by Bertran, Thyerie, and ffe thousand christians, who brauely set vpon them. Bertran, who was most hardy was the first that chargen, and meeting with a noble Sarazin named Moysant, stroke him dead from his horse, after him soone more in the same ranke he after the same sorte serued, and then cried: This day ( traitors ) shalbe Domes day to your generation. At which wordes his brother Thyerie and all the army gaue a most couragous charge, and ouerthrew a thousand Pagans that never rose againe to draw sword in anger. What shal I write more? Bertran his brother, and their souldiors ( though not without great perill ) so behaued themselves against the citizens that if they had bin any more then ffe thousand, the Pagans had never passed to loyne with the great new landed army. But now the day failed, and the night beganne to shut in the sunnes windowes, which was propitious for our christians, because, if the day had endur'd, the valour of Meruin had ouerthrowne their reputation: but now, by reason of the darkenesse, a retraite was sounded: for which Meruine was grieved, and said, they had comured vp claudes to shadewe their flying. But notwithstanding, all parts were content to vse the present benefite. Now Guion and Bertran are returned vnto their tentes hugely iuged, and Bertran said: Brothers and Lords, this night hath the Pagans worst vs, but if I live til the morrowe ( God being mine ayder ) I will attieue such wonders, that the bloud liuery my sword shall put on, shall last longer then their religion. Now the Tables being couered,

# The first part of

couered, the noble company sate downe to supper, wher  
they were honorably serued. After supper, as soone as the  
tables were taken away, and the watch set, the Generals  
went to their rest, til the morning Starre awakened the sun  
from slumber: then rising and arming themselues, they mar-  
talled their army into a warlike proportion, intending to  
assault the pagans, who on the other side were every deale so  
watchfull, and stode ready to behold the signall. Guion the  
virtuous Dane beholding both parties equall preparation,  
fell downe upon his knees, and thus prayed: Thou true  
God of vs and our forefathers, I beseech thee in this battell  
be our guide and our defender: lift high the gloze of thine  
owne name, and bruise the armes of thy professed enemies,  
increase in vs everlasting spirittes of courage, that no scan-  
dalous report of our misfortune, bring our aged fathers  
haires to the graue with disquiet: if otherwise it be thy wil,  
that our death shall this day give an end to our aspirings,  
yet thou Lambe of Redemption, and thou God of Israell,  
boushfafe that our loules may be placed with thy saints in  
Paradice. As soone as he had thus said, beswing his head, he  
kissed the earth 3 times for remembrance of the holy Trinity.



## CHAP. XXIII.

- 1 How the Christians were vanquished by Meruine,
- 2 How Guion, Bertran, Thierrie, Florion and Huon of  
Bordeaux were taken prisoners and carried to Da-  
mascus.

After Guion had ended his Prayer and ceremony,  
he came to his brethren, and saide: Princes, I be-  
seech you in the honour of the holy passion of our  
great God, blot from your thoughts, the remem-  
brances

# the historie of Meruine.

brances of all worldly actions, but let all your understand-  
ings be applied to the exaltation of our true religion, and the  
destruction of these faithlesse miscreants. This said, they  
marched towards their enemies. And the Pagans raged on  
the other side, came proudly against them. But now by this  
time was sp:ung vp in Mermont and the other Pagan  
princes, a mighty enuy against Meruine, as if his glorie  
darkened their praise, and it seemed to them, that without  
his assistance they were able to vanquish the christians wher-  
fore Mermont came unto him and said: Meruine, thou  
art so valiant and ouer daring, to march thus before conti-  
nuallly in the hazard of all chances, I pray thee stay behinde  
with two and twentie thousand, and approach not vntill the  
extremities of our last fortunes call thee, because, in the con-  
fusse our hope, and thy losse will give an assuraunce to their  
conquest. I will ( said Meruine ) do what your Maiestie  
commaunds me; but of my lvs, there is no wisdome in this  
pollicie, for I know by profe that all your mightines is not  
able to reall their p:awes: yet notwithstanding approue  
your imagination, if fortune prove contrary, mine aide shal  
not be far distant, though what you do in my conceite is but  
to gaine that whiche I regard not. I meane this dayes glori,  
and not as you pretend, my safetie. And it was trus he pro-  
phesied, for they enuied he shoulde beare away the prize in ech  
battel, and he but the son of Barbin the marchant. Neith  
gan the allarum to lighten in the eares of ech army: A resolu-  
ted pagan named Turquant was the first that charged, whos  
Bertran separating himselfe, incountered with such violence,  
that his lance making way through both his sides, caried him  
to the ground, his first and last mother: at this the battelles  
isyned, like the outrageous meeting of many confused wa-  
ters. Where the Christians bare themselves most valiantly,  
and in the first shocke ouerthrew a thousand Pagans dead to  
the ground. Bertran, who as yet had not broken his launce,  
metting

## The fift part of

meeting with Marbrom, stroke him to the heart, and brake his lance with the encounter. Then drew he his sword, with which he excellently knew whan to aise, when to be, swo, and when to assaile; and with it did ironers. Guion his brother stakke Acquaint, but not he of Lucerne, but an other, whom at the fift stroke he diuided to the girdle, and then cried, Forward in the name of God, you christienn nations, the day is ours. Thus said Guion, whilist Thyerie, Florion in the middest of the aray, making an admirable slaughter. Now beganne the battell to be strong and fearefull, in which the Pagans dyed innumerably; and the christians increased so higly in their resolutions, that the Sarrazins began, from a litle recorling to betake themselves to a maine flight, in which Baucamont was slaine by Bertran, and Mermont taken priser, and with him divers others of the greatest estimation, who were carried to the tents to accompany Esclamart, that had runne the way of dshonour before them. Ut now beholde the exchange of immortall fortune, our thrice renowned christians, in whom Conquest seemed to be proud, because shée liued, and who turned victors from every battell, shall unluckily bee vanquished and ouerthronne by the hand of their nearest couiane, most absolute Meruine.

You have heard before, how Meruine staid behind with twenty thousand, according to the commandement of Mermont, to whom as soone as a Pagan had declared the mght or erycwe that was besallen them, with a smiling anger he said: As he weng and his Princes imagined to subdue the christians without Mernine, in despight of Meruine, but it is happened otherwise, and themselves are foraken for forslaking Meruine. Well, now shal they know my power, and the wroth of my seruice, for before the evening shall call forth the Powre to apperate in the great Starre-chamber, I

will

## the historie of Meruine.

will revenge them on their enemies, and restoze their liberty. This saide he broached his renowned beast, and with his arm gave a hote charge on the christians, who when they beheld Meruine (thengh not discoraged) yet were they wonderously amazed: and not without god cause, for his men were stedy, and Meruine the best knight that in the wrold then lived, and they both ouer tolde and weary. Which when Bertran sawe, he saide, Courage immortall spritis, and be not dismayed to beholde these Pagans: as I beare faith to my Sauour, they are no more to be esteemed then the withered grasse in a medow or the stalkes of corne in the hand of a shearer. By my life saide Huon, I thinke these we haue slaine haue purchased a new resurrection. Set so (saide Guion) beholde how they be in heapes one vpon another. After this talke they prepared themselves, and incountraed their enemies, whome they assailed with unspeakable resolution, but to too little profit, for their weariness had so much weakened them, that the Pagans slew them most piteously: and Meruine so victoriouly triuumphed where he went, that not any escaped with life, on whiche the weight of his arm descended. He slew Reignier, Guyons young knight, and after him another, and another, and al whos occour was within the reach of his surie. But barons were astonisched to beholde his resolution: and yet moze great incombrances immediately fell upon them: for why, the citizens issued againe, and the rather, at the ureacy of Guyda who besought them to ayde her to take him alue, who had slaine her fathur: to whome Pimon declared that Bertran was he that slew him in the great battell, whome Guyda mightily desirred, and inwardly loued, imagining her selfe happy if shée myght but behold him. The Pagans assoured her her wish, and so sallied out vpon the christians, on whom Meruin had reaignd lamentable misfortunes.

## The first part of

2 Now were the gallants of christendome inclosed on every side, they of the citie behinde them, and Meruine before them, who alone was the planet of their destruction: for why, no force was profe against his magnanimitie. When Florion sawe that he alone held in his hand their de-  
stynes, he prest unto him, and gaue him such a blow, thwart  
the helme, that he closed his eyes from the day light. But Meruine reconering himselfe, payed him backe so heauy  
a requitall, that hee brake the infant from his horse to the  
ground backward, who was no sooner downe, but Sar-  
razens eagerly leapt vpon him: to whome Meruine saide,  
Kill him not (souldours) on your lynes, for he that wounds  
him, woundeth my scule also. Thus was one of the four  
brethren taken, for whome was made piteous lamenta-  
tions.

There was at this instant left of the Christians but ten  
thousand, who with one voyce cryed on God to be their ay-  
der: and Bertran sayd, follow me (my hearts) one God, one  
honour, and one graue: and then like a tempest of thunder  
he cast himselfe into the bosome of his enemies, confounding  
and killing all betweene him and the goale of Honour. Mer-  
uine this while chased the Christians to the gates of deso-  
lation: at the which Guion grew madder thorough anger:  
and setting himselfe against Meruin, gaue him such a blowe,  
that he made him bowe his head to the creast of the great  
mare Mordant. But Meruine vnaccustomed to haue any  
such manner of regratings, stroke Thyerrie (who then had  
thrust himselfe betweene them) so mightis a blowe, that he  
fell to the earth, and was instantally taken prisoner by the  
common soldiours.

After that Meruine had thus ouerthroned Thyerric,  
there came a Pagan unto him, and tolde him, there were  
two Christians yet suruiuing, whom it was impossible to  
take without great effusion, for on whomsoeuer their hands

fall

## the historie of Meruine.

fall, death followeth. And then hee brought Meruine  
where he found Bertran and Huon of Burdeaux, who ha-  
ving ioyned backe to backe, shewed such discipline in armes,  
as might well haue remained a myracle to all ages. When  
Meruine viewed their courageous resolutions, he grew in-  
soured with their vertues: yet for all that, with Entrant  
his god sword he stakke so manfully at Bertran, that albeit  
he never bended but to heaven, yet now he was forced to  
bow one of his knes to the earth. Then leauing him, he  
charged Huon, who seeing the blow, by recoiling backward,  
esaped the violence: but the Pagans came swarming so fast  
behinde him, that he was able no longer to defend him-  
selfe against Meruine. Now were all the noble christians  
taken, except Guion, who alone with five hundred, did de-  
fend himselfe, and they were all that suruived. Like a wilde  
boare against a tree inuited with a kennell of hungry  
dogges, so stode Guion defending his life, and teaching  
his followers how to die bravely. But in a trice Meruine  
put those fiftie to the swordes, and tooke Guion prisoner,  
whom he deliuered to the Pagans, whome he charged w-  
th their allegiance, and his displeasure, to vse those vertu-  
ous prisoners honourably.

When this was done, he went vnto their tents, where  
hee founde King Mermont, and some of his consortes:  
also King Esclamart and sundrie other Pagans. When  
Meruine beheld them, hee sayd: Kinges and Princes,  
what make you heere? I imagined you had ouerthroned  
the Christian army, but I see it is otherwise. Ah Meruine  
(sayd Mermont) euен for thy countries sake, and the ho-  
nor of Mahomet, deliuer vs from this thraldom. Thou  
art onely wise, onely valiant, and onely most fortunate.  
Mermont (sayd Meruine) thy freedome is already paid  
for, and then cutting their bandes in sundre, made them  
free from their afflictions. This done, Meruine commanded

the

## 152 The first part of

the tentes to be ransacked, and all the wealth thereof whiche  
was exceeding much, to be brought into the city. Then when  
it was performed, and they returned into the pallace in Da-  
mascus, Meruine commaunded all the prisoners whom he  
had taken to be brought before him, and the other Pagan  
princes : whiche being accoordingly effected, Guyda looke vp  
on Bertran with a burning eye of desire, and an amorous a-  
mazement, saying to Mermont, can your Maistrie possibly  
behold a semblance that more exquisitely resembleth the gal-  
lant features of our most famious Meruine then this christi-  
an, if his lineaments were as bigge and as largely shapede?  
It is most true Madam (saide Bandus) and the more I be-  
holde him, the more I beholde him in hym : Now Prince, (replied  
Meruine) is there in every place one like me? Where-  
tofore you said I did resemble Duke Oger, and am I now  
become like this christiane? what, is hee also of Ogers line?  
Then turning to Bertran, he saide: Christian, I beseech  
thee without dissembling tell me the name of thy father, and  
the descent of thy pedigree. Pagan, said Bertran, we whom  
you behold are the fourre brethen that haue tormented Pa-  
ganisme, and yet hope to be the last end of their destruction,  
Gautier of Denmarke is our father, who warne his crowne  
with his sworde: and Oger whom you so renoirne, and  
whom Enye her selfe dotes not but extoll, is brother to Gui-  
on our grandfather, who now ruleth Ierusalem: It is most  
true, said a Pagan standing by, Guion king of Ierusalem  
is brother to Oger, whom I beheld in excellent combate to  
kill Bruhier before the walles of Laon, and his brother Iu-  
stament before Accre so fierce and valiant is the descent of  
their pedigree. By Mahomet ( said Meruine ) sith I re-  
semble Oger, I would I were also of his issue: and so hee  
was, though mischiefe and evill. kept it from his know-  
ledge: but the tyme commeth, in which he shall know him-  
selfe and his of syng. Thus (as you haue heard) question-  
ned

## 153 the historie of Meruine.

ned the Pagans with Bertran, who most stoutly made re-  
plies. Then Mermont rising vp saide to Bertran: All thy  
lineage hath bee the scourge and ruine of our religion: and  
I am too well assured, that nothing but your deaths can give  
peace to our quiet: wherefore ( Meruine ) it is most neces-  
sarie they die, to excuse our further trouble. Not so my  
Lord ( aunswere Meruine againe ) wee will not wedde  
Tyrany and Conquest together: besides, I vowed in my  
selfe, not to doe them indigntie, till I haue taken, as them,  
their father Gautier prisoner: which done, I will in a roiall  
navy crosse the seas, & lay siege to the flourishing citie of Pa-  
ris, and giue battel to the emperor Charles that is surnamed  
Great: and by the aid of Mahomet I doubt not to bring  
all France to my subiectiōn. When Meruine had thus said,  
he commanded the fourre brethen and all the other christiān  
prisoners to be strongly imp̄isoned in an imp̄regnable tow-  
er, where Bertran consumed his tyme in lamentation for his  
royall father and mother. It hapned that Guyda, & Goham  
the brother of Gaisier, being one day vnder the turre, they  
heard the complaints of the haplesse Christians. Sir (saide  
Guyda) what is he that now speaketh, know you his voice?  
Madam (saide Goham) it is the mightiest of the 4 brethen,  
and the most absolute knight in the world next Meruine, &  
his name (as I take it) is Bertran, whose lineage is as great  
as his minde, both incomprehensible. After these speeches  
they departed: but from Guyda never departed the remem-  
braunce of those speeches: wherefore as he went, she said to  
her selfe that Bertran from her leue should finde an invinc-  
ible army to release him, and that her desires should atend on  
him whilst her heart entertained a sympathy of his afflic-  
tions. Now were they returned to the pallace, where all the  
Pagan princes were set, who both honoured, and scared  
Meruine greatly, because, when he was angry, he spared  
no creature, of what estate soever, but dealt his almes alike

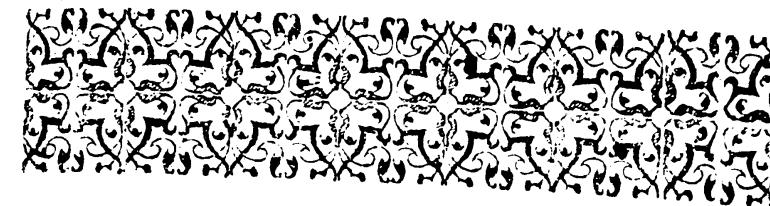
154  
The first part of

to all that maligne him. When supper was ended, Meruine commanaded that all the slaine Pagans shoule haue sounder-like buriall: which being done, amongst the dead was found king Baucamont, whom Meruine interred royally, offering in his obsequies, honorable lamentations. As soone as the next day appeared aboue the mountaines, Meruine commanaded all his army to be mustred, for he would instantly march towards Babylon. Wherefore calling king Bandus vnto him, he gaue him the charge and gouernement of that citie of Damascus, swearing him to his allegiance, and with carefull respect to nourish and gaure the honourable christian prisoners, and also with all the reverent obseruances appertaining to so great a Maiestie, to adore and renowne the excellente princesse Guida. When every ceremony of his charge was ended, he, king Mermont, and a thousand Pagans tooke shippynge for Babylon, where we will leaue them, and a whyle discourse of other matters.

¶



155  
the historie of Meruine.



CHAP. XXIII.

How Charlemaine departing from France to see the holy sepulchre, arriued at Babylon, and was royally receiued of King Gaultier. 2 Of the Embaissage two Pagans brought from Meruine and Gaudisse. 3 A Councill holden by the Christians, who demanded day of king Karabeu, of Florion, of Mesque, and of his father Maysane, at their comming to Babylon.



He Historie reporteth, that in this time the most famous Emperoz Charlemaine would needes goe to Jerusalem, to adore the holy sepulchre, and to that end demaunded of duke Naymes if he would accompany him in the voyage, who most willingly agreed, aduising his Maiestie withall, that it were god to take with him also the reverent archbishop Turpin, who had a longing desire to the iorney, the twelue Pères, and five thousand resolved souldiers, to the end, that if in that expedition they wer: incountred with any Pagan princes, they might yet be able to defend themselves from mischiese. By counsell pleaseþ me (sayde Charles) yet I can assure theþ we may unresisted passe euē unto Samaria and Damascus, for that the rule of the Christians runneth euē unto their citie walls. To be briefe in my Discourse, after Charlemaine had gathered his traine together, hee betooke him to the seas, where the gentle windes lent him so prosperous breath, that in few dayes hee

## The first part of

arrived at a Cape called the Arme of Saint George, where they landed, and thence marched to Babylon, whither they ranne a little before dinner, where they found Gautier the nephew of Oger, and with him Claretta his quene, who had no vnderstanding of Charlemaines approach till they beheld him in their pallace. The joy at their first meeting was unspeakable, and their entertainment so royall as made al alia wonder. After many ceremoniall obseruances, and some repore taken, Charlemaine asked Gautier for his soure warthly soures, whom al the wold made so famous for their chualte. He replied, that they were even then before the wals of Damascus with a puissant host, where they had taken Goham and diuers other Kings and prisoners, and giuen the Pagans a mightie ouerthow, as he was certifid by letters not long since received from their tents, and many other discourses they had, which I omit.

2. Anone, as the two Kings, Duke Naymes, and the twelve peers were devising of sundry recreations, there entered into the hall, in powd and maiesticall manner, two Pagans, the one had to name Iuorin Montbrant, the other Malegrap. And when they came in before Gautier, without reverence, the first thus spake: Gautier of Denmarke, first understand, that we are sent to the from the puissant king Mermont, from Gaudisse his royall admirall, from king Manuel, from Goham king of Egypt, and from five other mightie kings: lastly, though deseruing a title before al other for the unvanquishable wonder of knighthood, from a bassall of king Mermonts named Meruine, who hath vowed to make all christendome acknowledge no god but Mahomet: and to that end, by the exquisite perfection of his magnanimitie, he hath taken thy soure sonnes prisoners, and slaine all their host, except themselues and thirtie others, who with them are detained at Damas, whom againe thou

shalt

## the historie of Meruine.

Shalt never behold, but with sorroio. Now these royall Pagan kings, and chiefly Mermont, by vs commaundeth that pilgrim-like thou appeare before them at Montbrant, (where they are landed) and on thy knees humbly implore their fauours, so shalt thou purchase thy selfe grace, and know their pleasures: if otherwise thou resst, with sworde and sice they will instantly besiege thy cittie. When Gaultier had heard this thundre of a dismal oracle, his heart trembled in the armes of griefe and displeasure: at last, though it were long ere woes could find way from amazement, he said: How can this be true which thou reportest, when thou saist, my sonnes are detained prisoners? Gaultier (replied the Pagan) it is most true: then leue to wonder, and give answere to mine embassage.

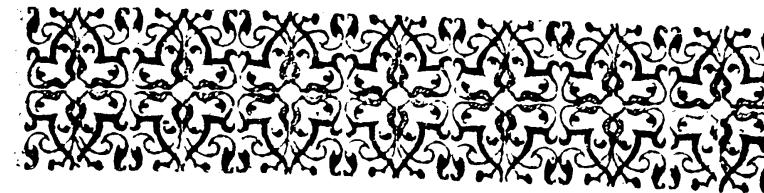
3. At this, for a space they dismiss the Pagans whilste the christians betooke themselves to counsell, where Gaultier demanded what course was to be taken in these times of extremite. Great princes (said Duke Naymes) this is my opinion: to the embassadours should no indignite be offred, both because they are but the tonges of others hearts, and also because our barons whom they detaine, are subiect to the like vengeance, wherefore let vs demand aide of the Christian King Karaheu of Iuda, and of the king Moysant, and his sonne Florion, intreating them, to whose religion and land it as nearely concerreth, speedily to repaire with their forces, and maintaine the Temples of our God, and our owne liberties. To this counsell every one concluded. Then sending for the Pagans againe, thus Gaultier made them answere: Pagans, returne to your Lordes at your pleasure, and say to Mermont and the others, that I am heartily sorry for the thraldom of my sonnes yet can I not alter their fortunes: as for their iruasion, if they come to exile me, my sworde shall defend mee, whilste there is eyther

## The firt part of

native honour in me, or till the gloriose God of my creation for sake me. Say he saide thus, who will doe thuse With this answere the Pagans departed, and Gaultier dispatched Letters to King Karaheu: and the Emperour Charles and Gaultier himselfe went to Ierusalem, wher they found the god king Moysant, who entertained them with royaltie beyond expectation. To him Gaultier recounted his sonnes misfortunes, and the threats of his own ouer-throwe, to whome Moysant promised all the aide and succours of his kinde groome. Then went they to the holy sepulchre, where they offered vp their bowes, gifts, and protestations, and then with all spedde returned backe to Babylon, where they found Claretta the Quene in great perplexitie of sorrow for the losse of her sonnes. The same daie arrived king Karaheu with seuentene thousand knyghts of estimation, all which were gallantly receiued. The next morning came Flotion of Mesque with ffe thousand, and his father Moysant with as many: olde Guyon of Denmarke, the brother of Oger, and the father of Gaultier was not yet dead, he brought with him foure thousand: so there was in Babylon of strange nations threescore thousand besides ffe thousand which the Emperour Charles brought with him. All which received an othe before the throne of the true God, not to leave Gaultier till the death. Now let vs leaue them a while, and returne we to Iuoram, and Malegrap, the two Embassadours, who returning to Mermont and the other Pagan Kings, declared their answere, the estate of Babylon, the presence of Charlemaine, and the generall resolution of the whole nation. Mermont at the fift, with silence beganne to wonder, til Meruine awaking him saide: What dreame you of (my Lorde) my heart is set on fire with their wozdes. I beseech you for honours sake, let vs march away presently. Whereupon a trumpet was sounded, and they all departed till they came within halle a league

## the historie of Meruine.

league of Babylon, their whole army being three hundred thousand, amongst whom were foure giants, which were the brothers of Bruhier, whom Oger had slaine before the walles of Leon. When the Emperour vnderstode they were come, he said, it would be a mighty indignitie, if they should molest him in the towne, wherefore he woulde needs issue forth, though all the dangers of the world hang on the aduenture.



### C H A P. XX.V.

How Charlemaine and all the christian army sallied out of Babylon. 2 Of the great battell, and how Meruine slew Guyon of Denmarke his unknowne vncle, 3 Also how Charlemaine, Gaultier, and all the twelue Peers were taken prisoners, and their army discomfited.



Now beganne Charle maine, by the summons of the trumpets to gather together of the christian army 60000, and planting them in a soudierly proportion for the sally, rode abowt the troupes with these incouragements: You sinewes of Kings, and upholders of Monarchies, I beseech you this day be almighty in resolution and combat agenst that coward Fear,

## 160 The first part of

if he whisper in your heartes a thought of retiring, imagine now the glorie of heauen (for so it is) is to be gotten by the conquest: and that the height of felicitie, for which from your infancies you haue made endlesse imprecactions, is sent from aboue, and on this day by your valuers to bee achiued: that done, angel-like contend for your perpetuall happynesse, and that crowne of immortall recommendacions, which the God of our forefathers will bestow on every one that raiseth his stucht aboue these misbelouing, infadels. Behold then, (you champions of the highest) howe like hunger-starved beastes they come rauening, and haue alreadie before your faces devoured your owne suppers: wherefore revenge that indignitie, and maintaine the freedome of your Religion. These and manie other speches the Emperour Charles v. sed, to which the people answered with shoutinges and rejoycings. Then might ye haue heard a world of trumpets sound, double so manie drummes, tabors and tamburins: after which they matched against the Pagans, who in like maner came ordered and aranged to the encounter, king Mermont, with Meruine, being two of the formost leaders.

2 When Guion of Denmarke, who was the brother of Oger and father to Gualtier, beheld Meruine, he charged his launce and ranne against him, whom Meruine with the same accompliment regreeted in the encounter: the god old Guion brake his launce, but without hazard to Meruine, who on the contrarie part smote him with such farte, that he ouerthrew him dead to the ground without motion. When Guions band beheld that misfortune, they al at once gailes Meruine seriously: but his defence was gallant, that he flet all who he touched. Now joyned the battel on every side perillous, strong, & graueus against the christians and ciuel, & desperat against the pagans. Mermont, Gaudisse & Brandis that day wounded, for they were at the beginning of the mischiefe.

## 161 the histerie of Meruine.

chiese: but aboue all was Meruine highly feared, for death upon his sword had taken an everlasting lodging: he as he posted, brake their rankes asunder, for not any Christian durst dare to assaile him. On the other side, Charles the great, king of Fraunce, duke Naymes and the twelue peers, did such admirable exploits by their chivaltie, that had it not beeke for the invincible prouesse of Meruine, the Pagans had not stood one houre before them, albeit they were three hundred thousand: so expert and wise in warre-like actions was Charles. All this while the battel encressed: at last Charles encountered with Malegrape, to whom with joyous his excellent sword, he gaue such a blowe that he diuided him to the nauell, and withall cried, Courage Mountioy, Saint Denis. When Iuorin beheld Malegrape, slaine, he thrust himselfe against Charles: but the emperor gaue him such entertainment, as he fel dead to the earth backward: after him, another and another. The duke Naymes imitated themperor as neare as might be, who incountring Gaiier, cut off one of his armes, & Gauier that had but newly saue the death of his father, like a mad man did wonderfull actions: neither was Moyvant nor his son Florion short of praiseworthy commendacions. As for the god king Karahieu, he was in the midde of the battel, where he incountred king Mermont, unto whom he gaue such a blow, that he killed his horse vnder him, and he had then bin taken prisoner, had he not cried Montment, so lowde, that Meruine heare him, who thrusting his mare forward, threw all betweene him and Mermont. No sooner was he saue, but all scouldiers gaue him place, so wel they knew, and were acquainted with him, only king Karahieu stowly withstood him, and stroke so mighty a blow on his target, that in the midde he clene it asunder. Whereat Meruine was much grieved, and in qual gaue him such a blowe with Entrant, that he clane him to the iawes. Thus was king Karahieu

## The first part of

Karaheu (whose like hardly suruued) slaine by Meruine: who afterwarde was by a generall Counsell canoniz'd a S. and called saint Karaheu. Many miracles were done after the battell, which I may not report, but must returne to Meruine, who still conquer'd where he came. Amongest the rest, he slew a kinsman of Charlemaines, for which the emperor being displeased, and seeking revengement, encountered a pagan whom he ouerthrew, and had slaine, but for the rescue of many souliours. Terrible was the battell, both of the one side and the other. Notwithstanding that our Christians were few in number, yet their spirits so oft redoubled, that their hands were bathed in blood continually, Gautier strake still to revenge his fathers death. Meruine to increase his conquest, by hap he incounfreted with theke of Dampmartin, throlving horse and man to heath: and taking him prisoner, bound him with cords. Then came the earle of Labrec to revenge Dampmartin: but the gentle Meruine sone vnhorred him, and tooke him prisoner.

3 At which Mermont rejoyced, because he was the x. prisoner Meruine had taken: so greatly were the christians disoraged by the prowesse of Meruine, as they now began shamefully to flie for their safetie, and sauie twentie thousand that still were resolued, not a man would staine the battell. Whereat Charlemaine sorowed greatly saying, their shames shold not follow him but their owne confusions: which done, desperatly he ran into the midst of the battell, and D. Naimes after him, effecting greater miracles than before. Meruine rode triumphantly, and in the end met with the Counte Villiers, the earle of Flanders, and the ry peers: amongst them began a long fearefull, and a doubtfull battell, but in the end, for all things are subiect to fortune, they were every one taken prisoners: so as of the christians

## 163 the historie of Meruine.

christian hoste remained no moe commanders but the emperor Charles, and duke Naimes, who defended themselves gallantly against their enemies. Meruine seeing Charlemaine, he fell in loue with his vertues, saying: O Mahomet, bow downe thine eies, and behold y. invincible christians: and then moned with one envious loue, and alone, lest envy shold wrong so excellent perfection, cried to the common souldiers, vpon paine of death not to touch them: which commandement they obeyed, for they durst not gainsay. Then Meruine opposing himselfe against them with honorabile speches, the true badges of perfect magnanimitie, he said: Princes, yield your selues, when Fortune can auale to no more conquest, and enrich me with your names because many pagans haue told me the armes you beare do belong to France, and that one of you also is the emperor. Thou sayest true, (said Charles) and know, my name so y dread of any Sarazen was never changed: Charles is my name, Charles that ruleth Rome, France, and all Christendome: and this is duke Naimes, the neareste to me in counsell and affection, therfore stand vpon thy guard, and approach vs not, for here wil we lue, and here will we learn to die. Who first presents himselfe to be our tutor, shal never haue other priest, surgeon, or sepulchre. At this speech a pagan king rusht to duke Naimes, giuing him such a blow as he strake him to the ground: but the duke quickly recovered his feare againe, and mad with that amazement, sent him backe such anquitall, that the Pagan thereof died. And then wers the Emperor: and the Duke assailed on every side freshly: who notwithstanding defended themselves valiantly: insomuch that Meruine pitied them, and stode in doubt whether it were better he shold preuaile, or they perish. At this he descended from his mare, and embraced king Charles, to whom he saide, Thou excellent wonder of knighthod, alas, thy defence is bothelese, & I die, to

# The first part of

to thinke thy fortune shoulde perish: yield to him, whose pi-  
ty thou hast taken prisoner in beholding thy vertue. Charles  
hearing this, and such hono<sup>r</sup> in his enemy, said: Thou glo-  
rious almighty, that for their sinne exiled Adam and Eve  
from paradise, comfort, and counsell me: and with that he  
yielded himselfe to Meruine, only desiring him to ballance  
his hono<sup>r</sup>, not by the foile of his ouerthrow. Sacred empe-  
ror (qd Meruine) feare no misfortune, thy thaldome shall  
be but thine owne pleasure: then receiuing his sword, and  
taking off his helmet, deliuered him to a band of the noblest  
Pagans, to whom he gaue so speciaall charge of adoration &  
reuerence, that like a demie-god he was deified. Duke  
Naymes seeing Charlemaine taken, deliuered his sword to  
Meruine. Thus was the emperor Charles, duke Naimes,  
the ry pares, and xxxii<sup>ij</sup> noble ch<sup>r</sup>istians taken prisoners,  
and all bound one to another, except the emperour, who had  
ingaged his toyall word to Meruine, not to depart without  
his licence. This being done, and that there was not  
left a ch<sup>r</sup>istian which was not slain or taken, Meruin went  
instantly, and gaue an assault to Babilon, but the citizens  
knowing it folly to withstand, when their chiefe coman-  
ders were imprisoned, came forth, and deliuered the towne  
to their mercie, bowing their neckes to the yoke of slauerie,  
renouncing the only true God, became misbelieving mis-  
creants. As soone as Mermont was entred into the towne  
he imprisoned Charlemaine and the other Ch<sup>r</sup>istians, in a  
tower, where they were safly garded, as prizes of inesti-  
mable value: but king Charles spent all his time in teares  
and such like lamentations. Alas, thou maiden mother of  
the worlds salutations, ought I alone to be the subiect of all  
misfortunes! must my long admited hono<sup>r</sup> die in so shamful  
a graue of disparagement, and must my rule that stretcht  
beyond Europe & Asia, be her selfe contained in a square of  
this little compasse. If so it must be, it is my unne, & happie

I,

165

# the historie of Meruine.

I, if it alone be chaffised for my transgressions: thus spake  
king Charles, whose bird flourished like a white palme tree.  
Meruine having now a little repasted himselfe, called toge-  
ther the pagan kings and princes, saying: My lords, this  
place we must make no place of repast or banqueting, be-  
cause slaggardise is hatefull to the honour, whereto we co-  
uet to aspire: wherefore prepare your selues presently to  
depart, for I will not rest till I haue taken Mesques and  
Jerusalem, and by roght the whole countries thereabout  
to our subiection, and taught the people to adore no god but  
Mahomet. Lord Meruine, said Mermont, thy will halbe  
our guide, and thy courses shall direct vs: Then sending  
their drummes and trumpets about, and sommoning their  
bands together triumphantly, they departed from Baby-  
lon, and so restlesse continued in their marchings, that they  
shortly appeared before the walles of Mesques, to which  
they laid so fearefull a siege, and gaue such maruelous as-  
aults, as in few dayes they tooke the towne, putting man,  
woman, and child to the sword, except those that willingly  
fell downe and adored Mahomet. Thus Meruine made  
himselfe lord and master of Mesques, for he had a desire to  
rule in that city: yet he woulde needes forward to Jerusa-  
lem. So he made a Pagan his lieutenant to rule  
only in his name: and with the greatest  
pomp that might be, before his depar-  
ture, crowned himselfe king  
of Mesques.



CHAP

# The first part of



## CHAP. XXVI.

1 How Meruine and the Pagan host came before Ierusalem, 2 How the citizens rendred vp the towne. 3 How Meruine refused to enter into the citie, but returnd to Babilon, at which many of the pagans murmed.

**A**fter Mesques was converted to the damnable beliefe of Mahomet, and Meruine had established it for his owne government, he wold not sleep anie excassion, but charged all his armie to be in readinesse, for that soorthwith he wold march to Ierusalem, to make himselfe lord of that mighty towne and the countrey thereto adioening. When Mermont heard him, and saw the desire he had to spread their law through all nations, he said: O Mahomet, how great are thy workes, that from the loines of the pore merchant Barbin, hast raised a gloriouſ branch, to exalt thine honour, and to bring all Christians to subuersion? This spake Mermont in the hearing of Meruine, to whom he did all thy reucrend honours might be deuised: but in soule, both he and all the Pagan princes extremely hated him, because the honoris where, with they shined, were but borrowed from his splendor. And for that their labours could never attaine to a perfite end, yet they durst not but obey him, feare, not loue heing their ruler. All things being now prepared, they departed from Mesques, and marched with ſuch prosperous expedi-

tion,

## 167 the historie of Meruine.

tion, that they came before the noble and ſacred towne, where the Laine of innoſt ill glorie ſuffered his death and paſſion for the worlds redemptiōn.

2 As ſone as Meruine beheld it he practised it, and imdiatly prepared for ſo ſtrong and dreadfull assault: ſo that the pore Christians beholding their imminent danger, held a counſel, and concluded to deliuer vp the keyes of the citie: wherefore comming forth, and caſting themſelues proſtrate before Meruine, they ſaid: Dread Lord of our liues and beinſ, behold, we the chiefe rulers of this haples towne, render our ſelues to thy gratiouſ mercy, deliuering to thee, as to our liege lord, all our poſſeſſions, promiſing to ſerue thee loyally, and to hold thy faith lawe, and religion. Meruine hearing them, replied, Citizens ſtand vp, and be courageous, for your peace is concluded in an happy houre. Allſure your ſelues from the honour of my reputacion, neyther man, weman, nor child of this towne ſhall be daunified: ſo returne in all peace, and be loyall: for not a ſoule ſtrick shall come within your gates, but we will all returne vnto Babilon: then turning to the hoſte, he commanded them to take vp their pauiſhions, and march towards Babilon.

3 At this all the Sarazens were miſchieuouſly agrieued, and with priuate murmuring, railed vpon Meruine, who to their troubles woulde alſo no ending, but notwithstanding, all they ſet forward, and by the teſtifeſe labour of many dayes and nightes, at laſt they arrived at Babylon, where they banqueted and reposed themſelues, the ſpace of fy dayes. After it hapned vpon a day, that Iacob the merchant came to Meruine, and ſaid: How now my lord, how walks lone in your thoughts: what, is he viterly exiled: is there no remnant of memory left to preſerue the perfectiōns of beaſtfull Berea? Ha Iacob (ſaid he) more then thy blunt ſences

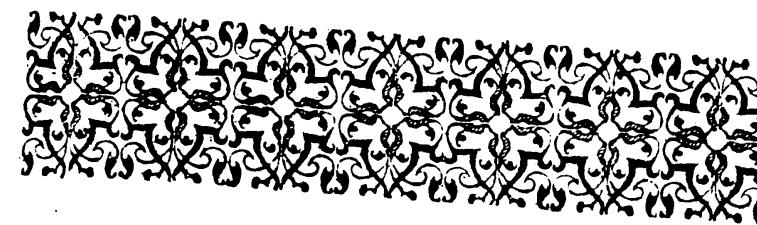
## The first part of

lences are able to measure: but why dost thou now examine me vpon this holy article? For this (said Iacob) that is absented time haue not shut excellencie in doubtfulnesse, then would I haue you, that you may by it binde her loue in a more eternall band of affection. Take Charles, his twelue peers, and the rest of thy prisoners, and as the conquests of thy sword and her beauty, deliuer them to her sacred maiestie, that she may dispose them, vntill they returne from Fraunce, and those other countries, which alredy thou hast subdued, and of which in ensuing time thou shalt be king and ruler. Iacob qd Meruine, thou hast tutored me to my contentment, and thy councel is as an Oracle: for to hir and no other my selfe and my sword is demoted. As they were thus conferring Mermont entred in, who with a lowly, yet kingly adoration, saluted Meruine, and more would haue done, if he knew, to haue done, more for feare he stood in towards him, than for any religiuous affection he bare him: and then said; My lord qd Meruine, it behoues you now to thinke of your expedition into Fraunce, and to dispose of these christians you haue already taken. Haide Meruine, if your Maestie will walke into the great hall, where the rest of the pagan princes are set in counsell, we wil discouer of this affaire. Meruine calling the gaoler, commanded him to fetch the prisoners he had in charge. Instantly the Turk performed his will, and brought forth Charles, the twelue peers, and all the rest of the christian prisoners. As soone as Meruine saw them, he stood vp and said, kings, princes, and barons, My will is, that these Christian prisoners be conueyed to the castle of Turgon, vntill by my prouesse I haue conquered Fraunce, and all the famous countries bordering her territories. How (said Gaudifl) o; wherefore shall they be thither haled? What reason is in so doing? I tell you, their liues are dangerous, death they haue deserued, and death by my wil that they haue. Scarce were his

words

## 169 the historie of Meruine.

words ended, but another pagan rose vp, saying: Meruine attend my words. This many yees haue I traveld my boord, and wasted my reuenues to effect these conquests, and shall I now loose my gnedon? part haue I wonne of these prisoners, my part will I haue, and that part shall part with their liues at this present. And I also, said another pagan, who was both rich in wealth and strong in friends, and his name was Gratian: his reason I haue my part and profit of these prisoners, otherwise princes, let vs ioyne together, and with our swords diuide them.



## CHAP. XXVII.

1 How Meruine would not consent to the death of the christians. 2 The great battell which fell out in the palace. 3 How the christians aided Meruine, and how the pagans came and cried him mercy.



Then Meruin (and not without smart) saw the arrogancie of the pagans, and that per force they would diuide those spoiles among them, which his sword onely had obtained, he was almighty displeased, and with a fierce countenaunce of anger, told them, it shold not be as they had deemed, but that in despight of the proudest in that assembly, he would bear the christians to Montment: and as divines trophies of his afferier, he wuld present the

## The first part of

to his celestiall Lady and misresse, (as Jacob before had giuen him counsell) wherefore (sayd he) if there bee any pagan, of what estate soever, that speaks another woorde of resistance, Entrant my sword shall be so equall a judge twixt him & me, of my vengeance, that the rest shall be warned by his misfortune: and then raising his voix more higher, <sup>that</sup> (said he) will you diuide the things beleng to mee at your pleasure? I sweare by mine homage to Mahomet, the proudest pagā that dares to contradict my wil, or mislikes the intents of mine actions, shal forfeit his head to my sword presently. As he thus spake, B. Gratian rose vp, who had about him a mighty band of sarazens, and sware by Mahomet, he would kill Charlemaine, for he hath bene the scourger & tormenter of our religion. Wherefore (said he) this day wil I take vengeance on his head, and not be withstood by threates, or denied my pleasure by a boy, þ base son of a silly marchāt. At this sword he went to king Charles, and tooke him by the beard, which was whiter then snow, saying: false traiterous king, this day will I hang thee like a thiese, and withal stroke him with a cudgel.

2. Which was so unpleasant to the eyes of Meruine, that drawing Entrant his sword, he stooke king Gratian twixt the necke and the eare, with such violence, that he chined him euen to the girdle: but no sooner was that fatal blow deliuered but the whole armie assailed Meruine with infinite violence: yet miraculously defending himselfe, neuer striking in vaine, so that from euery blow death ensued. There was amongst them another king, & colin to Gratian, who was the greatest setter forward of the sedition: him Meruine overthrew dead to the ground, and then began the battell to increase with huge horour against Meruine, who like a mad man lailed about him here and there, not sparing any.

3. When our chrisitian princes perceiued, that for their safe-

tie

## the historie of Meruine.

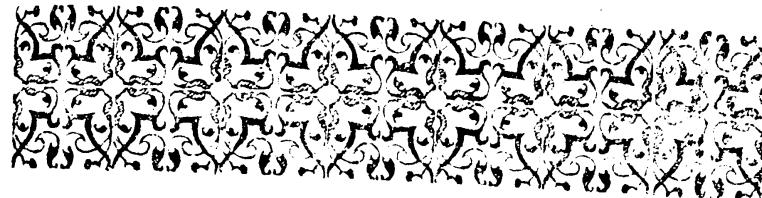
tie Meruine had thrust himselfe into this dāgetous aduerture, they concluded among themselves, either to aide him, or perish in attempting: and the thrusting themselves before him they said, courage prince Meruine, this day we will die for thes, for thou hast bene gracious to our misfortunes, and we will partake thine ex remitie. With that, they thrust them selues agāinst the pagans, with every one a sword in his fist, making a fearefull and bloudie skirmish, from one they cut his head, from another his armes, legs from the thid, and generally, life from the most they encoutered. Charles in this battell behaued himselfe most couragiously, but Meruine more enraged then a long hunted boore, without regard, made slaughter of al before him, and by the ayde of the christians, quickly winnowed the hall of living creatures. Meruine seeing this, sayd to the christians: Lords, beware that by you no treason betide my fortune, for then shal your vnuitenes give shame to your valures. Prince Meruine to Charls, doubt not our trustinelle, who whilst we breath, wil not faille thy fortune, & when thou art conqueror, be iudge of our liues & deaths as please thee. After these speeches they al issued out of the hal, & assailed the pagans on every side, who with feare were so surprised, that they knew not to what fortune to betake the. but cried out: woe alas, Meruine is enraged, he hath forgot Mahomet, & is become a christian. Notwithstanding this Meruine and the christians pursued them, and as the historie saith, slew 64. in a moment, which not a little grieved Mermont, who now could not record any meane how to appease Meruine. At last he called Barbin, and with teares besought him to cōle the fire of his sonnes wrath: & then they two joining together, went, & on their knes cast themselues before him, whilist Mermont said: prince Meruine, for the loue of Mahomet and Barbin thy father, and in ruth of my teares whom sometimes thou hast called thy soueragine, appease thy iust indignation, and I le sweare unto thee by the

# The first part of

hosse of Mahomet to performe thy wil in al things, & if it be  
pleasing to thy sight, henceforth become thy subiect. By Ju-  
piter, said Meruine, thou hast spoken in a happy houre, mine  
father, and rise king of Montment, mine anger shal breake,  
if my wrongs be amended. Then turning to the christians,  
he sayd, Princes, retorne into the hal, for a truce shal be con-  
cluded, & my wil no more neglected. So sooner had he spoken,  
but Charles & his peers, returned into the pallace, and Mer-  
uine with an angry looke sayd to the pagans: Princes, ima-  
gine me not satisfied, though I shew a relenting: for by my  
right hand, my seruants death shall not be dismissed, till the  
proudest of you all, vpon your knes, come & cry me mercy.  
At this, all the pagans cast themselves on their faces before  
him, and with one voyce cried, haue mercy vpon vs invincible  
princes Meruine, and thy will shall be the law to rule vs and  
our nations. Here pitie tooke place in the eyes of Meruine,  
and raising them from the earth, gave to them new peace  
and comfort. Which done, he bade them arme themselves  
to guard those christians to the castle of Turgon, which is  
situate within Montment, where he intended to detaine  
them till his retурne from France & her neighbor countreis,  
where he went to ruinate their abbeys, and burne the mo-  
nasteries of ancient foundation: this done, they ran & killed  
his seruantes in signe of their subiectiōn, glorying that by him  
they and their lawes shold be so highly exalted. Thus tri-  
umphed they with proude hearts, but I fear me within howe  
space they will haue other resolutions: for euē now almoſt  
is the ſacred ſinger of the diall, vpon the hower in which  
Meruine ſhall know, who is his true father, and the  
royall deſcent of his glorious pedigree: a history  
more deſeable to heare, then thone iarring  
tumults already ouer paſſed.

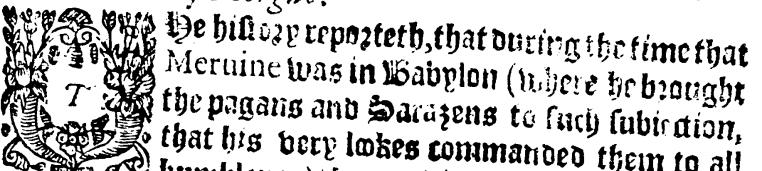
CHAP.

# the historie of Meruine.



## CHAP. XXVIII.

- 1 How Meruine departing from Babylon, brought Charlemaine and the other Christians to the castle of Turgon.
- 2 Of the apparition of the angel to Charles.
- 3 How Meruine knew himſelfe to be the ſonne of Oger, and the fairy Morgue.

 The history reporteth, that during the time that Meruine was in Babylon (where he brought the pagans and Sarazens to ſuch ſubiectiōn, that his very looks commanded them to all humblenes) the good king Charles who many times with zealous admiration beheld Meruine, at laſt imagined him ſo lively to preſent the image of Oger, that he could not chufe, but one day ſayd vnto him prince Meruine, I know not thy deſcent nor generation, but of what or whence ſoever thou art, belike me thou doſt ſo lively reſemble the moſt victuous duke of Denmarke prince Oger, that were but haire diſcovered vpon thy youthfull cheyne, I would haue ſayd, thou hadſt bene no likeli hood, but the ſelfe moſt exceilent creature: for of my ſoule there is not the greatest niſteler paſter in the world that can ſo verely figure his per̄ſon as thine owne lookes: neither diſaine that to him thou art compaired, for that neuer yet in any battell yere there pagan, Turke or Sarazen, that by manhood was able to reſiſt him. This moſt true, ſayd duke Naimes, and the twelue peers alſo.

When Meruine heard the, he ſayd, I know not wel my ſelfe, what my ſelfe am, but many as weſt Sarazens as christians,

## The first part of

who haue scene the duke Oger haue euer compared me vnto him, so that my selfe am in loue with him to whom my selfe am so often compared. After diuers other such like discourses, Meruine comanded the Christians to mount them selues on horsebacke, and then comming to Mermont and Gaudisse, he said, I wil my Lordes that you stay here in Babylon till my returme, whilste I conuey these christians to the castle of Turgon where they shalbe safely imprimisone, and I will leaue the keyes with beautifull Berea, whous vntill my returme I will make their Empresse. Prince Meruine (answering Mermont) be all things as pleaseth the, for willingly we will stay to attend thy pleasure. This spake hee with a seruile humblenesse, rather infred from feare, then issuing from a certayne loue. Thus Meruine and with him 4000. of the best esteemed Pagans tooke their tourney towards Turgon, whither the heauens and all the gracious aspects of wel pax: ending Planets happily guide him, because he shal never returme to Babylon, till he bee made a diuine and religius Christian, rising from the face of the earth both Mahomet and all other false goodes, and onely lifting vp in most hie exaltation the Name of the euer issuing I E S V S. So prosperously they iourneyd that anon they came within the sight of Mowntment, where Meruine calling Iacob, sent him before to aduertise Berea of his approaching: who with an entire zeale personed his comandement. And after he was entred to the tolore, he ascended the Pallais, where he found the only Starre of perfection Berea, whom with low humblenesse he saluted, and reported the comming of Meruine, the bringing of King Charles of France, the twelue Peeres, and diuers others whome his invincible prowesse had made captives before the walles of Babylon. Berea hearing this had al her sences so suddenly ouergone with ioy, that from her amazement issued nothing but great woer. But Drohes who sadly had gauen attention to his discourse, dissolued his harts

blod

## <sup>175</sup> the historie of Meruine.

blod in water from his eyes, and with extremitie of passion thus exclaimd, O thou true God of glory, how spedily shal the ruine of France fall vpon her bosome, with Charles and the twelue peers, the columnes that sustaine her, are broken by Meruine, whose unspeakable magnanimitie nothing hath force to resist! Many other teares of sorrowfull meanings fel from god knight Drohes, who for the loue of Charles fained to pine, with lamenting. Now the day being grovone by many hour s aged, Meruine and his traine entred the city: thence he went to the Palace where Berea most royally garned came down and met him: between them was an incouerter of hie delicacie, their armes locking together their lippes, and from their lippes interchanegably breathing their soules into ech others bosome. Many prettie questions they had of ech others safetie, many oracles of their sortunes and many histories of their loues, the legends wherof lasted, till they were returned into the great hall of the Pallace. Then were the Christians conveyed to the castel of Turgon, and safely imprimisone, all the Peeres being most disconsolate.

2 Onely king Charles from whom no misfortune would take away the title of a roial spirit, and whose faith in the living God was ever unmoveable, cast hirselfe on both his knes to the ground, and with lift vp handes, and erected eyes thns prayed, Glorious God, that for our sinnes, and for our saluation boughsafest thy life by thy death and passion, thou that the thrid day rose againe & ascended into heauen, thou that deliueredst Adam & the Prophets which had attended thy coming also, as this is true, & on it my faith is grounded, so I beseech thee be my deliuerer from these gates of ill chance and bondage. When king Charles had made this short petition in honor of the holy Trinitie, he kist the earth three times. And then as he was in rising there appeared to

yp 4

him.

## The first part of

him an angel of light, who blessed him with this happy salutation: *Hevie king Charles, bee not abashed, for that power which hitherto hath succoured thee will not now refuse thee, to his by me assuris this, to morrow thou shalt be delivereid by Meruine, use is a b. p. 13. 10 Christian, and the sonne of Oger the virtuous Dene: be strong in thy layth and take comfort.* This sayd, the heauynly embassadour vancht from his presence, and the emprouer after thanks, rose upp, and seide to the bilon to the nobles, whc called home joy to thir hearts, and glazied in their aduenture. Meruine this while was in a priuate chamber with Berea and Iacob the merchant: & Gratiana the faire had withdrawen her selfe to behold Drones in another chamber, where he rent his garments, fare his haire, and lamented exceedingly, crying out, that Meruine, in whom vertue was ouely beautifull, would be the bster ouerthow of vertue that had made him beautifull. Ah (sayd he) now shal Truth sleep againe with Oblivion, and Lune shall consume in mourning for his daughter. Ha, Charles, Charles, thine affliction is my torment, and thy disgrace the death of our religion. This sayd, he fell downe to the ground, wrung his haire, and with dumbe sorrow exceded all speakeing lamentation. After Gratiana had beheld his infinite tormentings and with-all entering into consideration, that from Meruine issued this almighty miserie, and she the cause why Meruin made them so miserable, without any wordspeaking, she departed from the chamber, her heare euuen wounded to death with the terror of others mourning, and comming into an arbour wher every morning Berea was accustomed to come, she there continued all night, vsing such strange actions of vnusuall sorrow, that if some divine power had not guarded her woes, she had there dispaired & died. Carely in the moraing according to her wont, gentle Berea, came to the arbour, and beholding (ere she approached) strange signes of distemperature in Gratiana, said

alittle

## the historie of Meruine.

alittle to see the issue, and with that she heard her say, *Thou true God of immortall glory, haue mercy vpon me, whose infinite euill deed is almost run beyond the race of all pitie: and then she swooned, recovered, and freshly lamented. After this Berea came vnto her, and demanded a reason of her passion, to whom she said, *Ha madam, my tormentis be worthy no end, because the ill I haue committid is without measure. And then she recounted vnto her all she had done against Meruine, his birth, her enuy, his sleaing away, her attiuall in these parts, and what besides, whence these ill turnes were succeeded. Alas madam, said she, my sinne is worthy no redemption, nor my sorow any eie of pity: the rather because I haue from him kept euer obscured this whiche you now I haue revealed, neither dare I at all make knowne his fortune, lest he shoule kill me for my treason.* therfore madam let your heauynly tongue beare to him the embalme of his birth and lineage, whilke from hence I fl e into some forlaken desart, where never man or woman shall make behode me or my misfortune.*

3. *She so answereid Berea, sith my loue twirt him and thee shall make a peaceful conclusion if thou wilt stay here and dilate to his elme careis his of-spring. I will madame, said she, and forthwith Berea went whare she found Meruine, about whose necke when she had found her armes, she said, *Sweet loue, I pray thee graunt me one little little petition. What euer it be said he, it is graunted, be it the greatest thing the world containeth.* Then said she, *I beseeche thee be not offendid with any of thy forrepasseid fortunes, neither with the causers of thy destiny chiefly with Gratiana, who wil reape to thee the truth of thy descent and pedigree. Why lady (qd she) should I be offendid for my birth? I know I am the sonne of a merchant, neyther am I ashamed of that lineage, because my cyndrie thaler,**

als

## The first part of

all me higher in the world than the sonne of the greatest  
Sowldan. Walking along with these discourses, anone  
they entred into the arbour where they found Gratiana,  
who repeated such storiess of his fortune, as cost the lives of  
many hundred thousand pagans and Sarazens: such was  
the valure of Meruine, who by his powerfull magnanimitie  
descended even to the gates of hell, and made the duell  
obedient to his sword, as shalbe declared hereafter. Grati-  
ana no sooner saw Meruine, but she fel bypon her knees say-  
ing; Prince Meruine, immortally haue I sinned against  
thee, and the line whence thou art descended, admite not the  
the wonders thou hast attieued: for thou art by birth a  
Christian, and the sonne of the most famous that ever drew  
sword with resolution, euer the sonne of Duke Oger, the  
neuer to be conquered Prince of Denmarke, who begate  
thee in the Fairy land of the roiall borne Fairie Morgue:  
from her I stole thee, hither I brought thee, and here vntil  
now haue I kept in couert thy fortunes: wherefore I con-  
fesse my selfe worthy damnation, sith by me, and by mine  
occasion thou hast ruined both thine owne bloud, and the  
glory of thy fathers religion. When Meruine with great  
attenction had heard her, he gret amazd, & bowing downe  
his head, stood dumbe with admiration. At last, desirous to  
be better satisfied, he said to Berea, How can this be? Be-  
lieue me, I can: et trust this new borne honoꝝ, if it be not  
prooued more evident. Meruine (saide the Fairy, by my  
soule, which sobs with sorrow in my breast, all that I haue  
said is true, thou art the sonne of the most renowned Con-  
querour of the world, who at this instant is in Fairy land  
with the princesse thy mother. Now the great duell (saide  
Meruine) that conueied thee hither, conuey thee to hell for  
the wrongs thou hast done me, making mine hands the  
murderers of mine owne kin, viper-like eating my glorie  
from mine owne friends destruction: live henceforth banis-  
hed

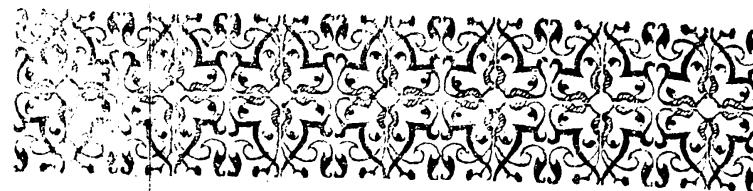
## the historie of Meruine.

shed of sun-shine, and never find company but shame and  
darknes: how wil hath euery one compared me to Oger,  
making my looks aninder to his vertues, Wel, sith I am  
assured of my descent, thankes to the Greatest that hath  
sent me this vnderstanding, whom on mine humble knees  
I pray to pardon the roys of my ignorant evils, and to adde  
to my new spirit a new resolution, that these hands of mine  
may teare downe the cuill I haue eralde. Turning a-  
gaine to Gratiana he said, Thou authoꝝ of my ill fortune,  
tell me, am I baptizid in the Christian Latte, or no? She  
answered him that he was, king Orient, and king Arius,  
and the gloriouſ Meruine, from whom his name was de-  
rived, being the witness to the sacrament. Meruine ha-  
ving weightily pondered on all the speaches of Gratiana,  
his displeasure grete mightily impatient, and he said, Ma-  
licious, auant my sight, and neuer henceforth dare more to  
behold me: for were it not my loue and oath bindes me to  
this goddesse of my seruice, instantly would I execute on  
thee an infinite vengeance. At this angry discharge Grati-  
ana departed with dying sorrow, from the presence of  
Meruine, and as he hasty reporteth fled to a wast and un-  
frequented wildernes which bordereth vpon Damatam,  
where she remained, and where we wil leaue her till som  
better occurrent reuoke her, and we will proceade with re-  
solued Meruine, who espoused Berea, on whom he begat  
Orient the father of Helias that begate Idain that bore  
Godfrey of Bullen, as it is witten in the holiꝝ

Legend of the same Godfrey.

(\*)

CHAP.



CHAP. XXIX.

- 1 How *Drohes* instructed *Meruine* in religion.
- 2 How *Meruine* deliuerd *Charlemaine*, and the twelue peers.
- 3 How *Berea* was baptized with the rest of the citie, and was named *Mathaburna*, & other accidents.



¶ mortally valiant *Meruine*, when (as you haue heard) he was assured of his genealogy, which bred in him no little comfort, and the rather, because he was a Christian, and the sonne of so famous a champion, yet he not a little grieved, that by him the Christians were surprised and brought to so streight a doze of misfortune, wherefore his sorrow strangely increased, which *Berea* seeing, she grew troubled, seeking (albeit in vaine) many wayes to recomfort him: which seeing they availe not, she went to *Drohes*, and discoursed all that had chaunced, a lively couiall that inspired with an inexpressible gladnes, so as without any tartance, he went with her to the arbour where *Meruine* lay prostrate on the ground, beating him selfe with extreme languor. *Drohes* beholding the furie of his passion, though at first amazed, yet ran to him, & with true zeale of other-living intimacie, thus tindely chid him: Ha, qd he, thou glorie of mankind, and flower of chivaltie, whither is the virtue of thy resolution fled, that thou lendest conquest to a weeping passion: What, wilt thou in teares dwyne thy body, & consume thy soule: Arise, arise, thou excellent

181  
the historie of *Meruine*.

cellentest of all creatures, and with a lively faith in the living God of Abraham, aske pardon for thy sinnes, and the lambe of peace that redemeed the world, wil wipe out thy transgressions, sith vnder the face of heauen, there is not so boundlesse an offender, as God in his mercy is an almighty pardoner. When *Meruine* had heard *Drohes*, he rose vp, & kissing his hand sayd: thou balm of mine afflictions, & health to my sickle soule, O pardon me I beseech thee, the unlucky slaughter which on the sea I committed where I slew *Galien* thy deere companion, the famous sonne of renommed *Oliver*, & the other christians, otherwise I wil sauest that hand which saueld them in duty I should haue adored. Thrice deare frie (replied *Drohes*) my inward soule hath forgiuen the, and then *Drohes* sat downe and expounded to him many places of holy scripture, & instructed him in all the points of christian religion, he declared how our saviour had a divine resolute in the sacred womb of the virgin Mary, and how from thence hee was deliuered, shes being both a mother and a mayd. Then how at the age of three and thirtie yeres he suffered death and passion to deliuer mankind from the gates of hell and destruction: and the third day arising from the graue, mounted into the dozes of the highest heauen, from whence hee sent downe the holy spirite to inspire and recomfort his apostles. To be briefe, there was no point appertaining to salvation, which *Drohes* did not explane with most heauenly eloquence. *Berea* that sat by, as soone as she had heard discouered the mysteries & comforts of our religion, with a constant and maiesticall modestie, rose vp and sayd: beare witness to these princes, that here I renounce *Mahomet*, *Tauergant*, and their Alcheron, and desire to be baptiz'd, and imbriz'd for a perfite christian. At this they all clapt their hands for ioy, & kissed the skirts of her cloathing in token of reurence.

¶ Then sayd *Meruine*, who through *Drohes* instruct-

## 182 The first part of

ons was both resolued and comforted, let vs waste no more time but go and deliuer Charles the emperor. Forthwith they went, and comming into the castle, they found all our Barons heauy and sadde : but the emperor recomforting them with kingly resolutions. Meruine no sooner came in his sight, but falling vpon his knees, he said, Royall king of Fraunce, and all you right noble knights of Christendom, pardon me I beseech you, both mine errour and mine offences, to you I will be a liege man and a subiect : to these a never failing sciend, in the hardest aduentures, whom in signe of euer liuing amitie, I deslice to kisse. Then arose he vp and kissed both the emperor and the rest, and after he declared how hee was a Christian borne, and the sonne of Oger the Duke of De:marke. Many other discourses they had, and infinite reioycings, cryng, the sonne of Oger is become a Christian, woe to the Pagans and their false god Mahomet. Then issued Charles and the rest out of the Castle, protesting solemnely the sacke of paganism: By my redæmer, said Charles, I will not rest, till I see the Sarazens tremble vnder Ioyous my god sword. As I am prouid of my birth and progenie (said Meruine) there is not liuing a pagan, how redoubtēd soever, but if he refuse baptisme, he shall also refuse his life and being. This said, they went into a chamber and armēd themselves. Meruine caused a cornet to be winded, at the sound whereof, the 4000. Pagans Meruine had brought with him, assembled themselves in the base court of the pallace: vnto whom Meruine made this brieue speach. Fellow soldiers, admire not my speach, but be ready in your resolucis: By will is, that every one of you be baptized, & become a Christian, and he that refuseth, to die the death: chuse either eternall life or destruction. The wonder was not little, that these wordes cast amoungst them, yet what through fere of his prouesse, and terror to behold the christians at euerie

point

183

## the historie of Meruine.

point armēd: they agreed to obey him, both in the course of life and religion. Meruine commended them, and forthwith gaue them charge to range through the citie, and to put all to the sword, that refused to receive baptisme. The christian peires of Fraunce were their soze-leaders, that spared neither man, woman nor child, that would not be baptized, so that in lesse than in an houres space, all Montement was wholy conuerted. These things ended, Charles called Meruine vnto him, and asked if he would accept at his hands the hono: of knighthood. My lord qd he, it is the onely thing to whiche my thoughts haue a longing: then kneeling downe, Charles drew Ioyous his sword, and laying it on his shoulder, bade him rise vp the most renoumed knight vnder the firmament: only be thou stedfast in thy faith, and raise high thy god and religion. Thou earthly god of Europe (said Meruine) in the maiestie of heauen, and before thy royall presence, I make a bow, there shall not a pagan moue his stoe vpon the earth, if he renounce not Mahomet, and put his trust in the living God. And what he vowed, he effectēd: for his conquests against the pagans doubled his ouerthowres against the Christians, as ye shall heare hereafter. Now had the emperor Charles, Meruine, and the peires of Fraunce, so well managed euery occurrent, that the whole citie of Montement was now wholy in their subiectiōn.

3 Then was there a vessell filled with water, which the Archbishop of Rheines hauing biste: a l they of the citie were baptizēd therein, and the four thousand. But before all, and above all, the most virtuous: prynesse Berca was baptizēd, not by her auncient name, but by the name of Mathaburna. And when all the ceremoniēs belonging to that most blessed sacrament was finished, Meruine with King Charlemaine & his peires, made a progresse through the

# The first part of

the realme, conuerting all to ch<sup>r</sup>istianitie, for not any durst  
gains<sup>t</sup>ad Meruin whose valure in those parts was almighty,  
tilly adoz<sup>t</sup>, so as euen to the wals of Brandis, was not left a  
breathing yagan. After this Meruin returned again to M<sup>er</sup>-  
tinent, where he was godlike received of Mathaburna, who  
amongst other of their priuate conferences, demanded when  
he woulde espouse her, who returned this answer: Lady god-  
desse, and ruler of my thoughts and wishes, I haue made a  
solemne oath in the high parlement of heaven, not to mar-  
ry any creature, till I haue reconquered backe all that I  
haue spoiled from the christians, & haue set at absolute liber-  
tie againe, the soure famous brethren and sonnes to the  
god king Gaultier. My lord (replied she) be all thy decrees  
as immoueable as desteny, and I will attend the effects of  
thy extremist destre. Thus wil we leaue them, king Charle-  
maine and the christians, & returns to Bertran, Guion,  
Thierrie, and Florion, Gaultiers 4. sonnes, who as you  
remember, were prisoners at Damascus.



## CHAP. XXX.

1 How by meanes of Guida the daughter of Baucamont,  
Bertran and his brothers escaped imprisonment. 2 How  
king Bandus daungerously assailed them, and how they  
maruelously defended themselves.



¶ Du haue heard in the booke before, how the  
soure gallant sonnes of Gaultier were by  
Meruine, taken and impsoned in Da-  
mascus: now further in the same discourse  
he saith, that Baucamont had one faire  
daughter

185

## the historie of Meruine.

daughter named Guyda, who with a most perfise affection  
was inamoured vpon Bertran, and for his sake often did re-  
paire to the prison, to doe them honoure and seruice, making  
the dayes of their indurance like the houres of a happy festi-  
val, insouich that on a tyme, as the brothers were in confu-  
sation, they had one to another, that if they were but well  
armed, they woulde sone haue the castell at their comman-  
dement, and doubted not, but the God of heauen woulde so  
protect them, that themselves woulde make them selues lordes  
of their owne libertie, and in this they fownd no impossibili-  
tie, sith the Princeesse Guyda swelled on them with god for-  
tune. My lordes ( said Huon of Burdeaux ) I will tell you  
what my soule thinkes: had I but halfe the lorde sickle  
thoughts hanging vpon me, which I know that Princeesse  
powreth into the cosome of Bertran, or woulde she, but as  
privately conuerse with me, as I know she secretly weepeth  
her loue to him, I woulde in one naturall day deliuer both my  
selfe and my companions, yet without impeachment of my  
loue, or touch to her honour. Scarce was his last word ended  
but Guyda entred into the chamber, who with a modest  
gravity (the cloud of an impatient loue) saluted them, and de-  
maunded of their welfare. Madam ( said Bertran ) my health  
is in the hand of thy mercy: and but thou giue end to my  
sickenesse, there is no creature can preserue me from a sodaine  
dying. When she heard these spaches, with a frosty blushe  
of a little wonder, she answered, Prince, repose a while,  
and immediately you shall know, if helpe ha in my power.  
Then she went forth and called the Gaoler vnto her, whose  
name was Corbun, and intreated him to bring vnto her in-  
to an other chamber the Prince Bertran, who was a little  
sickle, that she might giue physicke to his euill. The not mis-  
trusting Gaoler, with lowe bowed reverence, tolde her, he  
would performe her pleasure, and forthwith called Bertran,  
telling him he must goe to the Princeesse Guyda, who at-  
tended

## The first part of

tended for him. The verie ioy of those wordes made him leape and caper through the chamber, whilist Huon with like shew of iollitie followed him. Then saide Bertran, Huon stay here a little till I call the: Agrees said Huon: Then went Bertran to Guyda, and intreated that his friend Huon might participate of his phisicke, for he is not wel al- so. Prince Bertran (said the Lady) with all my heart, so he be secret, for feare of daunger. Feare not excellent Madam (said he) for Huon is most loiall, most constant, and most religiouse. Then shee commaunded Corbun to bring Huon vnto her. Madam, said Corbun, I dare not, lest I bring the life of king Bandus in question. Your Ladyship is too bold in these rash aduentures, and nurse mischiefe in gracing these christians, I fear some evill wil succeed this hazard: wherefore if Bertran returne not instantly, I will reueale his being to the king and your kindred. Lady and my deere loue (saide Bertran) if not he, then I will perforne thy pleasure: and in so saying, he drewe nere to Corbun: to whom with his fist he gave so mortall a blow, that he fell dead to the earth, without anie word speaking. When Guyda saw what he had done, she tare her haire, and sorrowed without measure: but Bertran embrasing her in his armes, whispered such reconcilement into her eares, that hee appeased her passion: and they slumbered in divine contentment, either from oþher taking the delight of long wishing heartes, and most deere was their delightes to all Christendome: for in that houre he begat on her a sonne, whose name was called Barrant, who was father of Dolifern. Was there never creature more crueli or tyrannicall: for that he slew both his father and his mother, and brought vpon Christendome lamentable fortunes, as you shall see hereafter. But to returne againe to Bertran: who alone as he had accomplished his will vpon Guyda, hee returned to his brethren and saide: Princes, nowe followe mee, if you will reuenge your selues

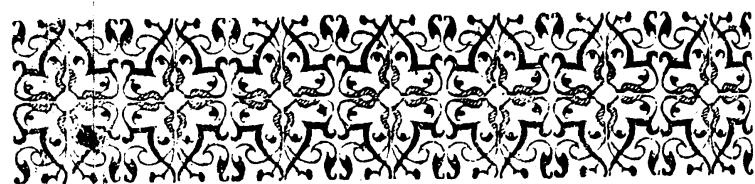
## the historie of Meruine.

as well vpon the Pagans, as I haue done vpon him who in these walles hath reþtained vs. At this they all prested to follow him: to whom Guyda said, Ay me Loores, what madnesse is in your thought: alas what will you do, but ouerthow you selues, and my glori? Madam (said Huon) content your selfe, I know Prince Bertran so exceedingly loueth you, that no fortune can dñeze him from you, so you will renounce Mahomet, and become a Ch:stian. Lord Huon (said she) there is nothing I moze desire: but it is past my capacite, how our happynesse shalbe continued. Madam (said Huon) I haue found out the meane: let vs but haue armour and weapons prouided vs, and there is not a Pagan living that shall dare to denie vs passage at our pleasure. As I am true to my Lord and ouer (said she) that shalbe effected, and then she brought them into the castle armorie, where was warre-like prouision. So they arm'd themselues, and desired Guyda to conduct them into the bed-chamber of king Bandus: to which she consented. But a certayne vassall Pagan ouer-hearing them, without tarryng ranne to the kings chamber, who then was a sleepe, and beating at the doore, cried: My Lord the king, treason, treason: and thy death, if spedily thou doest not abandon thy chamber, the christians are in armes, who fly with wings of malice to wokē thy destruction.

2 King Bandus hearing this rauen-song, rose vp, and calling his Nephew, said: we are betrayed, let vs fly for our succour. At this they ran forth of the chamber, and came into a garden, where finding a little turrett, they mounted into it, & thencecried, to armes: and raised a mighty alarm, their voices sounded through all the pallaces. The christians entred into the kings chamber, but could not find him. Then went they from chamber to chamber, and slew the Pagans, with whom they encouerted: in brieue they slew in their serch

## The first part of

above an hundred persons, and then helde the castell at their owne disposing. After this they descended to the gates, and thence sallyng forth they were incountred with king Bandus, who with many bands of approued souldiers, gaue them a couragious onset, betwene whom beganne a sharp, fearefull and bloody battell: but the multitude of the pagans so infinitely increased, that the christians were inforsed to retarie backe into the castell, which in despight of the pagans they did: then fortifying their gates they ascended vp, on the malles to defend them, if they shold be assaulted, which indeede was done most valiantly on every part, but the christians defences were so sharpe and dreadfull, that the pagans preuailed not at all in theyr fury: Now God of his mercy be their defender, for their quarrell is iust and lawfull.



### CHAP. XX XI.

How *Meruine* after the conquest of many citties went to *Damascus* to deliuer the foure brethren. 2 How *Charlemaigne* refusid *Meruines* company, because of *Huon*. 3 Of the great battell betwixt *Bandus* and the christians.



Done after that, Mermont, and the whole realme about it was by *Meruine* converted to christian religion: king Charles, the twelve peers, together with *Meruine*, made their expedition into the other countries bordering therea-

## the historie of *Meruine*.

thereabout, where they conquered more then seuer hundred cities and castles, bringing all to the knowledge of Christ Jesus. Which doun, they tooke shippynge to make to *Damascus*, and *Meruine* saide. Flie swiftly you labouring houres of the day, and bring me with double sped to *Damascus*, that I may both confesse my errore, and deliuer from bondage my thrice excellent kinmen, the foure famous brethren, and that renowned *Huon* of *Burdeaux* so pærele in his actes of chivalry.

2 No sooner had *Charlemaigne* heard him name *Huon*, but a mountaine of distemperature sent an ocean of angry blood into his face. And he said who, is then that monstrosus traitor *Huon*, the ffe murtherer of my deare sonne *Charlot* in *Damascus* too? even by my crowne, and soule of my deceased fathur, I will bathe *Popous* my swerd in his heire blood. Brother ( said *Gautier* ) then will the world alde a villainous title to thy glory, because thy selfe breakest the coenant thy selfe made. You haue banished him your realme, and thence he is departed. To me he came for refuge, and to me he hath done those immortall seruices, that while I breath, I will never forsake him. By my fuster ( said *Charles*) *Gautier*, thou hast never bene vreleant vnto me, neither hath thy selfe, nor any of thy line haue set vnto my proceedings: wherefore, if I be *Charles* of France, thou shalt not longaigne *Gautier* of *Denmark*. 3 I avveraigne ( said *Naymes* to *Charles*, why are you thus inghitly vexed *Meruine*, *Huon* is a noble gentylman, both wise and valiant, whom if he did you euill, forgiue him because it was honorabile euill. But if your displeasure stretch beyond mitigation, yet smother it in this place, because you are bound to reuenge it no where but in your own kingdom, and the rather, not now, because we are but the followers of Prince *Meruine*. *Naymes* ( said *Charles*) thou ardest well

## The firt part of

to my fire, because thou thinkest never again to returne into Fraunce: but if thou doest remember, I am Charles. Meruine herte angry at these stull debates, went about to apease them, but finding his labour effectlesse through Charlemaines wilfulness, he said: My lord and emperour, sith my oratory is so harsh in your eates, know that neither to you, nor for your displeasure wil I deist or breake off the enterprise I haue vndertaken. And then turning about Gaultier, (who knew the Emperours anger was most against him) intreated Meruine once more to sollicite Charles to accompany them to Damascus: but Meruine by no meanes woulde be perswaded, but taking his colours into his owne hand, marched away without morespeaking. Charlemaine on the other part who was highly enraged against Duke Naymes, and the twelue peers, because they so stoke him to followe Meruine, departed an other way, hawing to God and his owne soule, to lay waste and ruinous, the flourishing country of Denmarke, vntesse Gaultier on his knees came humbly to aske him forgiuenesse, and to begge part on for releving the damned murderer of his sonne: In this agony of high displeasure, Charles marched so incessantly day and night, that at length he arived at Maience, where, in despight of Gaultier, he began to burne and destroy the country: where we wil leaue him, and procede with the actes of Meruine.

3 After the departure of Charles, Meruine made such expedition, that in few dayes he arived in the country adiying to Damascus, where he began to conquer and convert the nation til he came within the sight of Damas. It hapned that a certaine currier Pagan, who had beheld the dedes of the Christians, posstid with all his power to Damascus, and comming before king Bandus, he saide: My lord and soueraigne, to armes, so before the morning starre shall againe be seene in the heauens, I assure you, you shall be bid-

Strong

## the historie of Meruine

Strong and fearefull battell, a myghtie army of the christians I haue discouered, whose looks and resolutions are both stowt and valiant. Meruine, wholately hath renounced our fation, is the formost leader, with him Gaultier, of Denmarke, and diuers others, onely king Charles of Fraunce is absent, who (as I vnderstand) for some private displeasure hath abondoned their companies, and is returned to his owne territories. Bandus was astonisched at these wordes and charged the Pagan vpon his life that he spake nothing, but what truch wold inflicke. My Lord (replied he) if I lie, let me die the death for further, Montment, and with her almost 200 other cities are conuerted to christianitie, euene the p;inceesse Berea her selfe hath renounced Mahomet, and is baptizes by the name of Mathaburna. Where then (said king Bandus) is Mermont her father? At Babilon answered the Pagan. This while arived an other Pagan King named Gorbant, who hauing incamped his hoste in a meadow, arived himselfe at the pallace at such time as the pagan was discouering the approach of the christians. This Gorbant came to beholde Guyda, the estimatiō of whose beautie was renowned through al Asia, whom as soone as Bandus saw, he solemnly receiued, & the more, because he was known for the most absolute valiant pagan that the liued, whose age then had accomplishid but thirtie: and by his means Bandus flattered his hopes with assured conquest. After diuers embracings, seeming knot & of true amitie, Bandus declared the coming of the christians to besiege Damascus, & with perswasse arguments intreated his aid, stirring him more with inuying against Meruine, who so lately had renounced their god and Alcheron. So al his intreaties Gorbant gave willing eare, and consented, boving his uttermost indeuors for the release of Damas. Al things concluded vpon Bandus commanded an alarum throughout the citie, and hauing assembled his men at armes together, he issued out

## The first part of

of the portes in warre-like maner, and soyning his troupes with the troupes of king Gorbant, made one almost impregnable armie. The Christians this while were on the sovereyne side of a g<sup>e</sup>at wood, throug<sup>h</sup> which they speedily passed, and odered battaile. Gaultier looking vpon them, and seeing the diversite of their c<sup>o</sup>signes, he said: God God, what strange nations are yond that come to encounter vs? A christian hearing him, made answere: (for he of olde knew the coate armour he beheld) my Lord yond strange iolous you see, of my knowlidge belong to king Gorbant: hee whose valour and excellent approued prowesse, hath placed him higher in armes bokes then any Pagan whatsoeuer; whose courage make deadlesse of men, though he be assailed with many legions: Is it true (said Meruine) that he is so wonderfull in the deedes of chivalrie? Powe to God I make a solemnne protestation, that if I can but encounter him, I will teach him such a bloudy letanie, that he shall willingly become a christian, and bitterly curse the first houre of my nativitie: this said, they marched forward, and the Pagans likewise: to whom king Gorbant made many orations of honour valour, and incouragement, v<sup>e</sup> basing Meruine, and reviling, his backe-turning from his first knowne religion; but those railings will beate on his owne crest, and his mind will be changed if Meruine live, and Entrant holde his vertue. When the armes were readie to ioyne: a young squire named Thyerrie, came unto Meruine, & made humble petition, that for the honour of his God, he might be the first to give the charge in that battaile. Meruine in loue with his forwardnesse, bade him passe on, and be fortunate. At that wo<sup>r</sup>d Thyerrie thrust spurres to his horse, and comming even unto the face of the Pagans host, he saide: What is there neuer a Pagan amongst you, that hath the sprite of valour to encounter me (who haue contemtrously renounced your false God Mahomet, and sworne to ador<sup>e</sup> no name but

## the historie of Meruine.

but the euerliving Jesus) or tri<sup>e</sup> the breaking of a lance in his religiouse quarrelle. Traitor quoth the Pagan Troulart, who was nephew to Gaiier) Behold, tis I will give thee battell, and scourge the<sup>r</sup> thine ouer-daring. And so saying, he distang<sup>e</sup>ed himselfe, and brake his launce vpon Thierrie with a gallant sprite: but Thierrie did returme him backe such an encounter, that ouerthrowing both horse and man to the ground, the Turke had neuer againe risen, if one of his fellow Sarazens had not fawne in to his rescue, who all at once assailed Thierrie with crueltie. While he defended himselfe gallantly vntill the Christians came to his succour: then beganne the battell to be fierce and wonderfull. The renowned Meruine broaching the braue mare Mordant, ranged amongst the Pagans like an hunger-starued Wolfe, or an enraged Lionesse. Droses with many acts of admirable chivalrie that day seconded him. There might ye haue heard such clamors, such noyse, and tempestuous outrage, as if the clouds had resigned to the earth a greater power, than the power of their thunder. In the middest of the battell Meruine met with Thierrie, the valiant son of Bourchier, whom for the valo<sup>r</sup> he expressed in the first encounter, he embrased about the necke, & after kissing him, gaue him the sacred o<sup>r</sup>der of knyght hood, saying: Hapfull blome of a happy issue, this houre I giue to the vertue: which vertue will cease to flourishe, when as it leaueth to exalt the name of Christ Jesus: and then departing from him, Thierry thrust himselfe amongst the Pagans, where he shewed his daulour to be augmented by the hono<sup>r</sup> he had obtained. Gaultier all this while made great slaughter of the enemies, being inflamed with a double fure: the one of reaenge for wrongs forepast, the other of desire to see his s<sup>e</sup>ure sonnes, who during this battell were in the pallace at Damascus, which by the meanes of Guyda, they lately conquered. Guyda, with whom Bertran in- ioyed

## The first part of

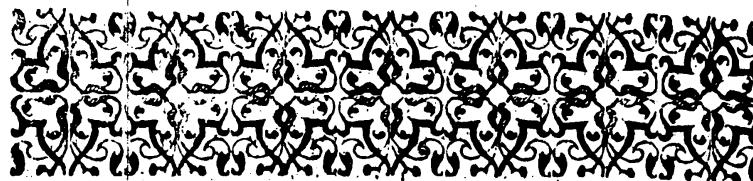
joyed all the horres of loues contentment: and were now recreating themselves vpon the leades of the Castle, from whence they might distincly beare the clamors of the battell. In somuch, that calling vp his brothers, he saide: Princes, what noyse is this I heare about the citie? Is it not like the meeting of two invincible armes? Beliue me I cannot alittle wonder; they all admited as much. Then ascending vp higher into a heauen-kissing turre, whence they might meas ure the confine of all the countrey adiayning. They beheld the battell, and knew the enigmes displayed by each party. Then cried out Bertran, This day shall we be reputed shepheards, if we conceale our selues within these walles, whilist our counteymen and kinne before the citie, for our sakes maintaine a dyadfull battell; for shame let vs issue out, or forsware our names, and the auntient disposition of our natures. Guyda hearing this, wrung her hands, and with bateared eies, than which there could be no better Dratzes, besought Bertran to stay: but he euer resolued in honourable actions, made answere he would quickly returne. But Guyda from whom all hope and reliefe was exiled, would not give credit to his wordes: but with teares of the bitterest displeasure could be harbored in so faire a maner, said he abused her: but if Mahound were Mahound, she would reuenge herselfe of his shameful departure. Leauing her in this agony, the princes departed easily out of the gates of the castell, because the garders of the same neither saw or heard her tormentings. And when they were passed by, the porters would haue locked the gates, but Bertran, whose spirit was made for his loue Guyda, with his sword drawne, came to the chiefeft which bare the keyes, and gaue him such an unrecouerable blow, that he fell dead to the earth. Villaine (said Bertran) the diuell take thy soule, I will be thy Porter whilist thou farest thy rest. This scene, diuers other Pagans assailed him:

## the historie of Meruine.

him: but his brethen, and the valiant Huon, brought to him such powerfull rescue, that in lesse space than an houre they had sent thirty to leape with their forfathers. The pagans seeing this, fled from their violence, and they marcheo to the battell: whither as soone as they were come, they cried with one voice. Archistened dogges, this is the doomes day, and last of your glories: and then beganne to shew the unspeakable wonders of their high valours, with such admirable deedes of armes, that the Pagans knew them as well by their chinalie, as if their faces had bin barred. Now hat they dispersed the battell, and the Sarazens beganne to turne their backes: insomuch that the young Princes beheld and knew their father Gautier; to whom they came, and falling on their faces, adored him as theyr earth-god, and second meane of creation. When Gautier saw his sonnes, his unspeakable ioy would not let him speake, onely silence was his best embassadour of boundles contentment. When Huon saw this equall contention of Natures purest loue, he brake their parisons with these wordes: By ioruds, banish these slow salutes, and thinke on these deuotres. To armes the pagans cric, their deaths must be our glories: that done, we shall haue time to discourse of passed fortunes.



# The first part of



## CHAP. XXXII.

1 How the Pagans were ouerthrowne, and the Christians went and conuerted Damascus. 2 How *Meruine* went after to Babilon, where *Mermont* and the other Pagans for feare of him, fained to receiue baptisme. 3 Then how he went to Mequa and Ierusalem, and conuerted them to Christianitie.



*A*t this spech of Huons, the fourre brethren departed from their father, and thrust themselves into the battell: leauing vndying Registers of their euer-living renowme: Yet in the heat of the conflict there was a pagan called Gryffoy, of wonderfull great valour, and worthie every way, except for that way, which shoulde governe all wayes, all the exquisite titles of a compleat man at armes. This Pagan well taught by profe the greatnesse of the Christians spicites, with a battle-are which he brandished in his hand, he stroke a Christian, called Adrian, so mighty a blow, that he chined him to the breast: and after him, another, and an other, till he had laid ten breathlesse vnder him. Bertran giuing aime to this slaughter, grew so impatient to behold his countrymens effusions, that turning his sword aloft, he came and assaulted Gryffoy with so mighty a stroke crosse the helme, that cutting away his plume, he entred more than an inch into his heuer: and with the blow so astonished the pagan, that at that instant he had cut off his head, if an infinit number of pagans had not interconed

# the historie of Meruine.

vironed him, and assailed Bertran with numberles blows, and desperate resolutions: insomuch that they forced him to recoile for his safety. Then came Huon, and diuers other christians, who retaind Bertran, and that in a lucky houre: for then was the battell most sharpe and doubtful: there might you haue scene many knights on every side ouerturned, horses wounded, and men at their wittes end: some flying, some dying, and some amazed. The gentle knight Meruine, this while on the other side of the field, approued his valour to be strange and unresistable: for he lost not a blow, in which death had no interest: so resolute were his proceedings, that now the pagans were at the conclusion of their glories, and had becene wholy disconfited, if the valiant king Gorbant, in that very houre had not arived with an armie, which by the eyes account could not be lesse than a hundred thousand: king Gorbant marched before his army, mounted vpon the beast Montehaut, which was valued before all the boies in Paineire: and like to lightning gaue a charge vpon our Christians, breaking their rankes, and dispersing their battels, so as in lesse then an houre the christians had almost lost the hope of their god fortunes, for Gorbant ere he brake his launce, brake the neckes of vii Christians: and with the strange valour he was adorneed, so gallantly behaued himselfe, that the common sort of Christians were not able to indure him, but beganne to fye. But Meruine ashamed to see their dishonours, demanded a reason for their figh. To whom one of them, whose name was Vincent, made answere. My Lord, there is newly arruied some God or diuell, in the hable of a Pagan, whose force is so unresistable, and his blowes so huge and insupporable, that from his handes issueth nothing but our deaths and destructions. I pray thys said Meruine, with all speed conduct me to the partie. Not for a kingdome my Lord (said Vincent) for he is altogether

## The firt part of

gether invincible, and mine ies shall die if they behold him. At these words Meruine would not stay, but chynt him selfe amongst the Pagans to fure out. Gorbant, who was then in the prease, and had newly incountered with knight Droles, whom he beheld respcnively, and the rather, for the beauty of the gallant knyght Marcheuall, so that he saide vnto him: Boy, descend from that worthy horse whereon thou art mounted, lest while I chastise thy folly, I wound the horse, with whose comeliness I am highly delighted. Droles hearing himselfe so basely intitled, with a reuengefull furie toynd himselfe to the Pagan, and strake him thwart the helme with all the prissance he was able, yet made the Pagan moue no more than an oake or a mountaine: in requitall whereof Gorbant repayed him so heauy an interest, that the blow slippynge from his beauer, descended vpon the horse, and cut his head from his sholdery so that the god beast Marcheuall fell vnto the ground in a moment. Droles more astonisched with wonder than with feare, lightly raised himselfe agayne, & drawing his swerd, said: O God, this pagan is vndoubtedly strong, who hath slaine my horse, but if I die vntreuened, let my knighthood for sake me. This said, he ranne against the Pagan, led by a tempestuous furie, but was preuented for striking, by meanes of Monthaut, who with the thundersing noyse of the horses feet, came running thither: and also at the same time came Gaultier, and sundry other Christians, who with all their powers assailed Gorbant, which with so excellent resolution defended himselfe, that the stolwst straine curtesie to approach him: yet notwithstanding, in that tyme Droles had so gallantly borne himselfe, that he had now recouered another most famous horse, vpon which being mounted, he came to assaile Gorbant, that even then had brought to the ground all that incountered him, giving such vigour vnto the dead spicites of the Pagans, that the christians

## the historie of Meruine.

christians were almost amazedly vanquisht. During this homage, Meruine was on the other syde of the field, where he approued his diuine excellencie of valour vpon king Bandus and his army: whose numbers being numberles, stroke the beholders into admiration: whereas alas the christians were but xxv. thousand at the beginning, and now but y. thousand at the conclusion. At which Meruin grieued not alitle, being never to retorne, if either he got not a crown for victory, or a tomb for buriall. Then doubling strength vpon strength, he so lion-like ranged among his enemies, that even as the corne before the shearers sickle, so fell the pagans one vpon an other, dead and discomfited: not to dwell long in this discourse, so immortall was his valour that the pagans were halfe dead with the astonisiment of this glaz.

In the end, as he ranged to and fro, he arrived in the place where Marcheuall lay slaine: which when he sawe, and knowing him both by his largenes and beauty, he immeadiately imagined Droles had there wristen the last end of his lifes Legend, so that not able to supprese sorowe growne in his breast, Giant-like almighty he cried out, alas, alas, art thou gone my loue, art thou dead my champion? be my lifecaried, and heere vanish the praise of my knighthood, if I tyrant-like reuenge not this infinite unhappinesse. This said, like vnto a peale of thunders, or to a Roaring tempest in the middest of Winter, he ranne amonst the Pagans, even from one syde of the field vnto the other, and where he espied the greatest number, thither flew his greatest furie, the whiche he dispersed, so like unto a forsaken flocke, that being at their lvettes end, they knew not which way to turne them. In the highest of this turmoile, Meruine espied Bertran to be dismounted from his horse, who being on fote, maintained a more then kightly combatte against Gryffoy, and an hundred other Pagans,

## The first part of

Pagans, so whom alofe he hallowed this encouaement,  
Beau'y of thy fath'rs house, this day shall be thine hanes  
festivall. Take courage, take courage faire Prince: for the  
Pagans are distraught and vanquisched. These cordiall  
speches so lively uttered, inspired Bertran with such new  
spirites, that bearing himselfe against a Pagan, he stroke  
horse and man dead to the ground without word speaking.  
The next to him he likewise dismounted, and arresting his  
horse, leapt into the saddle, effecting wonders in the pagans  
destructions: who like kids from the wolfe ranue fearefull  
at the sight of Meruine, seeking by running, the staine of  
Honour, to saue that which should maintaine hono. Mer-  
uine, like himselfe passed from rancke to rancke, and never  
staid till he met with king Bandus: to whom he gaue a  
blow, that he cleft his shield to his fist, and made it fall to  
the ground: which the king fearefull to recover (death be-  
ing a greater feare) betake himselfe to flight also. Princely  
Meruine passed along, to find out Gorbant (the onely ex-  
cellent amongst his enemies) bowing vpon him to lay the  
burthen of his wrath. And as he was searching, he incoun-  
tered Thierry the sonne of Bouchier: unto whom he said,  
Faire yong knight, knowist thou if neare hereabout, be that  
famous pagan, who this day had beene our vengeance and  
halse destruction. O, if thou canst, shew him me, and make  
me happy. Follow me, said Thierrie, and then they went  
together, making Death their servant smoothe their way  
to the place where Gorbant was, who had that day beene  
the ruine of the Christians. No sooner was Meruines eies  
fastned vpon him, but boylng with rage, he thrust forward  
to strike him: but the Pagan turning himselfe from the  
blow like the falling of a mountaine, it fell vpon the gentle  
knight Thierrie (whose ouer hauie valour bare him twixt  
them,) with such and so great infortunacie, that it ouer-  
threw the man, yea and clauy the horse into two pieces:

which

## the historic of Meruine.

which to Meruine was no small grice, who grew madde  
to revenge his owne mudoing: but Gorbant by that wil-  
nesse, knowing his pituelle omnipotencie, and seeing his  
army lie from him on every side, thrust his spurs agaist  
the sides of Monthaut, and in a moment was fled from the  
presence of Meruine, who all alone stode wondering at his  
flight, and his own mishances. The pagan made his flight  
towardes Damascus, his burning heart desirous to haue  
possession of the beautifull Guyda, in whom he had placed  
all his affection, whom hee finding, after many embra-  
ces, he mounted her on his hor'e, and bare her to his shipp.  
Guyda notwithstanding much his inforcements, because as  
then she was offended with Bertran, both because he had  
most unkindly left her, and was also one of the sonnes that  
had slaine her fath'r, and the rest of her royll kinred. Thus  
fled king Gorbant, who met with Bandus, Gryffoy, Gri-  
soner, and with ten thousand Pagans, all which, to saue  
their liues, were fled to the sea side, vnto whom Gorbant  
cried, Away princes, away, for he that is tardy in flight,  
shall be first and swiftest in his death. At this speach, feare-  
lent wings to their heels, and they al imbarking theseloers,  
gave their safeties to the mercy of the sea. Those which re-  
mained behinde, the Christians put to the sword. When the  
chase was finished, our Christian Princes went towardes  
Damascus to assault it, but the Citizens issuing from the  
porches, brought the keyes, and with submision deliuered  
them to their merites, so that Meruine, Gautier, and the  
rest of the Christians entred, who by means of that battell  
were not aboue 200. After they had repased themselves a  
while, Gautier called vnto him his fourre sonnes, and said:  
Princes, know you to whom the offerings of your honour  
is due, or who it is that from the dayes of your unhappi-  
nesse hath restored you? beholde, it is this princely and he-  
roike Meruine, the sonne of your renowned vncle Duke

o

Oger,

## The first part of

Oger, and then he discoursed at large to them the wonders of his prowalles, the taking of Charles, the ouerthow of the twelve peers, and al their imprisonments. To be short, he ran through all the chronicle of Meruines heroicall actions, and how Charles discontentedly was returned into France for the hate of Huon. Huon hearing that word, as rakk with his owne infortune, he said: O God, when shal the houre come to bind me in perfitt peace with that famous emperour? Huon having thus said, he, Gautier, & the soure brethen did honor to Meruine, who returned them praise for praise, thanks for thanks, vowing to aide them against their enemies. Thus was the ioy unspeakable among the Christians, making houres like minutes vanish by theyr pleasures. Next morning, Meruine caused all the citizens of Damascus to be christened, and whoso refused, to be put to the swerd. This done, he caused all the countrey adiourning, to come in, and be baptizied: whereto all the nobles accordeed. These things finished, Meruine called Florion, and said: Cousin, for thy beauties sake, I give thee this citie of Damascus, and the whole realme about it, accept it kindly, as I give it willingly: and then he made all the nobles and citizens sware homage and fealtie to his Crowne: and for a gard to his person, left him those 200 Christians, which the swerd had preserued, mustering for himselfe out of the citie and country two thousand that hardly before had borne armes.

2 After that nights repast in the citie, Meruine, Gautier, and the other princes departed from Damascus, and marched to a village two leagues from Babilon, where remained Mermont. Gaudisse, who by many intelligences knew al the famous deeds of Meruin, and how he was then come to besiege them, of which they stood in feare, called a counsell together, where they disputed what way was best

for

## the historie of Meruine.

for their safeties: Princes said Mermont, our arguments must be brefe, and our resolations speedy, for otherwise we shall lose our inheritances with our disputations, and our liues by slouthfulnes, for well we kno w Meruine is wise and invincible: for my owne part, to mee hee did the greatest indignity, though I were the first that made mountaineous his honor, for he hath slaine my men, baptizied my daughter, yea, and will espouse her, if heauens preuent not my disgraces: yet so I know him replenished with true fortitude, that it is impossible to withstand him, if treason be not an agent of our deliery. Tis true qd Gotham, who was newly arived in that city, it behoues vs to search out any mean for the restitucion of our God and religion. The meane qd Mermont, I haue already iuanted, and we wil all be reuenged so, that babes unborne shall speake of his miserie, and this it is: we will all hang forth the ensignes of peace, and submitemly yeld to his pleasure, be it at his feet, and flatter him with fained obedience: we wil conclude against our religion, and take vpon vs that they call Christianitie: and that he may the leſſe mistrust vs, shalbe proclaimed through the city, our conciſion: what will of this issue shalbe his ruine. The pagans applauded this resolusion, so they arose, and having effected what they would, took the keys of the city, and marched forth with great ioy towards Meruine, who so ſone as he ſaw Mermont and thother, he turned to Gautier and laid: Behold with what ioy the pagans approach vs, bearing in theyr hancs witness(es) of peace: Howe blessed is this conuerſt that is without effusion, and howe glad am I they are ſo easily conuerted: Alas his innocency thought not of the treason they had iuanted. By this they were come eyther to other, whilſt the pagans falling upon their knees before Meruine cried, Welcome, O ten times happily welcome is Meruine, the Sonne of invincible Oger into this country. Then bespake

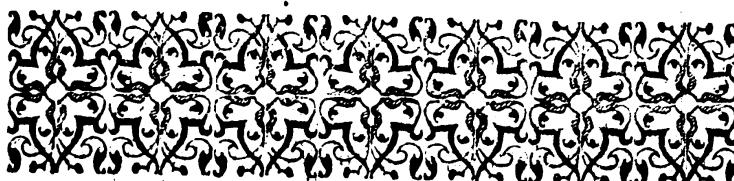
## The first part of

Mermont : Then messe wise, most strong, and valiant Prince, living in this or the immortall world, beholde, we fall downe befor thee, ready to receiue and acknowledge thy lawe and religion. every one most desirous of that celestiall happynesse, who already haue renounced Jupiter, Apollo, and Mahomet, vnder whose shadowes we haue bin miserably conducted. When Meruine heard these words, he was ioysfully contented, more than at any time before he had bin, thinking that came from sincerity, which indeed was nothing but treachery: wherefore imbracing euerie severall prince in his armes, severally he said to Mermont: never did your Highnes your selfe so glorioius reputation, as in believing in the immortall God immaculate Christ Iesus. And sith you haue made me the blessed workeman of this high dignitie, henceforth, as I haue ever bin, holde me for your owne knight and true subiect. Many other ceremonies was betwene them: and then they marched on to Babilon, whose walls were replete with ioy, triumphs, and banqueting. Then was a solempne festinall held, and the Temples most sumptuously adornde. Then was Mermont and all the other pagan Kings baptizéd, who unwillingly went willingly to the sacrament, comforted onely with treason and false infidelitie.

3 When al the kings and citizens in Babilon were baptizéd, Meruine went thence to Hi qua, where in an hours space he caused all the country to be baptizéd. Which done, he went to Ierusalem, where easilly he accorded all the citizens: for albeit they were conquered, yet they had not forsaken christian religion only doubtfull at the first, not knowing Meruins conversion they faimed to adorze Mahomet, but knowing his will, they scornefull away that base believning. These things thus effected, the gentle Meruine returned to Babilon, & made all the country bordering there about

## the historie of Meruine.

about become Christians: and whatsoeuer before time he had grafted in hell, seeking paganism: soz ioy whereof the Christians made many holy daies, singing hymnes in his honour, protesting him to be the renowmedest that ere was borne of a mother. But on the contrary part, Mermont lay working his imaginations, how to worke vengeance on him whom the heauens so exceedingly loued.



## CHAP. XXXIII.

How by treason Mermont brought Meruine to Minor.

2 How Gantier after the departure of Meruine went with al his army to Montment, where he found Mattaburna, to whom he tolde how her father was become a christian. 3 How Mermont spake to Butor to imprison Meruine.



I T happned after Easter, that on a certain day king Mermont resolued to worke mischiese on Meruine: and calling him to him, to blindfold his eyes, he said: Sonne, it is not unknowne to me th' affections twixt thee & my daughter, the which is an vsuall ioy to my imaginations:

## The first part of

wherefore sith no better god can make better my happiness, I beseech thee let me know the day of thy espousalls, a day, than which nothing is moze desired. By loueraigne king, said Meruine, let the day be at your Highnes disposing: and if it so semme pleasing, let vs to morrow rather than to day passe to that desired coniunction. Willingly (quod Meruine: yet before, of necessitie we must go to Minor vnto the Duxne my sister whom by a solemne oath I haue given assurance, that I will my selfe in person come to invite her to these gorgeous nuptials, because my daughter hath ever bin most deare in her regarde and estimation: as for your army, that wylle I. Gautier conduct before to Montment, and take order for all preparation worthy in so great a solemnity. Well hath your Maistrie said (quoth Meruine) let every thing be so disposed, and in the morning they and we will take our severall iourneys. Willingly quod Mermont, imagining with himselfe to bring Meruin to a place whence he shold never be released. After this Meruine called Gautier, to whom he told his resolutions, instructing him to conuey his army to Montment, his soule to his Ladie and Mistris, and his happiaesse into her bosome. Gautier at the first stode amazed, and besought him not to bee too much to trusty: and Drohes tolde him hee was suspitious of some euill, vnder this extreame familiarite. But Meruine, who adiudged every thought by his owne thinking, perswaded them otherwise, insomuch that Gautier, his wife, his sons, Huon and Drohes, together with the army, unbarked themselues for Montment: and Mermont, Meruine, and a troupe of traiterous confederats likewise took shippynge for Minor. Fortune being so fauourable to mischance, that in short time they came to their wised landing.

¶ Then mounting vpon their horses, they took the way  
that

## the historie of Meruine.

that led to the city, in which we will leauue them and return to Gautier, and the other christians, who doubtfull of the mischiefes that followed, made such haste, both by land and sea in their iourney, that in short time they came to Montment, where they found the miraclle of Nature Mathaburna, who reioyced at their comming. But when her eyes were not halowed with the sight of Meruine, her ioy conuerced to feares, and she demanded of Gautier, where her loue, her life and substance remained: soorthwith Gautier reported how her roiall father was baptizid, and consented to her espousalls: to which end, he and Meruine were gone to Minor, to fetch her aunt to be a glory to the festiuall. When Mathaburna heard this, that her father was baptizid, she praised God: but in that he had carried her loue to Minor, thence issued doubts, feare and suspitions: and so is me, it was not without strong reason, for the place was dreadfull and impregnable, the description wherof follows, as is set downe in stories Minor, as antient Chzonicles testifie, from whence this historie is derived, is very strongly situate: It hath at the fourre corners fourre most high rockes or promontorics, of which, one exceedeth all the other in height and hugeness, from whence descendeth a mightie riuer named Dzebe, most wonderfull deepe, rough, and contageous, it is guarded vpon each side with a couple of rockes, betwene which every one must passe to the citie, by a narrow way but fwe fote in breadth at the extreame st, neither is there any way save that onely: the history saith, that in the time of king Pharaon, these rocks and this riuer were made by Magike art, and this city named Minor founded as a thing impregnable: for it hath before the entraunce fourre ports or passages strongly garded, the first is Auster, and it hath a Pagan named Auroufe, sell & powerfull continually to defend and keepe it. Dueragainst it is an other of the same strengthe, defended by one euen as

## The first part of

Strong and sufficient. The third is of a more terrible fashon than these: for the gates are of yron, and next it a tower, whose height seems to touch the heauens. After one hath passed that gate, whose name is Tombare: they enter into Hinoz, a beautifull citie, washed vpon every side with the riuere Oze. Mermont and Meruine, by this time were passed through the first port, who was much abashed to behold so strange a passage, and such workes of wonderfull resistance, demanding diuers questions of their hugenesse: in the end they incountred with Auroufe, who knowing Mermont since the bringing of his sister into those parts, let him passe in peace, and Meruin also. Thence they came to the second gate called Baucair: which when Meruine saw, he demaunded what diuell of diuelish wales that was, and when they shold come to the city; Faire son (qd Mermont) you are abashed at these entrances: yet be content, and we shall easly ouerpasse them. Then they went till they came to Tumbar the last port, whose ghastly proportion made Meruine wonder more than before: and demaunded what fury of hell had exalted that Tower to threaten heauen, sure it must needs fall, it cannot long indure. Yet (said Meruine) for that the masonry is both strong and exquisit: and the rockes of each side as supporters do maintaine it. By my soule said Meruine this is a vilainous situation: for I see not any way to issue or enter but this only. This is true qd Mermont. Neither is there any creature whatseeuer, that enters within this portcullis, that can repasse without the leue of king Butor, or Gaaimy his sister. This said, they came to the yron gate, thowre which they passed, al the porters doing them great reverence. Thus farre hauing gone, they came into the fairest and honourable city: which to behold, Meruine migh-  
tily rejoyced, because till then he went in worse than Starre-light. A certaine pagan went before to king Butor, telling

him

## the historie of Meruine.

him the approch of Mermont. wherefore he arose to go met him, but his son Marant would not, but withdrawinge himselfe into a private chamber, sat musing what occasion should drawe thither his uncle, one while he thought he was come to take vengeaunce vpon him for the treason he had committed against Meruine at Montment: for which Drohes had slaine Calix in combat, as was before written: otherwhiles he did imagine other occurrentes: but the traitor Mermont, as false as himselfe was faultie, hadde not one thought so neare a kinne to honestie for only his comming wes to doe endamagement to Meruine, because he adorzd the true god, and renounced their false prophet Mahomet.

3 Now was Mermont come into the court even to the kings pallace, where he found Butor and diuers of his Barons that were come forth to grafe him. Kingly was their encounter on both sides, and much ceremonious the largenesse of their accomplishments. Then came the queene, being sister to Mermont, betwene whom were straite & dore embraces: with her was also her daughter, one of beauties best superlatives, named Singlay: to her was Mermont kinde and full of obsecuance. Statulacions finished, to the fest monie of Welchme, entred, and the pallace rung with clamours of delights and contentment. Supper by this time was readie and royally serued, where full bowles and rich accates adorzd entertainement. When supper was ended and muickie came in and the gallantes of the court betooke them to dauncing, amongest them Meruine taking Singlay, daunced with her a stately measure: during which heauenly motion, Mermont, Butor, and the queene, helde a solempne (though damnable) counsell, about the ryme of the ever to be regarded Meruine, Mermont avowing the occasion of his comming, to be for nothing but to behelde his biter destruction: and thence he dilated his bringing vp, and aduentures,

## The first part of

a duentures, his conquestes, triumphes : and lastly, his backslding fyd Mahomet, whom before he had adord, with al affirming his valiance so boundles, and not to be resisted, that he woulde sone subvert the whole estate of their religiōn. Thereforē god king and my brother, said Mermont, it not behoueth (to whom Mahomet hath giuen powre of controlement) to imp̄son him and kepe him safe from further defacing of his templ̄s. But if by anie maanes he wil again be converted to our faction : then assure thes, so strange is his resolution, that we shall be monarcches both of Fraunce and all Ch̄sillendome, with most easie aduentures. All this while Meruin was dauncing without thought of infidilitē: courting most honourably the beutiful Singlay, whose heart with his excellencie was euen then made a receptacle of loues brightest fire, and she was inflamed with his loue: so much preuailed the ḡf. Galliana had giuen him at his first bearing. Thus we will leaue to speake of them, and pursue the discourse of Mermont and Butor.



### CHAP. XX X I I I.

1. Huon Meruin was most traiterously imprisoned, and the description therof. 2. How by the persuasion of Mermont, Butor went with 100000. Pagans to Mont-  
ment. 3. How Minea aduertised Gautier and the other Christians.



hen Butor had understande the vttermost of Mermonts infreaties, hee replied, my dāre brother, touching the actions of this vassall, be you as guardlesse, as I am fearelesse : for this night when he is laide to his rest, & wearinesse shall

## the historie of Meruine.

shall summon sleep upon his eie-lids, with a band of men he shalbe strongly assailed, bound and conuictēd into a care-kee-  
ping dungeon, which sometime was founded by a coniurer  
dineil, and devils commander, named Mutafier, where he re-  
mained 200. yeares as I haue heare credibly reported, be-  
cause he sought to supplant the wise Merlin, and brame the  
world to his owne liking. into this bast place of misery so  
vengeance Merlin damned him : in which there is nothing  
but horrore, feare and desolation, the botomlesse riuier Orbe  
making his current ouer the rōuse of the wosull mansion. in  
to this, if once the vassall come, there is no redemption, ne  
hath any creature power of deliverāce: so Merlin inchan-  
ted it, who bound the diuelish Mutafier beyond the power  
of all other coniuration: till such time, that by bloudy hōw,  
and execrable protestation he sware euer to be at his hest and  
commandement, not daring to wrong body or soule, without  
his authōritie. And then was Mutafier unlarged, and euer af-  
ter made free from that dungeon. Into this place shall this  
Meruine be conuayed : neither will I rest till I see it fullie  
brought to passe and finished. After all revels were ended,  
torches wer brought to cōuey the princes to their lodgings :  
so every one severally departed, and Meruine was brought  
into a most sumptuous chamber. whre after he was laid,  
and had lockt vp his eie-lids with a swāte slumber, thirre  
Sarazens entred his lodging, and armēd not so much with  
courage, as the sleep-death-like sprinkled vpon him, at once  
assailed him, and bound him hard and fast, and blindsfolded  
his eies. At which Meruin awaking was mightily amazed,  
but not knowing any remedie, was patient soozibly. Then  
began the vassals of shame to remile him, saying: Craytour  
thou shalt curse the time that euer thou renouced Mahomet,  
or bathed thy swōd in the blōd of a pagan: so hence springes  
thy ruine, and their relieuerie. Then came Butor, who  
caused him to bee cast into the soze-mentioned Dungeon,  
where

## The first part of

where he was chayned by the handes and feete, and received his iudgement, that he shold never be free from that calamite, till he renounced the eternall God of the Christians. To which he made answere: *Laistours, and no kings, my God will I never forsake for affliction: neither shal my life indure to thinke wearisome these tormentes which I indure for my Sauour, whose loue I will not leaue for all the worlds triumphs, my soule being deare for these deare oppressing.* At this Butor departed, leauing Meruine accompanied with none but sorrowe onely, with whome hee consorted the space of ffe yeres in extreme miserie. Now was the gift giuen by Gratiana at his birth fully accomplished, and hee pent in that prison where feares were pittilesse though incesant: after many bemonings he made his prayers vnto God, & besought him to haue mercy on his afflictions. Then came the devill Mautafier, and transforming hymselfe into many likenesses, tempted him with damnable protestations, promising if he would renounce his baptisme, to redeeme him from his woulness. But his faith resolued was euer immouable, so that Mautafier seeing his perseveraunce, left to expostulate with more temptation. Heere we will leaue to speake moe of him, or his wretchednes, and discourse a little of Morgua his mother, of Meruina his godmother, & Galiana, that princelies faires that gouerned in Faeria, whose griefe abounded for the impisyonment of Meruine, inueyng most mightily against Gratiana, whose gift made him subiect to this infortune. After many complaints Morgua sayd to the other ladies: *Princesses, you understand the wretchednes of my sonnes case, even for vertues sake consent to sweten some honre of his bitternes, with delight which I haue devised.* *We three will take eich of vs an instrument of musick, and go into his dungeon (the cloister of carefullnes) every day an houre, at such time as Mautafier shalbe absent, and with some chanson of delicacie minister ioy among his sorrowes,*

## the historie of Meruine.

sorowes, concealing our selues from his eies, onely incything his eares with melody. To this the Ladies gaue a free consent: so that doing accordingly, they entred vnsene into the prison. At whose approach, a most strange light spred through the dungen, in so ample maner, as it there had bin an hundred torches burning. At which diuine action, Meruine was wonderfully amazed: Amazed only to see that he saw nothing. Instantly after the light, the faires began to play heauenly notes (the moving aire of celestiall musick) that it was impossible for sorow to abide where such sacred tunes were recorded: and he in whome languor protestest to haue tenure of fee-simple, proued the pia false: and that at all he had in him no interest. After they had thus plaid, and Meruine had shakt handes with extremitie, they returned to their owne habitation; not sayling in ey day this misably to visite him, to the high amazement of his sences.

2. But againe to returne to the traiterous king Mermont: It chauiced that he came to king Butor, and in most earnest maner intreated him to muster vp his people: and with the greatest power he had to march with him to Mantement, for that there lay Gautier of Denmarke, his sonnes, and almost all the force of Christendome, in expectation of Meruine, whom vnawares they myght ouerhaue and bring to small destruction. To this Butor agreed (for ill by ill is easily tempted:) and soorthwith commaunded Commissions to be sent abroad, for the gathering togither of his power. When there was assembled to the number of an 100000, he armed them and departed from Minoz, traelling so restlesly both by land and by sea, that in twentie dayes he came to Brandis, and by the will of God, the authour of happy fortune, the two false meaning kinges lodg'd in the house of Minea, where they held a solempne and tedious

## The first part of

tedious councell howe they myght enter Montment, and in despight of Meruine put to syr oþd Gautier, and the rest of the Chassians. All whiche disputationes came to the eares of Mynea, who drawing aside the Lord Chamberlaine of king Mermonts houſhould, in humble manner intreated of his lord ſhippe, to know whare, or what was become of the moſt faſtions Meruine. Madam (ſays the noble man) he is incloſed in a place from whence hee ſhall neuer finde deliuerance. And then (as if he were with child of thofe troubls) he diſcourſed all the eſtate of inſopportune Meruine, both the reuocacion of his firſt religion, his true parents, and kingly pedigree, his conqueſts and vnluckie betraying, and withall, how the moſt principall of his alliance were gathered together at Montment, expeſting the eſpouſals betwene him and Be-rea, and how the king his maſter, and Butor, meant to pre-uent them with a ſudden and vnloukt ſor slaughter.

3 When Minea, not without ſighes, had heard him com-  
ment of thofe actions, ſhee ſmailed, leaſt her lookeſhould be  
blabbes of her intentions: and then taking leaue, departed  
from him, and went to her chamber, where immeadiately ſhe  
indited a letter, that conteined what her eares had received:  
and deliuering it to a moſt truſtie messenger, gaue him eſpe-  
ciall charge to beare it to Montment, vnto Barbin the mar-  
chant. All whiche the messenger effected, not ceaſing till he  
came vnto the kings pallace in Montment, where finding  
Barbin, he ſayd: Reverent ſir, to you I am ſent, from the  
vertuous Ladie Minea, that ſo intirely loueth Meruine,  
and from her preſent thofe lines to your iudgement. When  
Mathaburna heard him name Meruin, ſhe ſtarke, and in-  
quired what tidings. To whom Barbin made no reſplice,  
but deliuered the letter to Gautier, who read  
it; which conteineth this that  
followeth.

To

## the historie of Meruine.

### To the Princes of Christen- dome, health,



Now (excellent Lordes) from me vni-  
comfortable Ladie, that in vaine we ex-  
pect the returne of moſt absolute Mer-  
uine, whom henceforth I feare againe  
you ſhall neuer ſee, the grieſe whereof is burdenous  
to my weary ſoule. And further, be aduertised, that  
it behoueth you to ſtand vpon your beſt guard;  
for that foorthwith you ſhall be infinitely affailed  
by an hundred thouſand Pagans, conduced by  
Mermont, and Butor of Tabarie, who ſolemnely  
haue ſworne your death on their religious Alche-  
ron: looke then to your ſelues, and loue her that in-  
dangered her life to do you ſeruices.

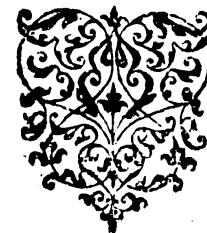
Minea of Brandis.

VVhen Gautier had read the contents of this letter,  
than at that instant he was neare moſe vehement-  
ly perplexed, tearing his garments, and utaking de-  
ſpaire and wrath one intre bodie: but better to be reſolute,  
he asked the messenger if certaintly thofe tidings of miſe-  
rie were true or no. Yes my good Lord, replied he, and  
the mighty host is euuen now at Brandis. Then arose Iacob  
and ſaide; Princesſe I am a witneſſe of the incomparabe  
loue the Ladie Minea bare to exquife Meruine: where-  
fore I knowe ſhee writes nothing but trutheſeareful-  
nelleſſe. Then beganne euery one to ſorow for Meruin:  
but

## The first part of

but farre above all and beyond conceit, were Machaburnas lamentations, who wizing her handes, breaking the golden threades of her celestiall haire, and the sacred vesture, that shrouded the paradise of her features, shes cried: O sorrow, immortall sorrow, what shall I demaund? miserie, or death? both are too little. True God, in whom my faith so lately is grounded, gine counsaile to my woes, for my heart is lost: O more my life, nay most my spirite, nay a bone all that, the most sweete, most wise and, most louely creature of the world. Warke heauens what I woe before you, if his lone faile, my lone shall haue ending: for but him, not any shall harbour in my concites: if he die, I die: if he live, he shall finde me such as he left me. Thus tormented she her selfe: but alas, such are her hard staires, that before she see him, she shalbe compelled to die, or denie her religion, which indeede she did: yet it was but womans faultnesse, as heere, after shall be at large declared.

## FINIS



# MERVINE;

*The second part of*

That most famous, worthie, and auncient Mother of all *Histories*, the exquisite *Historie* of Prince Mervine, the son of Oger the Dane, who conquered Ierusalem, Babylon, and diuerse other Citties from the Pagans, with many memorabile accidents of wondrous consequence.

*Qui sera sera.*



At LONDON

Printed by Ralph Blower and Valentine Sims.  
1612.



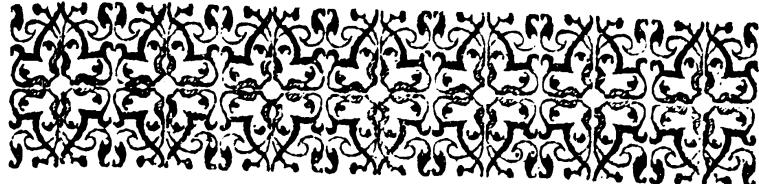
## The Printer to the Reader.



T is a common cus-  
tom among Writers  
and Translators (in  
a well penned pro-  
logue, just like an old  
Song, whose burthen goes to,  
(I beseech ye beare with vs) to sol-  
licite their Readers for so much  
fauour as to vle good words, and  
haue patience, to omit defects, cen-  
sure mildly, & so forth. Now I ac-

## To the Reader.

quainted with none of these vaines  
for excuse, and indeede thinking  
them all in vaine, ( in the Tran-  
slators absence ) I keepe the forme  
of an Epistle, though follow not the  
fashion: onely intreate those that  
delight in Sories, to looke on the  
delights in Meruine. Which if  
they vouchsafe for my pro-  
fit, I will venture more  
for their plea-  
sures.



## The Table of the second Part.



On Mermont, Butor, and the Pagans ima-  
gining to enter unawares within Montment,  
were inclosed by the Christians. 2 Of their dis-  
comfiture, and the great battell wherein Ber-  
tran did wonders.

Chap. 1.

Gautier the Dane with 20000. followed Butor and Mer-  
mont to Minor: 2 of the skirmishes and taking of Nubia,  
Turquants death. 3 Bertrans policie of surprizing of Mi-  
nor.

Chap. 2.

Bertran passed all the gates, and Drohes with him also:  
2 of the prowesses they shewed against the pagans: 3 how they  
were taken prisoners; and put to the keeping of the faire  
Singlay.

Chap. 3.

Gautier raysed his Siege from Minor, and came to Nubia,  
where hee repayred his Armie: 2 how from thence hee came  
to Luternia, where hee found Iacob, who discoursed the for-  
tunes of Montment: 3 how Gautier went before Montment,  
and tooke it againe by meanes of Iacob.

Chap. 4.

Of the gallant life that Bertran and Drohes led in Mi-  
nor: 2 of the Tourney which was ppoclaimed for the loue of  
Singlay: 3 of the priuate wonders Bertran did. Chap. 5.

Marant accused his sister Singlay: 2 how Bertran made  
the pagans beleeme he would renounce Christianitie: 3. how  
he

# The Table.

he undertooke to combate against Marant. Chap. 6.

Bertran and Drokes (under the pretence of paganisme) broughte ferte thousand pagans before Montment: 2 how the most part of them were there confounded and put to the ground. chap. 7

An Ambassadour came to Gautier, who brought him word, that the Emperour Charlemaine had destroyed all his country of Denmarke: 2 how Drokes went to delivere Meruin, and how Gautier arriued at Maiance. chap. 8

Of the great battell which was betweene the Emperour and Gautier, in which Charlemaine was taken priosner: 2 how Loys the sonne of Charles came with a great power against Maiance to reuenge his father. chap. 9

Barant (surnamed the Cruell) departed from Montment with three hundred thousand Souldiers, and passed the Seas towards Maiance: 2 how Charles and Gautier made a peace, and ioyned against the Pagans. chap. 10

Bertran and his brethren, Loys and the other Christians issued upon the pagans: 2 the deaths of all the famous christians except Loys: 3 of the battell betweene Barant the Cruell, and Bertran of Denmarke. chap. 11

Loys came to Maiance and reported the woful estate of the Christians, and the sorrowe Gautier made for his sonnes, 2 Singlayes sorrowe, and message Barant sent to Charles; together with the answere: 3 how Barant slew one of the messengers. chap. 12

The Christians gave battell to the pagans, in which turmoile the good King Gautier was slaine, and his hoste ouerthrown: 2 Charlemaine is forced to retire, and issues out the second time, 3 The taking of Loys, and Duke Naymes prisoners. chap. 13

Drokes and Adain traauled so long in unfrequented places, till they found out the true meanes for Meruines delivere: 2 how Drokes combated with a Griffon for his loue

# The Table.

loue Adain.

Drokes spake to Robaster touching the delivere of Meruin: 2 of Malabeon of Luron Robasters father that gane counsell in the action. chap. 14

Robaster deceived king Butor: 2 how Meruine was delivere out of prison, and went to the pallace where he sene Butor, his queene, and divers other pagans: 3 and of the great battell he maintained. chap. 15

Meruine Robaster, and Drokes arriued in a wood amongst robbers: 2 of the dingers they were in: 3 how Malabeon ayded them: 4 how they slew the theenes. chap. 16

Meruine and Drokes went to Brandis, and conuerted the Countrey: 2 how they came before Montment, where (in the Battaille) Drokes was taken, and brought into the Citie: 3 how Mathaburna (before the pagans) menaced him. chap. 17

The city of Montment was taken by the meanes of Mathaburna: 2 The delivere of Drokes out of prison, and other accidents. chap. 18

Barant challenged combat of Charles himselfe alone against three or five: 2 how he ouercame all the ffe. chap. 20

Meruine incountred Baham the sonne of Belmarine with 10000. pagans who were forraging, who were all conquered except three: 2 how Baham renounced Mahomet: 3 how the three that escaped reported the action unto Barant, who slew one of them for bringing such euill newes. chap. 21

Barants hundred thousand were ouerthrown by Meruin: 2 how Bertran then came with all his hoste, except three hundred, and marched agaist the Christians. chap. 22

The single Combat betwixt Meruine and Barant, and of Charles and the other Christians, and the ouerthrow of the pagans. chap. 23

Meruine married Mathaburna: 2 And of the great solemnite at Maiance for ioy thereof. chap. 24

## The Table.

Mutafier deceived the Fairie Gratiana, and begotte of her a monster named Orke, who had three heads : 2 And of other accidents.

chap. 25.

The king Turniquant of Oriam assembled a great number of his people, and went in ayde of the Orke : 2 how hee destroyed all Normandie and Brittaine : 3 and of other occurrents.

chap. 26.

King Charles had intelligence of the King of Englands comming : 1 of their assault on both sides : 3 how Meruine came, who had reconquered againe all that the Orke had wonne : 4 how Mathaburna gane charge, that no man should speake of the warres before Paris : 5 how an Angell appeared to Meruine.

chap. 27.

Meruin undertooke Combat against the Orke : 2 of the Fight, and the Orkes death, which brought rest to the Christians.

chap. 28.

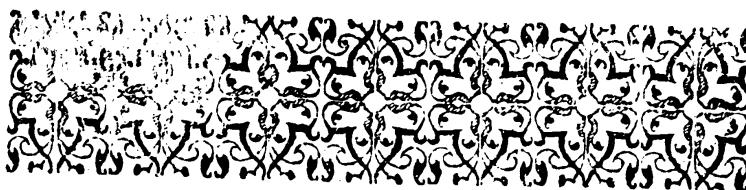
Meruine tooke leaue of Charles and departed: 2 how he went to Ierusalem, and thence was conneyed into Fairies.

chap. 29.



225

## the historie of Meruine.



### The second part of

The most ancient famous mo her of Histories, the exquisite Historie of Prince Meruine, the son of Oger the Dane, who conquered Ierusalem, Babylon, and diuerse other Cities from the Pagans, with many memorable accidents of wondrous consequence.

#### CHAP. I.

How Mermont, Butor, and the Pagans imagining to enter vnawares within Montment, were inclosed by the Christians : 2 Of their discomfiture, and the great battell wherein Bertran did wonders.

Autier having receued these tidings (the happie armes by the whiche they were preserued from a shamefull death) gave the messenger in guerdon of his paines, a cuppe of golde, desiringe him to recommend the perfection of his seruices, to the most kind and loving Lady Minea, whom hee would honour and adore: and after other complements, dispatched him, and departed. Butor and Mermont, the wakynge Dragons of impietie by this time were

## The second part of

were departed from Brandis, and now by sea were come to the port of Luternia, two leagues from Montment, the whilste the christians arm'd themselves to encounter them, having intelligence by their espialles that passed to and fro of their neare accuall: and Bertran comming to his father, besought his maiesty to deliuer him a regiment of the olde & warriours, whom with himself he would lay in ambus-  
tment in the wods. Bontbras till the Pagans were passed by, and then at such time as the maine army shold charge them in the faces, he behinde would equall the encounter, and not doubt but to put all to the sword in a moment: his counsell was held currant, and consented vnto. Now came the pagans marching with silent carefullnes, thinking hale in a flimber to surpize the citie, but they were prevented, for Gautier met them with a well ordered battell: the pro-  
portion consisting of thre batallions, the first conducted by Guyon, containing ffe thousand, the second by Huon of Burdeau, being ffe thousand, and the last by himselfe also ffe thousand, so that the maine was fiftēn thousand, besides ten thousand that lay obscured with Bertran. As the Pagans passed by the wod, Bertran took a perfyt view of them, and smiling, he saide vnto Drohes who was his companion in that stratagem, Behold with what hast these Pagans post to their misery, see, see Drohes, doest thou see that gallant beast the formeſt is mounted on: by him that gave me life, this day I will glorie him theſe for a pre-  
ſent, a ſeate worthier of thy ſeate than an iſſidelous iu-  
craſt. At these wordes Drohes looking carefully, ſaw Buto-  
r mounted on the braue mare Mordant, ſometimes the  
delight of Meruine, which with grieſe made him ſtand as if he had biene thunderstrucke, till rage appeaſing ſorrow he ſaide; To armes, to armes, prince Bertran, let me die if I doe ſtay any longer, and ſee a traitour in triumph ride on the gallant Mordant, worthie none but her maſter in-  
vincible

## the history of Meruine.

vincible Meruine. This ſaide they mounted vpon their hōſes, and ſounding a Cornet, which was a ſignal to Gautier of their coming, issued out of the woodes, and charged the reareward of the pagans thowt and thowt, which Buto beholding, commanded an alarum, and ſaide, Courage gallant refoluiſons, and be not abashed for this handful of christians, whose pride, not prouelle makes them desperate; and at this they turned vpon their enemies, where one might haue ſene Bertran beare honour from e-  
very other creature, and comming to him that rode on the gallant hōſe he had promiſed Drohes, with the firſt blowe he smote him dead from his ſaddle, then taking the ſteede deliuered him to Drohes, ſaying, My promiſe this day is performed, and my word iuſtified: at that Drohes with humble thanks diſmounted, and mounted on his new gift, then they two thrust themſelues among the pagans, Death like a gentleman vther paſſing before them, giving to the battell, a fearſul, and miſerable beginning.

2 Gautier, that on their faces ſhoulde, now on their backes was iuſt to charge them, in which ſhooke Huon ſhewed his prouelle to be moſt invincible, in that right if ſelue he wanted might to reſiſt him, he flew infinites, and leſt innumerable wounded amouſt the reſt he ſauc the nephew to king Gautier, whose death whilſt his vnde pursued to reuenge, he made forſaiſ for his owne life. Dreadfull, and ſomeiwhat doubtfull was the battell a long time, becauſe the pagans were an hundred thousand, and the christians, but ffe and twentie thousand, who notwithstanding by their wiſedomes ( the beſt weapons in warefare ) in the end be-  
came conquerours. Maruellous this day were the actes of Bertran, making Conqueror in loue with her ſelue, becauſe hee loued her. Guyon his brother was not ſhort of infinit prai-  
ſes, who in the hart of the battell ſhewed himſelfe lord of alſ  
hearts,

## the second part of

heartes, and incourting a kinsman of Butors, he slew him, at the fight whereof a whole band of Sarazens assailed him crying, thou diest this day, no valor shall release thee, and then rushing all with one furie, they bare him from his horse and tooke him prisoner: but as they were interading to present him to king Butor, Bertran that then was commen into the strength of the battell, and by the tumults of the pagans, suspecting they had tane some prisoner, all enraged and grieved he turned to the prease, making every hinderer of his way a companion to his graue, till hee sawe them who led his brother Guyon bound in honours dishonourable setters: which when his eyes affirmeid as true witness, led by a vertuous lunacie, he slew in among them, and strake him that held his brother such a blow, that hee claus him to the brest, after him another, and another, till Guyon was at libertie, then giving him an excellent sword (the present of delight) they two brothers beganne a strong battel against fisticke Pagans. Guyon in reuenge of his wrong cloathing his sword in the heart blood of the Pagans. By this time came passing by them the Seneschall of Jabary, whom as Bertran was about to encounter, he saide to prevent him: Wey, deffest, and let me passe by thee, for I will adiourne thine ill fortune, till I haue slaine him who hath killed my brother, and then if thy life be weary I will end thy breathing. Pagan, saide Bertran, thou and thine intents are so farre asunder, that I must needes talke with you before your passe so godly a ioruey, and then turning aloft his sword, hee assailed the Seneschall with such delicate vertue, that in an instant he sent him to sleepe with his great great grandfather's father, then arresting his horse, he gave him to his brother Guyon, who mounted thereon in the battell did most maruelous actions, crying, Honour for heauen and Denmarke, which wordes gaue life to their souldiers, and reviued the halfe dying woundes,

. v. 228

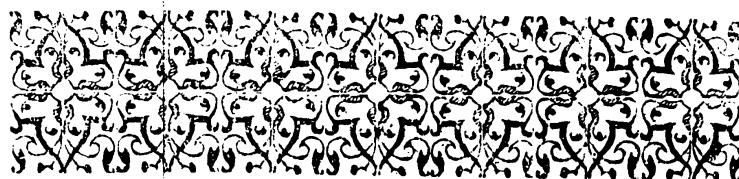
## the history of Meruine.

de, so that the Pagans vnable to resist any longer, betooke themselves to flight, and were utterly discomfited: which when Butor beheld, and comparing his huge hoste with their slender traine, he called Mermont and said: My lord of Mermont, I see it is impossible by fortitude to regaine your city, so highly are the Christians enraged and so miserable the chaunces of our euill fates. It is true, it is very true, answered Mermont, the Dunne-shine of our glorie is wained, wherefore let vs fle, till Time preferre better aduentures. This being spoken, they betooke themselves to flight towards the sea coast, which their army beholding, like distraught men flein here, and there, and everywhere to sauie their lynes, whilst Bertran, his brothers, Gautier, and Huon follow the chase, putting to the sword all that were ouertaken, so that of an hundred thou. sand that were at the beginning of the flight there escaped but foure hundred, who with the kings entred into they shippes, and betooke them selues to the sea, rasing and curling the great courages of the Christians, who after the chase ended returned to the place of battell, where it was admirable to beholde the liue multitudes, who lay one vpon another swimming in they alone bloodes, whose current was mighty, like to a flowing river: amongst the Pagans was found vspeakeable riches, which gathered together, the Conquerors returned victoriously and triumphantly into Mermont, having lost of their owne army but only ten thousand, they were royally received of Mathaburna, who all that day had prayed for the rare successe of their god fortune, because shee feared if the Pagans had preuailed, either her life or happy dayes should undoubtedly haue quailed. Gautier by certayne prisoners he had taken, vnderstaide all the manner of Meruines imprisonment in Minor, whither Butor and Mermont were fled, wherefore he protested before God and his holy saints

to

## The second part of

to follow them, to which end he sent proclamations round about the realme of Mowntment, to summon all the princes therof in his aide, and the rescue of the most worthy Meruine, whose loue was so infinite in those parts, that presently there was numbered twenty thousand absolute appoynted knyghts knowne most valiantly couragous, which with exceeding ioy Gautier with himselfe imbarke, taking also with him diuers Pagan prisoners to conduct him the way to that receptacle of horrore, that Academie of misfortune, damnable Minor.



### CHAP. II.

1 How *Gautier* the Dane with twenty thousand followed *Butor* and *Mermont* to Minor. 2 Of the skirmishes and taking of Nubia, and *Turquants* death, 3 *Bertrams* policie for surprizing of Minor.

Auter the Dane, his feure sonnes, Huon of Bardeaux, Drokes, and with them twenty thousand redoubted men at armes, being aboard their shippes, hoyled vp sailes, and knitting all their harts in one thought, protested in the sight of God to pursue *Butor* so incessantly, that if he take but a breathing rest in any place, they would overtake him and bid him new battell; so on they sailed til they came by a godly citie called *Nubia*, whose governoz was *Turquant*, who at that instant had left the towne to conduct

## the historie of Meruine.

conduct and conney *Butor* on his way, to whom he was allied by a knot of affinity, *Mermont* and the other pagans being passed by a weeke before.

2 When *Gautier* vnderstood whose towne it was, and unto whom it appertained, hee immediately landed his men, and vowed to assaile it, the which hee did, taking it with small or no losse to himselfe, but infinit to his enemy; for he put man woman and child to the sword, that refuseth to be baptizeth. Which done, he drew out of the new baptizeth, a regument of the best reputed, and left behinde a garrison of his owne souldiers to fortifie and keepe the Citie, and then departed on his way towards Minor: in which expedition he was so spedye, that he attained a wood but six leagues from thence: where, as his army was reposing, they might beholde the king of *Nubia* returning from the conduct of *Butor*, and with him five hundred souldiers, whom when he saw, they stroze, unlesse they were Christians, they shold never escape them. Which a citizen of *Nubia* hearing, saide, *My Lord*, it is *Turquant* our late king, that euen now is returning homeward from Minor: At that word *Gautier* set his men in order to charge him. Whilste *Turquant* surveying their fetcht a depe sigh, and saide, *Princes*, this day I leare we shall espouse our euill fortunes, for I see me prepared to give vs battell, yet are their nations and colours unknowne to vs: yet, what, or whosoever they are, wee must and will be our defenders. These words were spoken so faintly, that his armie like men halfe dying, cried for a truce, laying, they were but redes, and vnable to endure the stormes of so great an army. But as they were in speaking, *Gautier* set upon them, and flied the most part, the rest flying about the fields, here and there for succour, which they found no where: the sight whereof was so irkesome to king *Turquant*, that in a mad rage.

## The second part of

rage he stike a Christian, euen in the presence of Bertran, such a mighty blow, that he fell dead at his stike. which when the vertuous prince beheld, he assailed the pagan so couragiously, that with the first blow he diuided the unyon betwixt his head and shoulders: then forthwith were the poore remnant of the pagans taken prisoners, who for their liues safetie, promised to receiue their soules safetie, I mean baptisme. Then demaunded Gautier, where they had left king Butor and Mermont, and they tolde him in Minoz, preparing an invincible army to returne withall to Montement. By the heale of my soule said Bertran, Ile blocke vp that way, and, if I live, feast my selfe in his pallace at Minoz. Alas swete sonne (said Gautier) how shall wee possibly be so happy, when the entrance of our passage is but ffe foote broad, and that most daungerous? Deare fa-ther, answered the Prince, esteeme not fearefull descripti-  
ons, for I haue inuented how and which way, to make both our selues commanders of the towne, and princes of their destructions: and thus it is.

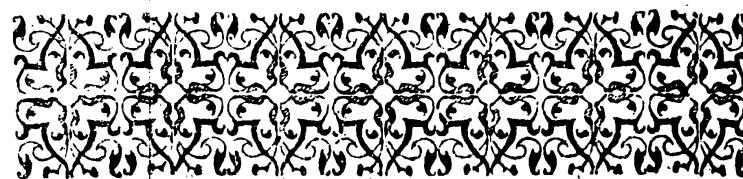
3 I will arme my selfe in the armour of this dead king: and mounted on his horse, spread out his now infortunate colours, and with such like company as he was attended with, Ile march towards the towne, into which I know I shall enter easily, because they will imagine me to be the king of Nubia: which I will no sooner haue effected, but I will gard the gates with such carefull resolution, that famoued, so that in all the haste it was put in practise, and ffe hundred Christians of the best respect were armed both your Highnes and your army shal haue easie passage. This stratagem was much commended, and his wisedome with the Pagans armours, amongst whom was Gautier, Huon, and Drohes. When they were come within three leagues of Minoz, Gautier left the greate summe of his ar-  
mie,

## the historie of Meruine.

mie, and with the ffe hundred marched till they were pas-  
sed through the first port of the cittie, whitch was governed by Arouse, who taking Bertran that marched on the head of the troupe for the king of Nubia, saide: My Lord, will your Maiestie returne againe? And Bertran answered, he would, for he went but only to speake with the King Butor his kinsman, promising him at his returne, a gift shoulde for ever make him rich: the pagan gaue him humb'e thanks with doglike reverence, and so let him passe. And when his army was gone by, he turned to Arouse and drawing his sword, said: Traitor, this is my treasurie, and here com's the reward I promised, and with that he st. ucke him with such vertue, that well might haue clest a recke of Nable: but to the pagan it did no hurt at all, because he was clo-  
thed in the hide of a serpent, which sometimes was the ar-  
mour of invincible Robaster, who now liued a Hermit in the woods there adioyning, where he continued ever since he forsooke the faire Guerin of Montglaine at such time as most famous Charlemaine came before Vienna, which by faire Guerins meanes he conquered, for hate whereof Robaster would haue slaine him: but that Guerin guar-  
ded him from mischiefe, for griefe whereof he was so inta-  
ged against her, that he swore neuer hereafter to doe her seruice, and so led by discontentment, came into those woods, and there building an hermitage, liued, and was fostered by his father Malabeon, casting away his serpents skinne, as intending never more to be fane in battell: yet he miscon-  
ceived, for he must be the ayder of prince Meruine, as you haue heard before, when shalbe the wil of the heauens. But letting these digressions passe, we will returne to Bertran, who after the first blowe, the pagan tolke a bar of yron, and with it gaue him such a requitall, that he made him reele, and almost fel from his horse, had not Drohes upheld him, to the no little staine of Bertrans remembrance, who calling  
againe

## the second part of

againe his stregths together, gaue the Sarazin such a blow  
that he bowed one of his knēs to the ground in submision,  
yet his body unwounded could no way be tainted. Drohes  
beholding this, charged the pagan, and brake his lance, but  
did not hurt him: Huon did alsmich, but as little preuailed,  
to their wonder, and his greater pride. Bertran at this a-  
mazed, dismounted himself, and closed with the pagan:  
Whome by cleane strength he threw downe to the ground  
backward: then alighted Drohes, and lifting vp the head  
of the serpent, with his sword made a passage through his  
body, by which his soul fled downward to eternal darknes.



## CHAP. III.

How Bertran passed all the gates, and Drohes with him  
also, 2 Of the prowesses they shewed against the Pa-  
gans, 3 How they were taken prisoners; and put to  
the keeping of the faire Singlay.

W  
hen the pagan Arouffe was Slaine (a char-  
table dede for Christentome) Bertran thre-  
w him into the riuver Drue, and then marched on  
the narrow way till hee came to the second  
porte, which he likewise passed, killing the  
garde thereof, and thowring them into the riuver, but when  
Gautier saw with considerate eyes, the straitenesse and  
daunger of those passages, he perswaded the Princes to re-  
tire, saying, Honour lost his honour by daring beyond  
the

## the historie of Meruine

the conceite of power: those waies in which none hardly  
coulde goe, but indangered, were tell tales of their destruc-  
tions, therefore whilest time was, wished them to vse the  
time of their deliverance. My gracious father saide Ber-  
tran, I beseech you bee not so suspitious, for if my selfe a-  
lone, and but tentie with me passe, of my life the Towne  
shall be surprized. It is too great a mallerie saide the king,  
therefore be councelled and returne. For Shanie my graci-  
ous father (said he) let vs not, having gone thus farre, re-  
turne scared with imagination, the cattie will take me to  
the King of Rubia, and that shadowe will defend vs. At  
this both Drohes and the rest cried, Forward yong prince,  
this day we will be thy followers, and then they passed to  
the last gate, at which Bertran knocked desiring entrance,  
saying it was shame by day to keepe their Cittie thus re-  
strained: and for his owne part, ere his Cittie of Rubia  
should be feared, he would hazard tenne theusard daun-  
gers. When the Porter heard Bertran, he went vp vnto a  
loope-hole, and seeing the christians so well ordered, saide  
to himselfe, there shall no more enter but the king of Ru-  
bia himselfe till I haue aduertised King Butor my lord and  
maister, and then descending, he opened the portall, desir-  
ing Bertran to enter: who saide, Willaine, why dost thou  
not open thy gates for my traine to followe mee? Noble  
king of Rubia (saide the Porter) be not displeased, for my  
deede is my Kings commaundement, which broken, my life  
is forsaide, neither may I suffer any to passe, be he of his  
nearest lineage, but if it please your Maisterie I will aduer-  
tise his Highnesse and bring you answere. Doe saide Ber-  
tran, and tell his Highnesse I am returned to discourse  
of some private things I forgate at our departure: at this  
the porter closed the gates, and went to the pallace, where  
he found Mermont, Gontor and Bucor his soueraigne,  
to whom he declared the backe returne of the King of Ru-  
bia

## The second part of

bia and his traine, and his desire of entrance. Of my soule (said Butor) he hath incountred with Gautier and is thus chas d' backe againe go let him enter, but first comon all my men at armes, to be in readines to preuent pale destyn, and let but one besides himselfe onely haue passage in. At this abyment the portier, told Bertran the Kings decree, nevertheless effeiting him to passe, hauing before appoynted certaine souldiers aloft to let downe the portcullis when the King and one other were gone by, Bertran and Drohes alone entred, and then the yren gates were closed, which bred smal contentment in Bertran, who drakynge his sword, gane the portier such a blow, that hee clauē him downe to the tath.

2 Those aloft seeing their companion slaine, they said not a word, but forstid the Gates, with all that was in their power, so that Bertran and Drohes now were lockt vp in the towne, for whom the christians sorrowed exceedingly, but they most valiant in the most extremite, scroted vp the strectes most couragiously, Bertran saying to Drohes, come, let vs to the King's pallace if none gainestand vs, if any doe, be our swordes his buckall, for so shall we either sauē our honours, or escape daunger. This saide, with their swordes naked in their handes, they passed towardes the pallace, sending all they met, either to hell or heauen: which scene, was poyson to King Butor, who now commandid all his men at armes to assayle them, which they did with an entire furie: but Bertran and Drohes turning their backes to a wall adioyning to the pallace gates incouraged one an o' her to embrase no mercie, but their death, and that to be bought at an infinite daulw, and withal so defended themselves by offendyngh their enemies, that the proudest god in aw, and ourself not appraz them: in this skirmish Bertran slue Berabem, after him the chambellaine

## the historie of Meruine

berclaine to Butor, salike manner a third, a fourth, till the number infinitly multiplied: Drohes was not shozt, but every way equaled his actions, whilist Mermont in wonder saide, Pa Mahomet, this is not the king Pubia, for Nature hath not lent him self almighty a sprite, rather they are some devils, or diuellish enemies. At this camie Butor amonge his men and saide, Princes and my countynmen, here shall my loue die, neither will I hencesorth count of you. If you deliuer me not these two dead or imprisoned. Hearse were these wordes fled from his lipps, Gontor with a lance in his hand ranne against Bertran, but misting him, slue his horse vnder him, so that falling to the ground, he immediately arose againe with his sword in his hand, and stroke a pagan dead vnder him. By this tyme the Sarazins so multiplied, that Drohes horse was killed also: and then standing against the wall, they maintained a fearefull stroke combate like two soaming boares against a hemell of houndes long hunted. Cruell was the fight beyond measure, so that the pagans wode amazed, yet had not God in partie beheld them, the two princes had there ended theyr lines, not praises. So hidous was the noyse the pagans made about them, that the Quene and her faire daughter Singlay came to behold it, who sayng the not to be conquerid resolution of the two christians spites most highly esteemed them: the Quene saide, Fair daughter, beholde two incomparable creatures, worthy this day to be immortally removid, was euer scene so few preuiale against so many?

Madam ( replied Singlay ) it is the King of Pubia yar aces these wonders of knighthood. This true ( sayde the Quene) for whiche I am alashamed that thy father & his boar should thus pitties assaile him: would God he were in my chamber, to the end he might deserre his euill foyluns, and ce new his peace thus unhappily broken. Thus discoursed

## The secord part of

discoursed the Ladys of the Christians who had now slain so manie pagans, that not any could come neare them for the dead bodies, till Mermont cried, *Hei cowards, hei, how long shall two thus mightly preuaile against vs: and then with his sword in his hand comming to assayle them, Bertran incouerted him with such a blowe that he bent him on his knees, and haue withall slaine him, had he not retaynd backward.*

The battaile alreadie had continued an hower and a halfe, which vexed Butor: who swore he never saw so much magnanimitie in an hoste of 20000. as in those two single persons; and then calling Mermont hee said: *My Lord, these two will destroy my Citie if I finde not remedie, counsaile me, for my care excedeth. Your Maiestie (saide Mermont) must assemble together an Armie of your men, who (laying weapons aside) must rush desperatly vpon them, and even with the confusion of force overthrow excellencie, for otherwise (as you haue well saue) they are invincible.*

This instantly was put in practise, and compassing Drohes about (like the ouer-flowe of manie waters) they boare him to the earth, and tooke away from him all meanes of resistance. But Bertran so couragiously withstood them, that whoso toucht him, never after had sence of touching. Infinites hee slew and wounded; at length retiring by degrees, he reconected a payre of stayres, that ascended vp into a chamber, vp which hee went: and whosoever entred shold pay a lyes forfaite. There remained Bertran peaceably for a little time: the whilist that Drohes was brought to the Pallace, where he was disarmed: whom Mermont at the first sight knew exceeding well, and said: *Drohes, now thou beholdest thy mischiefe, and life hath no longer indurance: yet we intreate thee, tell vs what Knight is he*

that

## the historie of Meruine.

that beareth the Armes of Publa, for whatsoeuer he bee, his life is forfaite for his euill doings. Trayterous King Mermont ( said Drohes ) thou hast adiudged what belte to thy selfe appertaineth, who hauing received holy Baptisme in the house of the Divinest, fally forswore thy owne Royaltie, baser than the basell abiet vnder heauen. At those reulings, Mermont cried, *a payre with him, and cut off his head, vntles he make knowne his confederate in this mischiefe.* When Drohes saw there was no meane left him, but either to acknowledge Bertran or denie himselfe, hee said, *Stay, and I will name him vnto you.* Then calling his voyce, that every one might understand him, hee said: *Princes, it is the most wise and absolute valiant Bertran the sonne of Gautier, whose conquests stretch far beyond these Clymates, and whose death the infants vnborne hereafter shall bewaile if he miscarie.* When Butor had heard his words, hee commaunded him to bee strongly imprisoned: which was done. Then the Kings consulting together, Mermont saide: *My Lord of Minor, now remaineth vnder your arrest Prince Bertran, so famous for his valure, and renommed for the discent of his roiall pedigree: it behoues your maiestie to be most circumspet, because at this instant you haue in thral the triumvitate of vertue, the iij. famous floures of knighthod meaning Meruine, Bertran and Drohes. These words when the beautifull Singlay heards, shee whipered vnto her owne thoughts, and swore by Mahomet, that if her power were powerful, there shold no euill befall prince Bertran, more than the burden of her best loue, because his valure was more than euer her eyes had seene before that instant time. Whilist thus she was talking to her thoughts, all the princes and Barons went out of the pallace, gathering all the force that they could together to assayle Bertran: who hauing barcadoed and fortifid the dores of the Chamber,*

## the second part of

went with his sword to defend the windowes : where the fist that scaled them , he sent with a blow dead to the earth . Which Butor beholding , and grieved to behold , commanded to fetch faggots , and to burne the house , chusing rather losse of wealth than will : the which was perormed in an instant , the sight whereof brought the wittes of Bertran to astonishment .

3 But ere the flime tolke any effect , Singlay fell at her fathers foote , and besought the obtaining of a reasonable petition : whereunto the king consenting , she said : Then my Lord , spare this noble Christian , and unto me hee will submit his person , let mee be his gardian , and I doubt not but easly make him adoré Mahomet . Daughter , said the king , thou art gracious in my sight , and thy suite is graunted : and if it be possible , bring him to honour the shrine of our Prophet . Joy would not let the virgin stay to be ceremonious in thankes , but she went to Bertran , and perswades him to lay away his armes , and yield to her , who had undertaken for his safety : she iewing the daunger otherwise of his fortune , and the pittilesse regard of fire when it preuailed : adding to her wordes private teares , the witnessesse of her secret god meaning . When as Bertran had beheld Singlay , and sacrificed her beauty , vertue , and maiestical carriage , when he had noted the gracious aspects of her eies , and the loue-enticing pitie of her countenance , immedately he was inamoured with her perfections , and with honourable swetenesse returned her this aunswere . Madame , so sacred is the beautie of thine heauenly eyes , that euen me and my heart thou hast taken prisoner : well maiest thou comand me , whom thou hast inthrallled , and would God ( were the time so gracious ) that not here but in France I might doe you service : but sacred Madame , though my case be desperate , yet doe me a fauour for chas-

ritie ,

## the history of Meruine .

ritie , tell me whether my companion be dead , or breathing with the living ? Faicte prince , quoth she , he liues without hurt , though without freedome , and is in my prison , where your selfe in peace shall liue . if you submit to my mercie . Bertran at this conquered with Beauties Dzatorie , gaue by his sword into hit siluer hand , protesting that no feare of death made him yield , but onely the commandement of beauty : to which beautie and her pittie he surrendered his life and fortunes . Bertran now unlaced his helmet , and put it off whose former labour had raised so chearefull a blood in his face , that Singlay esteemed him singuler in euery perfection , and Loue , ready at her elbow , doubled her wounds , and redoubled her affection : wherefore she saide : Come yong prince and follow me , but I pray you speake to my father gruely and humbly ; so shall your thraldom be lesse streight , and I more able to doe you seruice . Hee consented to do what ever she would commaund him : and thus they came before Butor , whose first salutation was , that immedately hee should lose his head , if hee fell not downe and adoré Mahomet : and Bertran enraged gaue a reply contrary to his promise , saying : The threates of the damnede diuellish pagan in the world should not make him forsake his God , nor thinks one reverend thought of their false man-deceiving and diuellish protectoř . When Singlay heard him speake with this spleene of malice , she wept bitterly , fearing lest her father ( who was subiect to passion ) should subscribe his will to her Loues furerall : which to prevent , she came and desired her father to leave argument , and to referre him to her , whom hee doubted not but quickly to change from his puritie , and make him a religious Marazan . Daughter said the king , I agree , but be you watchfull lest hee escape : for wee haue had too extreame trial of his valure . With virgin reuerence she thanked his Maiestie , and shortly with carried Bertran unto her prison ,

## The second part of

prison, where Drohes was hugely perplexed with tormenting, and bound hand and foot with feters: but soon she took them off, and having them both in her custody, like a bondslave to her thrall, sweetened their servitude with her service. But letting them passe, we will speake of Gautier, who all this while was before Minor, continuing a siege against it the space of 14. yeares: but all was to bothelesse purpose, for hee lost many and gained nothing, the city was so impregnable. Wherefore holding a Councell, it was thought expedient to raise theyr siege, and returne backe unto Montment, which they did, burning with fire before they went, the fourre straight passages of Minor: and that was all the reuenge they had for 14. yeares trouble. Great was the hast Gautier made to come to Montment, where he had left his vertuous wife Claretta and Mathaburna: but when he came, hee found all his hopes overthurned: for in his absence the cruel king Gorbant had bin there, taken the towne, put Claretta to death, and Mathaburna too, had not faint womanish feare made her forsake her God, and fall once againe before Mahomet. Beside, she did one other deede of great ilnes, that after was a torment to her: and that was by the means of Mordant, she trode vpon the Crucifire and the Image of the virgin Mary: for which with this curse she was punished, That she should commit high treason against her son Orient, which she did: for when his wife was delivred of seuen sons, she made them away, and perswaded her son she had brought forth seuen dogges; for which the Ladies life was hazarded, till God the reuealer of trueth, making the trueth knowne, Mathaburna was burned deservingly, as you may reade in the historie of Godfrey of Bulle. But leauing those latter deedes, we will againe retorne to our purpose.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. IIII.

1 How Gautier raised his siege from Minor, and came to Nubia, where he repaired his army: 2 how from thence hee came to Luternia, where hee found Jacob, who discoursed the fortunes of Montment; 3 How Gautier went before Montment, and retooke it againe by meanes of Jacob.



Antier and his Armie went before Minor, and marched to Nubia, where he selected out ten thousand choyce men to repayre his losses. At which time (with great humblenesse) Huon of Burdeaux tooke his leaue of the King, and departed to the great griesse of all the compaines: and of him woe will speake nothing more at this instant.

2 The King at that same time departed from Nubia, and came to Luternia, where he reposeth himselfe the space of fourre dayes: during which time Jacob the Marchaunt came unto him and saluting him with a most piteous and searefull countenaunce, saide: Sacred Lord of a holie Linge, what shall become of vs most miserable creatures, sith the valiant Meruine is not home returned? Alas, alas my Lord, Fortune hath oublid her fortunes vpon vs: for in these last two yeares of your absence, the fatal King Gorbant of Damaria (who was ouerthroned before Damascus) and Bandus, came and layde Siege before Montment,

## The second Part of

Montment, haue taken the Cittie, put your Highnesse wife to death, and conuerted fearefull Mathaburna to her former religion. When Gautier fel these thunderboltes strike vpon his soule, and the death of Claretta rained, both he and his sonnes fell into a great agonie of discontentment: bowing to God and their soules a depreuengement for that monstrous murder; and so for ih with march-ed towardes Montment. But Iacob (leaving behinde) assembed together loure hundred Christians, whom he conducted after Gautier with such hast, that he ouertooke him before he had fully got sight of Montment; which instantly they had entred without resistance, had not a certayne Pagan espied them: who running into the citie, gaue king Gorbant warning of their appoach. He (upon the first notice) mustered all his barons together, and issued out to meete the Christians, who then were within a league of the towne walls.

3 The Pagans being ordered in battell, said amongst themselves: Alas, alas, these Christians are come to theyz funeralles: for sith Meruine is dead, it is impossible for them ever againe to see a day of conquest. They were to the number of an hundred thousand, and thus quartered: Griffoy bare the ensigne of Mahomet, and had thirtie thousand, King Bandus had other thirty thousand, and Griffoner with a regiment to second him; Gorbant with the rest went before. The Christians had ordered themselves, though not so huge, yet full as strongly: and thus Gautier, after incouragements to his sonnes, put spurres to his horse, and gaue the first charge on the Pagans, and the first he incountred he bare dead to the ground. the second he cut off by the head, after him an other, and another, and desirking til g. fel by his sword before him. At this began a clamorous noise (greater than thunder from heaven,)

## the history of Meruine.

men,) and the battell was mightily confused. Gorbant if his armes had beene excellently imployed, his vertue in valure had inherited alittle better than excellent.

But letting his ded passe, we will speake of Iacob, who solewing Gautier with foure hundred Christians, and seeing the fearefulness and hugeness of the battell, said vnto his souldiers; Gentlemen, this day it behoueth vs to be most circumspect what we take in hand, you do see the rare mightines of the battell, and the equalitie of puissance: let vs then advise our selues what way is best for our generall profit, which (in my concept) is this, Whiles the two armes are thus equally busied, we will assaile the towne now utterly vndefended, and making our entrance there-in, put man, woman, and childe to the sword, that will not fall downe and adore the name of Christ Jesus. To this (with clamours) they all agreed, and forthwith entred the Towne which was left vngarded, and beganne to put to the sword all with whom they incountred. But the fearefull people sone rendred to mercie, and accepted a second baptisme. Then Iacob went to the castle of Turgon with his followers, where he found Gnyda and Barrant her litte sonne, surnamed the Cruell, and Berea: to whom Iacob said, Madame, great and infinite are the mischiefes that hang houering ouer thy head, if so sone thou hast for-gotten prince Meruine, and renounced the Christian true lawe of saluation. Ha Iacob (said Mathaburna with a weeping face) chide me not, for in my heart I adore nothing but that true God of my saluation: what else I haue done, this life (which onely I loue but for his loue) hath with carefullnesse drawne me hereto. You make me prouid qd Iacob, with these words: know then, I haue taken (with these my followers) both the towne and this castle: wherefore I will leauel two hundred to gare you, and with the rest returne to the great battell.

This

## The second Part of

This said, he tooke his leane, and (after safe order taken for the towne and Castle) he returned to the tumult, where he shewed himselfe to be a most resolued and courageous gentleman, whose resolution when Gautier sawe, he commended exceedingly, with promise of great honours. My Lord, saide Iacob, my beginning hath beene better than my proceeding, for I haue taken both the city, and Turgon. Wherefore if you doubt your successe, you may make your retracie therein, for it is your owne assured. When Gautier heard this he daunced for ioy, and in that place created him knight, kissing his cheeke, and praying for his endlesse good fortunes. Iacob so prouid with these honours, that the first pagan that he met he sent dead to the ground, and then rushing into the heart of the army, made wondrouz destructions: which king Gorbant beholding, enraged he ranne against him, and gane him such a blow, that he felled him to the earth: by means whereof the good Iacob was taken prisoner, and now came the battell to the extreamest hazard, for the Pagans being an hundred thousand, and the Christians but twelue thousand, the greater number pynailed, wherefore Gautier commaunded a restraint to be sounded, and so retired into the citie: at the sight whereof Gorbant tooke his haire and was madly incaged, not leauing to assault the towne on each side, but in vaine, for in his despight it was strongly maintained. When as armes and fury was laid at rest, Gautier went to the palace, where reposing himselfe he made inquiry for Iacob, but not any could tell of him or his fortune. God God said he: shall we lose that good knight? is it possible that vertue should so sone vanishe? and with that hee shed teares for affection. This while Guyon went to Guyda, and taking her by the hand, said, Faire Lady, how comes your fortune to haile you into this coast? and whose is this infant you beare with you? Ah Guyon said she, it is my son:

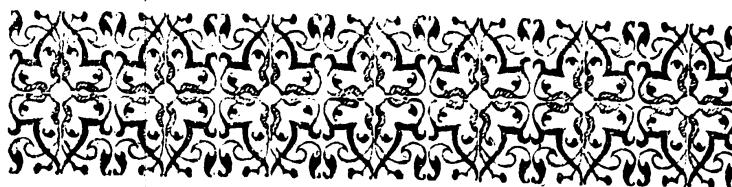
but

## the history of Meruine.

but I pray you, how doth your brother Bertran? O he was mightily false to me at Damascus, when leauing me alone he esteemed moze his sword, than mine honour, for hatefull reuenge whereof I instantly married king Gorbant his greatest enemy. Thus she discoursed her aduentures to Guyon, whilst her husband and Griffey without the city, stood tearing their haires for their losses. After some consultations held, they sent for Iacob, and tolde him that if he would go to Montment, and persuade Gautier to send him forth of the city his wife and yong son, he would deliuer all the chyssian prisoners that were that day taken. Iacob glad of these words (for he mightily feared death) said, willingly I will perfrome thy desire, so I may haue sufficient pledge for the trueth of thy promise. Then Gorbant called Bandus, Griffey, and Grifoner, and sent them for hostages of his word: so they came into Montment, and finding Gautier in the pallace, Iacob deliuered the message of Gorbant, which was most welcome to Gautier, who deliuered to Iacob, Guyda, and Barant, and detained the pledges for his returne, who comming to Gorbant with a comely reverence, deliuered them to their ierd, who on the other part deliuered vnto him all the Chyssians that were prisoners, whom he brought triumphantly into the citie, and enfranchised the hostages, who solewynely swoze by Mahomet, never to raise their tents til they had once againe made themselves commaunders of the Cittie: but their boyles were witnessess against them, for Gautier night and day so souldier-like defended the towne, that all their assaults proved utterly frustrate: and so we will leaue a while to speake moze of them, and returne to Bertran and Drahes, whom we left imprisoned at Minoz, and had so continued thare yeres, during which space they were by the beautifull Singlay both regarded, fauoured and esteemed, having their desires accomplished as sone as they could desire,

## The second part of

desire, so mightily did she loue Bertran, and so willing she was her iuel should make it manifest, onely their escape that could not be iuanted, so great was the enuie of the nation against them.



### CHAP. V.

Of the gallant life that Bertran and Drokes led in Minor. 2 Of the Tourney which was proclaimed for the loue of Singlay, 3 Of the priuate wonders Bertran did.



Younly, and euен in the height of contentment liued Bertran and Drokes prisoners in the citie Minor, seruiceably attended on by Singlay, and a Lady of hers named Adain, whose secrete exceeded the priuatest coniecture. Singlay was the loue of Bertran, and Adain the loue of Drokes, for whose sakes they effected whatsoeuer could be desired. In this same time there arrived at Minor an Ambassadour from Montment, who reported to Mermont, the taking of his city by Gorbant, and the losse of it againe to Gautier and his sy. sons, which when he understande, he went to Butor, and held a councill how they might recouer it: and in thend agreed to crave aid of all the pagan kings at that time suruiving; which they did, and gained infinites, amongst which came one gallant Gentleman the sonne of king Belmarine of the age of eighteنه years,

## the historie of Meruine.

yeares, who brought with him eighteنه thousand, and had to name Baham, exceeding wise, and highly renowned for deedes of armes, and feates of renowned chivalrie, he was mightily inamoured with the beauty of Singlay, and demanded her in marriage, but shee neglected his suite, ha-ving no other thought, but what she borrowed from the most excellent Bertran. But Baham not omitting any thing that might inflame the coldnesse of her affection, cau- led a soleinne tourney to bee proclaimed before the chamber of his heartes mistres the fairest Singlay, to the end that shee might beholde his prouesse. Whither resorted many redouited pagans to the iusts that were in the hon- or of Singlay, the whildest Marant her euer-hating bro- ther tormentted his thoughtes, with busying them to find out the reason, why she disdained a man of so god a perfec- tion: and in the end concluded, that of necessitie. Shee, either loued some pagan prince, or some christian, for shee was a woman, and women will loue, and no doubt but shee was in loue. With that Bertran entred into his mind, who then was his sisters prisoner: so that shee swore by Mahomet it was so, and no otherwise: wherefore vpon the day of the tourney the traitour priuately hid hunselle in his sisters chamber, not seene of any one.

2 Euen now were all the Pagans arm'd that came to that gallant spoile of honour, and all the Ladies flocked to the windowes, to the end they might beholde the aduen- tures, amongst whom Singlay would not consort her selfe, but saide, for that time her chamber should be her scaffoldes thither she went, and thither she brought Bertran and Drokes, to beholde and laugh at what her selfe derived: no son- ner was Bertran in her chamber, but taking Singlay in his armes, he cast her vpon a rich embrodereed couche, where he made loue rich with the richel of loues pleasures, and saidee

K

Goddesse,

## the second part of

Goddesse that guide st lones wold in my bosome, let the combat of our affections equal or surpaſſe the pagans conſlict, for we are his knyghts and his absolute champions, they without, but shadowes of londly ceremonies. This ſaid, he lockt her in his armes, and with kyſſes and thole delights that I ſcarde kyſſes, kyded till they both were conquered. Drokis on the other ſide was not behind with his triumph, making Adain bluſh and ſweare ſher was by loues power conquered. Alas, alas, at this whiſle they little imagined the traitour Marant to be in her chamber, who like a dumbe miſchiefe lay and noted all that paſſed between them. Now hauiing done dalliance the Ladys went to the windowes to behold the iuſtis, and the two knyghts beſtide them, cryng ay me to others vertues, till ſuch time that a Herault at armes ranne cryng vp and downe the field that Belmarine Baham had vanquished all commers, and to haue no equall in the deedes of knyghteſhip. When Singlay had heard the king at armes make this proclamaſtion, ſhe ſmiling ſaid to Bertran, Looke what a gallant prince I haue refuſed for your loue, drawing vpon me the wrath of my father for neglecting his offer, whose equall for chivalrie liues not betwixt this and Brandis. Bertran to this ſpeech made no reply, but the aide of Adain, who for Drokis loue would haſard any thing, he withdrew him ſelfe, priuately gote armour, and an excellent horſe, on the which being mounted, hee trod to the place where the iuſtis were ſolemnyzed: whoſe firſt approch Singlay ſeruently noted, and caſted to Bertran, but Adain tolde her he was gone to his ſolitary chamber a little troubled in heart, intendyng ſome houres to giue repoſe to his viuquiet: at that Singlay turned her ſweete ſpeech to Drokis and ſaid, See faire knyght what a comely champion is newly entred the Lists, beleeue me, this person promiseth wonders, but his bad furniture ſaieth hee ſhoule be pnyze in vertue, beleeue me

## the historie of Meruine

me, I maruell whence he came. Madam (ſaid Adain) that beſt knew the aduenture, the fouleſt Muskle hath the richelſt pearle, and a Diamond ſet in yron, is moare preicious than a perle in golde with the curiouleſt workemanſhip, the pooreſt of his Armes may couer a vertuous ſpirit, and hee may pnyze moare redoubted than the beſt in the aſſembly, therefore doe not blame, but attend his fortune. Neither do I, (ſaide Singlay) yet give me leauē to ſmile at the attempt, for his bad furnished estate muſt neades cauſe laugher.

3 As they were thus talking Baham of Belmarine ſet forth himſelfe to the iuſtis, but would not runne againſt Bertran, because the bandes of his furniture was an aſſurance (as he thought) of no deſence, and his death no pnyce of honour: yet notwithstanding Bertran thrust himſelfe foaward: which Boham ſeeing ſaid to his companion, there is no remedy but I muſt incounter yond ſilly halle armed creature, wherefore I will onely overthrow him from his horſe, and that ſhall be his penaſce. Which ſaide, he put ſpurrers to his beaſt, and Bertran on the other ſide mette him with ſuch an incounter, that lighting vpon Bahams beaſt with his launce, he ouerthrew horſe and man to the ground backward; at which the Ladys laughed exceedingly, and Singlay ſeeing the blow, laughed much more than any other, and calling Drokis ſaid, Tell me ſweete knyght how ſhall I take this to ſee a poore halle armed vilaine ouerthrow my loue, hee that hath protestid theſe Armes in mine honour? Madam (ſaid Drokis) hee is a vilaine that vilainitye effecteth any thing, but this poore halle hath done it with ſuch vertue, that of force he muſt be a Gentleman: and ſurely hee that with ſuch poore accomplitments brings to paſſe ſuch wonders, what would he doe were hee royally adorneid in compleat perfection? Tis true, tis true ſaid

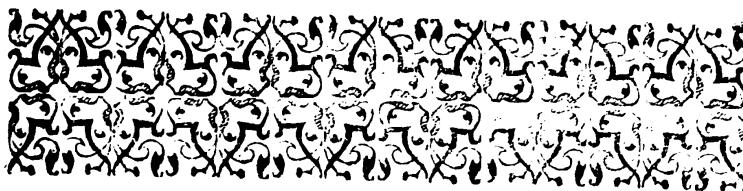
## The secord part of

(said Adain) who drawing Droles aside, reported to him, that it was Bertran and the occasion of the aduenture: at which Droles changed colour and was somewhat grieved, so that comming to Singlay he humbly desired her that he might be arm'd, that if any mischaunce should befall them, that he might be able to defend her, she i.stantly consented, and he was arm'd, bowing if any crosse chaunces befal Bertran, he would be his partaker. Bertran by this time had ouerthowne thre Kings, and Baham that was remounted, whome Bertran twice had ouerthowne, swoze by Mahomet the third time to trie his successe against the poore arm'd creature: which doing, Bertran ouerthrew him with such vehemencie, that with the fall he brake one of his legges asunder, leaving him on the ground dead to al mens imaginations, so that the Heraulcs with one voyce cryed the poore arm'd knight is the most valiantest knight in the world.

When Singlay heard this honourable exclamation, she desired Adain to call Bertran to behold the poore Knight: he replied that he was at his rest, and it wold offend him to be disturbed. Powle whilste every one was busied about Baham, Bertran departed out of the listes vnpertayned of any one but onely Adain, who went unto him and helped to vndarme him, and brought him to Singlay, who fearefull of his health, asked him how he fared. Madame saide he better than before. I am glad (said she) but I am sorry you were not here, where you might haue stene a man all in rusty broken halse-arming armour, that hath borne away the prize, and wounded Prince Baham. How Madam (said she) wounded Prince Baham your Ladishipps loue? What, he with whome not any may compare? O miracle! By my life ( saide she ) it is most true, Baham was thrice most villainously ouerthowne. O Madam ( saide she ) the toyall habite maketh not the rich man,

## the historie of Meruine.

nor rich Armes a valiant Knight: and those that oftenest shew the light of countenaunce, seldom haue the sunne of Spritte. This doe I speake to shew, that an unlikeli man vertuous, is worthier than an adozned dull spited. After manie other speches uttered, they rose and went unto the prison, and the traitorous Marant, when he sawe his time issued out of the chamber, and reported thoe things which after returned to such mischefe vpon himselfe, that it was the ende of all his glorie.



### CHAP. VI.

1 How Marant accused his sister Singlay, 2 How Bertran made the Pagans beleue hee wold renounce christianitie, 3 How he vndertooke to combate against Marant.



Marant was no sooner come from his sisters chamber, but he went to the pallace where al the pagan Princes were, and after humble cruentie done to King Butor his father, he tooke him aside, and discoursed al that had passed betwixt his sister & Bertran, or Droles and Adain, and the whole occurrents of that dayes action. Marant saide the king, shall I assure my selfe this is true thou reportest? Wher that he swoze by an infinite

## the second part of

number of oathes, that it was most true; and in the midde  
e<sup>c</sup> h<sup>s</sup> protestations Adain passed by that way, and heard  
him, which bred no little sorrow in her soule, who com-  
ming to Singlay, tolde her, that both they and their loues  
wer<sup>z</sup> no lege than dead, for all their actions were knowne  
to the King her father, by her cruell brother damnable Ma-  
rant. Singlay at the first was vehemently pensive, but in  
the end, taking resolution to her, grew carelesse, and gaue  
her incouragement, saying, I haue advised my selfe of a  
meane for our deliuerie, I will presently goe to my bed,  
and with tormenting agony compialne my selfe and say,  
that my brother Marant wold needes make wracke of  
mine honour and desoure mee, which for that I wold  
not consent unto. I will affarme he hath sore wounded, and  
shamefully intreated me; and to make it the more credible,  
I will all to be soile my face with bloud, and you also shall  
doe the like, affirming, that because you came to my suc-  
cour, therefore he inflicted this extreame iniury. Madame  
(said Adain) better cannot beeinvented. Then Singlay  
(taking a strong thre bound her fingers and prickt them,  
making abundance of bloud issue forth, with which she  
gained the excellencie of nature, putting in practise all her  
determination. And then she sent Adain to they<sup>r</sup> Loues  
to aduertise them thereof; charging them, that if the pa-  
gann did examine them, they should faine to denye their  
Christian Religion. Adain did all her commaundement,  
and the Knights consented: then she returned to Singlay,  
who lay in her bed all blodie, faining those infinite gestures  
of sorrow, that euen Sorrows him selfe was deceaneed with  
her languor. Adain seconded and kept the burden to her  
distemperature, making so iust a concord, that no eye could  
discerne their dissimulation. By this time King Butor  
(incensed by Marants speaches) had called the Queene  
Mother, and told her of all what he had ever heard; de-  
siring

## the historie of Meruine

bring her to goe unto her Daughter and trie her, and re-  
turne her answere. The Queene (sighing at these spea-  
ches) went to the yong Ladies chamber, whom shee found  
almost scantieke with sorrow, and brought almost to talke  
idly with the tediousnes of weeping: when shee beheld her,  
shee wondred and desired (without fiction) to know the true  
cause of her torment. Ha Madame (said shee) the cause  
let me conceale, for twill mad both you and my father: A-  
las, alas, one of the neerest of my Kinne is the wounder of  
my fortune. At this, the Queene grew more destrous, and  
commaunded her to report the truth without feare. Ma-  
dame (said Singlay) be not then offended, and I will speake  
what to none (but your selfe, I durst speake: and then shee  
reported from poyn<sup>t</sup> to poyn<sup>t</sup> as before shee was determi-  
ned, How her Brother Marant had inforced her, and  
saine her honour, at such time as the Justes were held by  
Bahan, and at his departure swore by all the Gods, that  
it were exlaimed, his sword should make vs for ever speak-  
ing. To you Madame haue I opened the wound of my  
shame, for Gods sake bee carefull: and god Latie Mo-  
ther with all spredē sende mee Calyph the Arch-flamine to  
confesse me, for death (I know) is my portion, and I de-  
sire to be purifid, though not vnlained: and as shee thus  
spake, there flewē headlong from her heart such profound  
heart-wounding sighes, that the chamber echoed her la-  
mentations. The Queene (calling to minde the absence  
of Marant at the Triumph) instantly gaue credite to her  
speach, and swore he shold dearly rue h<sup>s</sup> villanie: wher-  
fore going to the King, shee omitted nothing, but doubled  
her reprents with most vehement persuasions of likelnes.  
The King seemed hardly to beleue, that nature to it selfe  
would be so monstrous, and therefore went with Mernont  
to her chamber and beheld her; where shee consoled so  
miserable with so manie sighings, as was able to pierce a  
wall

## The second part of

wall of Adamant: yet the King charged her of counteraffiting falsehood, and that her deceipt was but to smother the villanies she practised with the Christians. At these words shee pouzed a floud of teares from her eyes, and bade his Maiestie think as he pleased: but Mahomet (in whom shee affested) knew her innocence. At this the kings departed, and sent for Marant, whome they accused of this high treason against kind and nature. But he with vehement oaths denied it, offering to combat against an heast of men that durst accuse him; auerring beside his former accusation to be true, for his eyes had beheld their villanie: and that also hee desired to maintaine by sword or combat in the presence of all his Princes and Barons. This resolution was commited, yet was he committed to prison, till Singlay was examined: who beeing sent for once more before the King, was charged of her former guile: and demanded why shee entertained the Christians into her priuate chamber. To which she replied, Deare father, it was your Maiesties pleasure that they should be in my guard, to see if I could perswade them to renounce their opinions, and become obedient sustainer of our Lawe: to which end I often sent for them, and argued in priuate, and haue now fully effected your Highnesse wil, and brought them utterly to denie Christianitie.

2 Butor (whom these speeches made more then well pleased) expelled wrath from his countenance, and said; Fairie Daughter, if thou hast done thus, thou hast wonne my loue for euer. Then forthwith he sent certeine Knights to fetch Bertran and Drohes before him, which they did: and as they went, at euerie protestation they made, they call Mahomet their God to witnes, and the pagans hearing them, choated for joy of their conversion. When they came into the Pallace before King Butor, they fell on their knees,

## the history of Meruine.

knees, and Bertran first said; Mahomet our great god defend your Maiestie: know then sauced King, that I am come a reporter of a great myzaile, which our God Mahomet wondrously hat<sup>h</sup> revealed, and thus it is: This night in a vision appeared our hly prophet Mahomet unto me, and in this manner spake: Bertran, I do greatly reioyce in thy conuersion, be strong in thy faith, and continue my exalter: for reward whereof, when thou risest, goe thy way unto Butor, and say that I commaund him to give thee in mariage his faire daughter Singlay, whom the traitorous Marast (during the time of the Justes) most dianably woulde haue ranisched: and behold, that thou defend her against his traitorous practises with those same armes, with which in the tourney I brake the leg of Baham, and ouerthrew him three seuerall times to the earth, because (by his pride) he aspired to enioy Singlay. Tell him also, that before I departed, I ouerthrew all whosoeuer set that puissance against me, whiles that the whole multitude cried: Honour to him in the broken armoar. This being said, invisibly he departed: and what he gaue me in charge, I haue deliuered to your Maiestie. When Butor had heard him he said unto Mermont: By Mahomet Bertran hath said most true, for it could be no other but Mahomet that this day so wonderfully preuailed; let all things be as hee will, for it is our great gods pleasure, who (I know) is incensed against Baham and Marant.

3 When calling Bertran, hee asked him if hee would combat for his daughters innocencie: Most willingly said he, and chiesly when my God commaundeth, who will be a rocke of defence in my iust quarell. This said, the king went to his daughter, and embracing her, he bade her revive her spirits, for she should haue justice, and if her

## The second Part of

brother were faulty, he shold die like a traitor: for he preferred Right before Nature. Then was Marant brought forth, who vtterly denied the crime wherewith hee was accused, desiring no other proue but his sword and Justice. The place of batteil immediately was appointed, and they commannded to be armed: wherefore Bertran besought the king, that he might haue his armes and sword deliuered him, which was done to Bertrans exceeding god contentment. Who in his priuate soule made a solempne prayer to the true God of life to aide him, and not to be offended at his disguising, seeing that with Infideles faith is least to be regarded. Now when hee was at all points prepared, Drohes said; Courage Prince Bertran, for two such as Marant this day shall not preuaile against thee: he is perfectly knowne a traitor, and his treason against Meruine is yet a testimony: let that be thy hearts quarrell, and that shall giue thee honour with victorie. Tis true, tis true, said Bertran, and I haue wriit it on the table of my memorie. Then mounted he on his horse, and Drohes deliuered him his launce: then he frotted to the Lilles, where he soond Marant armed at all points, and expecting his comming. At whose approach Bertran descended, and asked if their causes were iust, or no? And they both answered they were. Then the trumpets sounded, and they charged each other; Marant brake his launce, but Bertrans blowe came with such force, that he strake him from his horse to the ground backward: then, having finisched his carriere, he turned with his sword in his hand against Marant, who as yet was not risen, and said: What Marant, wilt thou indure any more of this batteil? O no, said Marant, who then was newly risen: yet I pray thee heare what I shall say. Speake quickly then saith Bertran, and I shall attend thee. Prince Bertran, said Marant, I pray thee euer for mine hono:rs sake, faine thou hast seene our God Mahomet, and that

## the history of Meruine.

that he commaundeth a truce betwéene vs, and thou shalt haue both my life and power at thy commaundement: then will I make thy peace with the King my father, thou shalt espouse my sister, and I will live and die for ever thy bus saile. As I live, and by Mahomet, quoth Bertran, most willingly I will, if thou wilt so farre preuaile with thy father, that he will deliuer Prince Meruine from his monstreous infortune. Alas answered Marant, it is vtterly impossible, for the prison wherin he lives is such yea and so strange, as there is not any so subtil or fortunate, that can approch it, vniuersally they speake with his kæper, who is no man but an ayrie diuell, with whom onely my father hath conference touching his imprisonment. When Bertran heard him say thus, he whispered to himselfe: By heauen these pagans are all diuellis, therfore I will not take one of them to merrey: whereupon lifting vp his sword, and thinking to dispatch the traitor, he staled his hand and descended from his horse, lell Marant shoule slay him under him, and Marant in the meane space, got the tuncheon of a lance, thinking therewith to thrust him thow: but he failed by meane of Bertrans returne, who with his sword gaue him such a blowe, that hee felled him to the ground, and then leaping vpon him, he disarmed his head from his shoulders, so that his soule forsooke her unhalowed manson: and in that same moment, both it and his body were miraculously borne thence into hell to the earefull terror of all the beholders, who concluded him to be execrable and damned. This finished, Butoz came and embraced Bertran, gaue him Singlay to wife, doing him all the hono:rs possible: Mermont did as much, and all the other Pagan princes, making a festiuall for his conuersion in religion. Great banquets were made, and Bertran was set at the Table next to the king, who vaunted, that now there was not a kingdome in christendome which hee would

## The second part of

would not conquer. Then kissing his daughter, he blessed the time of her generation, saying: Now she should be the Empresse of the world, for her husband with twenty thousand gallants he would give him, should presently goe conquer France. She was prou'd to heare those speaches, yet neither in shew nor in words would expresse it; but protested, that if it had not bin Mahomet's commaundement, she never would haue married. Then was Caliph the Flamine called for, who incontinently married them, according to the old prophane customes of Mahomet.



### CHAP. VII.

1 How Bertran and Drohes (vnder the pretence of Paganisme) brought fortie thousand Pagans before Montment; 2 How the most part of them were there confounded and put to the sword.



Thus (vnder the veile of infidelite) Bertran and Drohes abused the Pagans, who verely imagined, that they had renounced Christ Jesus: but it fell out farre otherwise, as you shall understand. When Bertran had espoused Singlay, doubt not of the Royall solemnities, which continued for the space of eight dayes: at the end whereof, Butor deliuered to him fortie thousand resolved men at armes, and desired him (with all expedition) to goe aide the mightie king

## the history of Meruine.

king Gorbant, who had for three yeares lated seige against Montment, but could not penaile. To this he willingly concidensed, swearing withall, that he and Drohes also would exalt Mahomet, where yet never any God was adored: but my Lord, quoth he, I humbly beseech you before I goe, let me see the prisoner Meruine, and on my life I will also convert him againe to our true religion. My sonne quoth Butor, desire it not, for it is altogether impossible, because, if I doe graunt, it is my death; in that I haue promised so much to the diuell Mutafier, who daily ministereth vnto him, and effecteth what is fit for his beeing. Then said Bertran, I will no moze desire it: so ministering vp his men, he departed from Minor, Singlay, Adain, Drohes and Mermont going with him, hoping of that which was without hope; I meane to regaine his citie. So continuall was their march, that now they are come to Blandis, where they rested themselves that night, in which Drohes asked Bertran, what course they shoule take to destroy those dogges, those unbeliening infideles: Instantly said Bertran, I know not, but we will priuately gue my father newice, and hee shall come to our succour. Then Adain heard them who was neare to king Gorbant, he said: Princes write your Letters, and vpon my sole I will safely deliuer them, and in this maner: Know that king Gorbant is mine buckle, and I haue bin right deare in his sight: to whom I will declare that I am sent in priuat to understand the state of the christians in Montment, and how that you are comming by sea to succor him. I know he will believe me, and (without contradiction) let me passe carelesse of any thing. Then more, I will perswade him to march forth to mee and receive you: which done, I will passe into Montment, deliver your letters to your father, and make my returne (with all sped) backe againe. They all highly commended the stratagem and

## The second Part of

and dispatched her away onely with one Attendant, who was a Pagan. All whatsoever she promised she performed, and abused Gorbant with false toy, went unto Gautier, deliuered the letters, and was royally received. Then did Gautier goe with his thre sonnes to counsaile, and thus concluded; That they would send to Gorbant, and faigne to deliuer vp the towne, on condition that they might haue leaue quietly to passe into Fraunce: making him believe their poverty was so great, they could no longer indure warres fatig: which when he understandes, he will fall to his regardlesse humo: . Then shall Bertran and Droles cause great Feasts and Banquets to be made: during whose Cupps and Triumphs we will with all our powers issue forth; and if fortune favour vs, make an end of our bad fortunes. This agreed vpon, they deliuered it to Adain, who taking her leue departed. In the meane space, Gautier dispatcht other letters to Gorbant, who had then (with all the roiall triumph could bee inuented) received Bertran, Droles, and the other Pagans. At which feast, Guyda tooke her sonne Barant aside, and said; Deare sonnes will thou not accuse me, and I will tell thee a secret: which saue to thy selfe, shall never be knowne to any creature living: By Mahomet Mother (said the youth) I will not. Then know, said she, that this famous prince Bertran, whose sunne-light staineth all the galkants about him, he euene he, and not Gorbant, is thy father; he begot thee of me at Damascus, long ere I saue king Gorbant: and for leauing me in that estate, I tooke displeasure, and wedded as thou seest. Madame (said Barant) he is a vilaine, and hath done most damnable: but if he believe not in Mahomet our God, ere long time I will be his murderer, because he shall not scandal me with the name of a bastard. Turning these speaches Adain came and saluted King Gorbant: after her Gautiers Ambadour, who presented

## the history of Mervine.

presented his Lords letters. Which when Gorbant had read, he cried, Pagans reioyce, for before two dayes be compassed, we will be commaunders of the citie: Gautier offers to deliuer it, so he may safely reterne into France, but it is not our pleasure, for neither he, nor any of his adherents shall escape unpunished. Thus did king Gorbant boast, who little knew the news that Adain brought, who priuately deliuered a letter vnto Bertran from his father: which when he had read, he shewd it to Droles, then they two agreed to arme themselves vnder their dublets, which they did, and then went into king Gorbants tent, desiring, that so the happines of the news there might be a festiuall proclaimed, and solempne banquets and Jubilie made throught all the campe, with proclamation, that for that day no man, on paine of death, should put on an armour, or weare a swerd, but consecrate all his deeds with mirth to Mahomet. Gorbant thought this motion conuenient, and soorthwith sent his edicts and proclamations abroad, which were fulfilled.

2 Gautier the holy Daye all this while was within Pontment preparing his host in a readinesse, onely stayng the returne of an espiell, whom he had sent to bring him word when the Pagans were set at dinner: Long it was not but he came and had him in the name of God issue forth, for the Pagans were all set and triumphing, carelesse of all manner of daunger whatsoeuer. This being saide, Gautier left the citie, having in his army but onely tenne thousand souldiers, which was all his remainder, and made so great hast, that they entred the Pagan campe, to the dismay of their aduersaries. Gautier with his swerd naked entred into Gorbants tent, and came close to the table where Bertran sate, who when he beheld his fathers armes, ouerthrew the table, and catching a battle axe in his

## The second part of

his hand which was there, he strucke king Gorbant such a blow betwixt the necke and the shoulders, that he diuided his head from his body. At which sight all the pagans were amazed, but Griffoner of Damascus cried, Bertran this day, by treason, will be our destruction: and then taking Barant and his sister<sup>1</sup>, he fled away with twenty attendants, whom we will leue to their flight, and returne to the battell, which begunne in Gorbant's tent, and so generally through all the campe, in which scarce a Pagan or Sarazen survived: mighty was the resolution of Bertran, and glorieous to beholde his valure, whom none durst encounter, and from whom none escaped. Mermont, who before time had lost his hand, seeing this uniuineable miserie, cried, Woe and alas we are all betrayed, ha louely Singlay, thou and this Adain are mistresses of our sorrow. Now by the heauenly virgin, quoth Singlay, thou hast but thine owne deserving, for by treason thou betrayedst vs, and, than thy selfe there is not a greater traitour: remember it is now twelue yeares since thou diddest mocke Christianitie, to which I am conuerted, and most fally betrayedst the most exquisite Meruine vnto a tormenting hell that hath no ending, record that mischiefe, and confesse what thou deseruest. As he was thus speaking, Bertran rushed in vpon Mermont, and saide: Willaine, now shall thy life render me account for the losse of the woldes pagan, excellent Meruine, and then with his ax he clauie him to the shoulders. Griffoy this space accompanied with many Pagans, fled to the sea for safety, whilist the Christians ranging in their tents put all to the sword that remained. In briefe, in this battell was slaine above an hundred thousand Pagans, & but thre and twenty christians, and they of no other estyme than priuate souldiers: the christians also took v. hundred prisoners, so that of all the heathen army escaped but four thousand, which fled away with

Guya

## the historie of Meruine.

Guida that sorrowed most extremely for the death of Gorbant her lord and husband, and had no contentment but the escape of her yong sonne, who sware in his infancie by Mahomet, that the time shoulde come he would be reuenged of Bertran, both for this, and his mothers antient abusess, which indeed came to passe, for he liued to be both the death of his father, and all his famous vncles. But let that passe till after opportunity of discourse: now it fell out, that after this discomfiture, the Christians did returne to the Pagans pavillions, where they found infinite riches, which were so equally diuided, that the poorest soldier got the title of a rich Merchant. After this they went into the city, and made great feasts and triumphs: then in eschewall maner was Singlay, Adain, and all the other prisoners baptizes, and Gautier took an oath to pursue his enemies, even to the walles of Damascus, but he failed, as you shall see in the next chapter.

### CHAP. VIII.

1 How an Ambassadour came to Gautier, who brought him word, that the Emperour Charlemaigne had destroyed all his country of Denmarke: 2 How Drobess went to deliuer Meruine: and how Gautier arrived at Maiance.



¶ the first part of this history yee may remember, how discontentedly Charlemaigne departed from Meruine and Gautier, for the hate of Huon of Burdeau, whom Gautier then amongst his sones maintained, and how he bowed in despight of Gautier, to make all Maiance and Denmarke.

## the second part of

Denmarke lament that euer they knew him. Whiche indeed he did, so mighty was the malice then raaigning in him. Wherefore the noble men of that country dispatched an ambassadour unto Gautier, to giue him to vnderstand of their troubles, who arraing at Montment, and comming into the pialace where he found his king, he fell vppon his knees, and after such holt reverence as belongeth to his estate said: O y sacred and emperiall soueraigne, knew that the nobilitie of Maianc by me salute thy Highnesse, and giue thee to vnderstand, that the great Charles of France, in despight hath ruined thy countrey, and banished from thy court all thy roiall countrymen: wherefore by me they intreate your Maiestie, with spedde to returne and stanch the wounds yet stekly bleeding else hereafter it will be too late, and thou utterly dispossessed of a kingdome. When Gautier had heard this message, he rowzed himselfe, and with a crowning gesture repied, As I breathe, I will not sleep out this iniurie, but come with such an hoste as shal make Charles dearely repent it: and then he caused proclamation to be made through all the citte, that every souldier on paine of death shold in the moyning be ready to be imbarkeed for Maianc, which was performed; then he called Iacob, giving unto him the gouernement of the city and Iacob Mathaburn, a leauing a sufficient garrison, and taking an oath for his frust and fealtie.

2 To be briefe, every one in the morning was ready to depart, but only Drahes, who refused, and said to Gautier, that he had sworid never to manage other action, or embrase one quiet thought till he had found the meane for Mervins deliverie. Whiche when his loue Adain heard, she said, she also in that would be his companion. But he ganestwoode her, saying the paine would be too mighty. But she would not be refused, though he iudged truely, for she was slaine

by

## the historie of Mervine

by Griffoy. as you shall heare in the stori. Gautier seeing their resolues, gaue them leauue, & so departing from them imbarkeid himselfe, to whom the winde was so prosperous that he arriued in safetie neare to Maianc, where he found Dion of Pantuell his neare kinsman, who though he had laine long sick, most ioyfully received both him and his sonnes, declaring what euill Charles had done since his comming: all which Bertran bowed, or to mend or to revenge. Then sommoned they all their friends and kinred to their ayde, amounting to the number of twentie thousand, all of the line of Oger, which with those that Gautier had brought, made the army thirty thousand and better, then duke Dardain aduised them to send ambassadours to Charlemaine, to request restitution for the wrongs before passed, which if he refused, the to pursue them with revenge euuen unto the Loure in Paris. To this aduise they accorded: yet Bertran would not leauue, but marched day and night til he came within the sight of the French army, executing as he went all whom he found traitorous or false to their country, intending to raise the siege which Charlemaine held before the castle of Pantuell: but a traitour of Maianc vnderstanding it, went before, and aduertised the Emperour: which as soone as he vnderstode, he called the duke of Dampmartin Naymes, and the rest of his nobilitie to councill, in which consultation, duke Naymes perswaded all peaceable conditions, laying before their eyes the profites of their concord, and the ruine of chyssendome by their fatall warrefare, withall telling the emperour, that the most of his owne barons were descended from Gautier's pedigree, and in nature would aid him before he should mincary. Charles grew enraged at his words, and swore by the God of paradise to putt all those to a shameful death that offered to stire their cite before two moneths were expired, or aided him not to lay waste that fatall countrey.

## The second part of

Thus spake Charlemaine, but the god Duke Naymes left not his persuasions, till there was a truce taken for 9. yeares : during which time sprung a new warrefare that wounded all Christendome, by Barant surnamed the Cruell (whom Bertran begot of Guyda) now 5. yeares old, and by the pagans, that crossed the seas, came into Christendome : of which Barant made a piteous slaughter house, in that none was able to indure his force, as you shall heare hereafter. In the mean space we wil to our former occurrents



### CHAP. IX.

- 1 Of the great battell which was betweene the Emperour and *Gautier*, in which *Charlemaine* was taken prisoner : 2 How *Loys* the sonne of *Chartes* came with a great power against *Maiance* to reuenge his father.



¶ *Two yeares expired*, for which the truce was afore taken, betwixt the god emperor Charles and *Gautier*; by the meanes of traiterous conspiratoris, which were about the Emperour new seeds of discontentment were sowne, and he commannded all his barons to attend him to *Maiance*, of which *Gautier* was aduertised, who desired all his friends, to be hedefull of their euils. So he parted the emperour from Paris, vowing never to returne into France, if he brought not *Gautier* and his sons to their funerall, and soone arrived within two leagues of *Maiance*.

## the historie of *Meruine*.

ance. Which when *Gautier* by his espialles vnderstode he mustred his friends, and marched to mete his enimies, whose power was diuided into tenne battalions: and when hee was commen within sight of them, after speches of incouragement, brauely they charged ech other, and came to handy blowes, *Crueltie* & *Terror* comming from hell to learne more misery than had bin seene in former ages: great was the resolution of Charles that day, who slew tenne in a breathing moment, none escaping whom his sword blesed. *Gautier* on the other side was not behind for true magnanimitie, neither Bertran or any of his brethren, who like mad men made hanocke of all with whom they incountered, anone Bertran met with the emperour, and with a basse axe which he bare he stroke him such a blow on his helme that he fel him from his horse, and that with such heauy vertue, that for all the gold of the earth he was not able to rise to regaine libertie, but force perforce was taken prisoner: which the Duke of *Britaine* seeing, he cried, *Courage great king, and thou shalt soon be redemeed*, with that hee and all the loures of *France* assailed Bertran, who so brauely defended himselfe, that in that conflict hee slew the Duke of *Britaine*. Many times was the Emperour remounted and unmounted, so infinite couragious were the dwre brethren. *Gautier* their father in an other part of the field made many horses maisterlesse, and many maisters sensesse, so fortunate was his sword, and so lucky his resolution: this battell continued exceeding long, christians against christians, selfe law against selfe law, and colours against colours. The King of *England*, who came in the ayde of *Denmarke* that day did wonderous deedes of knighthode. But king *Charlemaine* frantike to see his losse, ranged here and there till he mette with *Thyerric*, the sonne of *Gautier*, whome with joyous his god sword he stue at the firste encounter. Bertran lion-like afrighted

## the second part of

frighted the amazed flockes of the French men before him; onelie to finde Charles, and no other; whome so soone as euer hee encountered, he felled from his horse with a blowe, and there presentlie had slaine him, if his father who was alwayes exceeding wise had not withheld him, saying, it was a la most capitall, to slay the brauest champion in the world, or touch the blood of the holy annoynted. Wherefore taking him prisoner, with a strong gard they conueied him to Maiance. The Frenchmen no sooner saw their king surpized, but they betooke themselves to flight. At which Gautier rejoyced, and disdained to pursue them, but selfly, with went to Maiance, where he made processions and triumphs for his victorie, and the taking of the famous Emperour Charlemaine; to whom (being before him) he saide, Sacred and high esteemed king of France, innow, tell are the wrongs which I have indured by you, and iustly hath the King of Kings inflicted this deserved shame on your dishonour, both for these iniust actions, and for exiling (without cause) the iewels of thy kingdonie from their native countries: Know therefore, thou shalt never escape from this chaldome till thou hast made me a sufficient restitution, and wepi thy wrongs from thy soules bitterness. By my Crowne, sayd Charles, I will never doe it, and if thou dost not deliuer me, thou art vnjust, because thou art swoyne my liege man and subiect: As thus they were arguing an esquier entred into the hall, his eyes blabbred with weeping, who turning himselfe to Gautier, tolde him of the death of Thierrie, which Bertran no soone heard but heaving by his battell axe, he thought, and had slaine King Charles, but his father catching him in his armes, withheld him, saying; sie sonne, sie, why seekest thou to kill the god Emperour, or to staine thine honour by killing in colde blood? Thy brothers death was the chance of war, and his graue is honourable, where thus to kill the Emperour

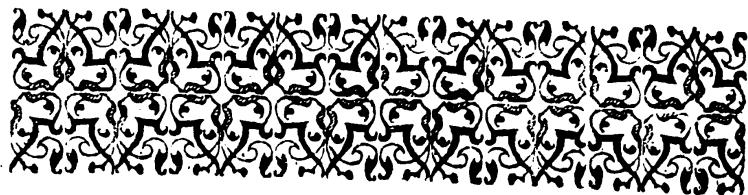
## the historie of Meruise

you were ignominious and slaughterous. Yet this I doe protest, I will imprison him during his life, if better perswasion counsell me not to the contrary. This being said, king Charles was inclosed in a strong tower, and with him sone and twentie other prisoners. Which done, Gautier caused Thierry to be solemnely interred, and all the rest that were slaine with him in the battaile; the whildest Duke Naymes and those that escaped by flight, repaire d home to their owne countries.

2 The Duke Naymes as soone as he entred into Paris, reported to Loys (the Sonne of Charlemaine) the imprisonment of his Father; who (from the torment of his angrie spirite) protested to dye, or reuenge his Fathers dishonorable indignitie. To which ende, he dispatcht his Commaunds through all the Citties of France, and mustered an Army to the number of an hundred and fifty thousand resolved Soldiers, with which he departed from Paris and came to Depe, where he tooke shipping and made for Denmarke. Where we will leaue him, and speake a little of Barant (surnamed the Cruell) who by this time was growen so mightie, that not any Horse had abilitie to sustaine him; and yet the tyrannie of his mind did exceed the monstrousnes of his bodie, for he caused his owne Mother to be beheaded, because (in a discouterne humour) shee calld him Balkard: at which inhumane slaughter, many repined, but he slew them eaerie one that did but give a shew of displeasance; so that through his terror, all the Pagans became obedient to his will. With a great Armie of men he went before Montment, and won it both by assaile and diuellish art: for the same night that he slew his mother, the damned Fiend Murasier appeared vnts him, and made a covenant with him, that he shold never (for any thing whatsoeuer) renounce the law of Mahomet; to which hee wil-

## The second part of

lingly agreed: for joy whereof, Mutafier triumphed and said he shold be the destruction of all Christendome, promising that he shold never die by the hand of any man having been nurst by the milke of a woman. This promise made Barant proud: for he imagined that there could not be any infant brought vp without the milke of a woman; wherefore hee held and reputed himselfe ever invincible. When Barant the Cruell had taken Montment, hee put Jacob to death, and all those that trusted in the true God of all things, whom Mathaburna again denied, as ye shal heare hereafter.



### CHAP. X.

1 How Barant, surnamed the Cruell, departed from Montment with three hundred thousand souldiers, and passed the Sea towards Maiance: 2 how Charls and Gautier made a peace, and ioyued against the Pagans.



When Barant had brought all Montment to his subiectiou, he went to the Wallace, where he found the most beaftfull Mathaburna, and demaunded of her, whether she would adorze Mahomer or no. By god Lord (saide she) I never refused him, for he hath alwayes bene deare in my heart, and his temple haue I reserved in my bosome.

When

## the history of Meruine.

When Barant beheld with what a comely grace her speeches were delivered, and noted the excelling beaute, that reflecting from one eye to another, he became mightily enamored & in loue with her fauor; so that not able to smother his desires, bluntly (like a will-wowing mouer) hee said; Madame, your excellencies make mee wonder, that never before belueed there was such a thing as admiracion: in brieue, I loue you, and if you will let mee espouse you, I will make you Queene of France, and give you the World for a Dowrie. By Lord (said shee) I humbly thanke you, but no Espousalls shall bee so welcome to mee, as the Conquest of France, and the death of Charles who hath been the ruine of so manie of my kindred; and on whom incessantly I pray for some strange vengeance to fall, so incessant is the hate I beare him. Faire Madame (said Barant) you are exceeding wise: and here I promise you before Mahomer, whom I cal to witnes of my word, within this shott space, I will either give him into your owne hands to take vengeance of him, or dye in attempting your pleasure. I beseech you my Lord do so, said Mathaburna: whose heart was cleane of a contrarie opinion, wishing rather to him and his confederates worse torment than Hell fier, before that Charles (in thought) shold bee discontented. Thus shee whispered to her selfe, and then speaking alowde, saide; Yet haue I one other suite to your Lordshippe, which is, if you can finde out a Knight whose name is Meruine, bring him to mee, that I may redenge my selfe of a notable wrong he hath done mee: and then will I not onely bee your loue, but your wassall, and you shall wholly dispose of mee. Thys Request he swore vpon his life to perorme. As these speeches were uttered, there came into their presence a Sarazen worthy of Denmarke, who for feare had receaued Baptisme, that falling on his knees, reported to Barant all

the

## The second Part of

the great battaile , and the successe which passed betwixt Charles and Gautier , and of the Emperours imprisonment : telling him , that if his Highnesse were in Fraunce , there was no let , but that at his pleasure he might conquer the whole Nation , sith ciuill Dissention had broken the shewes of their Concord . At these words , Barant was so much ouerjoyed , that regardlesse of any manner of thing , he would needs kisse Mathaburna : but she repulsed him , saying ; No man vnder heauen should touch her , vntill she were espoused , according to Mahomets lawe . This dissaine did very much irrage him , so that through his passion , he had strucken her , if a Lord of his counsaile had not withholden him , whom he right highly esteemed : which Lord chid him for his rashnesse , in offering to kill her whom his heart so much loued , and one of so wisse and diuine beuour . Amend my Lord quoth he your fault , and for he, ry shame aske pardon . At these words Barant went vnto her , and demanded if she would forgiue him . Yea my lord quoth she , when you bryng Charles and Meruine to be my prisoners . Thankes gentle Lady replied he , and forthwith he caused a trumpet to be sounded , and sommoning his army , departed towards Maiance , where by the aide of diuels and furies he arrived at the port tenne leagues from the city : where he beganne to sacke , burne and destroy all the Countrey as hee went , shewing himselfe a monstrous diuelish tyrant , and no man . The poore Countreymen that sawe their houses burning , and their wifes and children dying , ranne to Gautier , and told him of the hideous ruine which the Pagans made in the Countrey , laying it walke like a forsaken wildernes , their number being greater than any eie could account . These amazing words raised the blood from Gautiers heart into his eyes , and thence distilled in droppes of salt water , so that tormented with sodaine feare , he called for his Lords and went to counsaile :

## the history of Meruine.

counsaile : during which consult , arrived before the Citie , Prince Loys of Fraunce , and his French army , who did pitch their pavillions close to the walles , being at that time ignorant of the pagans commings .

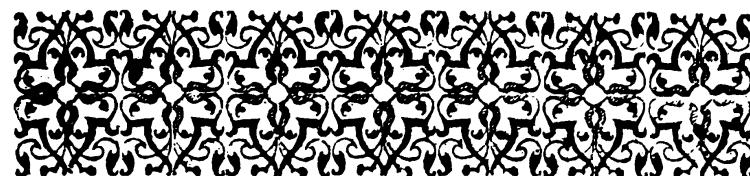
2 It was thought most conuenient by Gautiers counsaile , that the Emperour Charles should be deliuered , that with his aide he might helpe to beate backe the Pagans : which was performed . And Gautier with honny-dipped words intreated the Emperours fauor , saying ; he thought the heauens were displeased with their disagrements , for that within those dayes ) there were arrived in his kyngdome aboue thre hundred thousand Pagans , who had already conquered Mequa , Ierusalem , Babylon , and all the Countries before time , by Meruine so famouly conquered : and that now his fortune was in the ballance of Mischance or Honor . When Charles had heard his words and marked his humblenes , then pitty expelling all rancor from his piteall , he embrased Gautier and his sonnes , and tooke a solempne oath of perpetuall amity : for to whichever , all the day rung with clamours . and everyone triumphed above measure . In his deene , Charles walking on the citie walles , sawe from the battlements , the tents of the braue French men : which knowing , he saide vnto Gautier ; I beleue that Loys my sonne is in yonder army : for if I be not deceived , I see the shining of his colours . It is most true saide Gautier , and I am very glad of his comming , for his aide is a welcome hope to our doubtful aduenture against these damned Pagans , whose Generall is none other but a mostall diuell , as farre from pitty as pietie , and both to him utterly unacquainted . Then Charles calling for his horse , accompanied with the Counte of Dampmartin , and the Counte of Anjou , he rode forth to his sonnes tents , where after roiall entertainment , he declared the peace

## The second part of

peace that was concluded, the reasons, and the generall god that should thereby be gotten. Then he, his son, duke Naymes, and the rest, returned into the city, whom Gautier and his sonnes met in most solempne order, and conducted through the streets, every one doing honor to Charlemaine: and so brought him to the paltace, where with vnspeakable ioy they reposed. After them the whole army marched, and were received and lodged in the Cittie. Then the Kings and Princes went to counsaile touching their weighty warres affaires: in which it was concluded, that the towne should be virtualled and manned for many yeares, so the tediousnesse of siege should not preuaile against them. Also it was agreeed, that Prince Loys and Bertran with twenty thousand should lie in an ambush, that when the Pagans had pitched their Tents before the towne, they in the dead of the night should assaile them; and either ouerthow or disseuer the army. All they conceived fit, they put in practise: and the ambush was laid in a great wood, by which of force the Pagans must passe, who about high neare, came marching in such invincible troops that the wayes hardly could containe them: In the last ranke of all marched a king whose name was Gamare de Monturne, and king of Iuerne the great: with him marched a gentleman of his country, who was almost all naked, and the king himselfe had his head and feete bare. These carried in their hands boughs which they usid in battel, and no other weapons: their strength is their swiftnes, for they runne faster than hares when greyhounds pursue them.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. XI.

How Bertran, his Brethren, Loys and the other Christians issued vpon the Pagans: 2 the deaths of all the famous Christians except Loys; 3 of the Battaille betwixt Barant the cruel, and of Bertran of Denmark.



After this naked nation was marched by, (which were the rewarde of the battaille) the Christians mounted on horseback, Prince Bertran being the first; who (holding his batle are in his hand, charged the Iuernoyes, and in abreath space put them all to the sword, except those which (to the amazement of the Christians) ranne not, but flied to Barant, and cryed; Turne thee Prince, turne thee, for the Christians are amongst vs. At this, Barant turning, commaunded to sound Alarum, and with an hoast of Elephants (whose very weight made the earth tremble) answered the charge of his enenies. Now were the Christians and the Pagans mingled together, and beganne a Battaille, huge, fearefull, and wondrouses uncertaine. Famous Prince Bertran (like a Tyger in a flocke) made hancke of the Pagans, and (at the first encounter) slew a kinman of Bahams, whose legge hee brake at Pins; Three other Pagans at one instant charged prince Loys and vnhorsed him; who being nimble, rose againe, and miraculously defended himselfe with his sword: yet had hee been

## The second Part of

been taken Prisoner, but that the Countie Dampmartin rusht in to his Rescue, ouerthowwing thzee pagans at one blow. Bertran beholding this tumult, brake the Raukes that stood before him, and came to Loys; yet the Pagans were so abundantly infinite, that they kild his horse vnder him: at which though he greeued, yet was he not abashed, but comming to Loys, bad him bee of good courage, for he would not leaue him till he saw him newly remoumented. At these words (with his axe) hee slew a pagan, and taking his horse (in despight of his Enemies) mounted Loys. Then increased the fiercenesse of the Battaille, where the pagans dyed so fast, that the ground was couered with their bodies: at which, Barant (named the Cruell) chateu most wonderfully, and protested to burie himselfe there, if he buried not this dishonour in the glorie of the Christians.

With this hee deuided his Armie, and inclosed his Enemies round about on euerie side: whose hearts (lift vp to heauen) cried to their Divine helpers for succour; being but a fish pond to the great Ocean of their Aduersaries. Guyon and Florion (missing Bertran) raunged about, and found him on foote with the Count Dampmartin and prince Loys: to whom they said, that all their lives were forfeite, and there was no way to saue their honours but death, beeing now inclosed on every side. Which when Loys heard, he said; Ha Charles, this day shalt thou bee sonlesse and conforlesse. But Bertran (into whom fear was afraid to enter) incouraged him, and said; Why prince thou art well mounted, feare not then, for this day we will be Conquerors: with that he slew another Pagan King who prest naers him, and vpon his horse mounted the Count of Dampmartin, saying he would furnish himselfe presently, which hee did by the death of another Pagan. Then he desired his Brothers, not to forsake, but followe him

## the history of Meruine.

him, for that day he would be such a lustie Woer, that Conquest should not chuse but wedde with him. They swore to do his desire, and then the battaille was more dreadfull than euer it was: so by this time the Christians had slaine thirtie thousand of the best appyoned Sarazens, at whiche sight Barant grew mad, and rayloe both against his Men, Mahomet, and Jupiter.

2 This done, hee slew like a Tempest amonge the Christians, and ouerthrew all with whoni hee encountered: an hundred he brought dead to the ground without respite, from whose sight the Christians fled as from the diuell, calling on God, and blessing themselves with prayer and crosses. Glorie was the sight to behold, for they could flye no way but into danger. so strongly they were inclosed; in somuch, that of twentie thousand whiche they were in the beginning, now there remained but ten thousand, and they vnable to endure Battaille, so vnresistable was the prowess of Barant. Whiche bloodie confusion when Bertran sawe, his manly heart relented, and honorable teares issched from his neuers before so staines Beauer. Loys was much more heartely sorry, and millions of times wist himselfe within the Walls of Paris: wherefore he said to Bertran; Ha Prince, this is our doomes-day, and here must all our names take their buriall: O, knew my royll Father our misfortune, I know we sholdin a trice be rescued. Why Prince (replied Bertran) will you goe to him, and see if you can procure it? Willingly (said Loys) if it were possible to passe. To passe, said Bertran? Why plucke vp thy spirits and doe but onely follow me, and I will make the way easie enough for thee: which indeede he did, putting all the Pagans to death that were obstacles or lets in his way. When hee was got through the hoste, and put Loys into the wood he said, Faire prince, command my souls loue to

## The second part of

to the emperour Charles, my father, and the faire vnforunate Singlay my wife, and tell them, this day I haue bound my selfe, either to see the vller ruine of paganisme, or to die in defending our most sincere and holy religion. Faire prince ( aunswered Loys ) I will doe thy message, but I had much rather thou wouldest goe with me, because this day the field is no field but a slaughterhouse. Not to be deified ( said Bertran ) will I forslake my brothers, and so taking leaue, Loys departed towards the citie, and he againe to the battell, raging vppe and downe till hee found his brethen, who were most mightily oppresed, till by his prouesse he redaemed them: which no soner was done, but Barant the Cruell, with Entrant the god stwoord of prince Meruine in his hand, which the devill Mutafier had deliuered him, and with which (in that moment) he had slaine tenne noble christians, came and opposed himselfe against Bertran, who with his battell axe gaue him such a blowe on the helmet, and with such power, that slipping downe, cut the horse necke in sander, bytng Barant ashamed to the earth, who before never had felt a blowe of such puissance, so that calling to Bertran he said, I beseech this christian, tell me what thou art, whose vertue I wonder at. My name ( said Bertran ) was never bid for, feare of any pagan, know then, men call me Bertran of Deamarke: When Barant heard this, he knew he was his fater, wherefore he commanded all his souldiers to retire from him, because he wold with him trie fortune in singlecombe. Which when his men had done, Barant said, Prince Bertran, you remember your imprisonment at Damasens, your loue to Guyda my mother, whom traiterously you forsooke and left with childe of me who am your sonne: and you can not forget your bowes: now shall all they, nor you, haue auable to deliuer you from death, unlesse you doe fall downe and aboare our great God Mahomet. When Bertran

## the historie of Meruine.

tran had heard him, and beeing enraged with so vtile ambition, he saide: Thou art not my sonne, neyther will I euer acknowledge the begetting of so prophane a Devill: and with that lifting vp his axe, he stroke him a maruellous great blowe, which beganne the fearefull combat betwix the fater and the sonne, in which was shewed the wonders of resolution, whome in that fight woulde leaue, and speake a little of the other christians who were all slaine save thre and twenty, which yet survived, though mightly wounded. Guyon amongst the rest was deadly wounded by Barant, yet injured as if he had bene immortall, till the bloud falling into his eyes depryned him of his sight, yet notwithstanding, he woulde not leaue fighting, but stake here and there, killing all that came neare him: in the end, he assailed his brother Florion with such a merciless blow that he fel him downe to the earth, who in falling cries, Ah brother Guyon, thou hast slaine me whist I regarded not thy fury: woe and alas cried Guyon, what haue I done: sweete brother forgiue me, for the bloud of my woundes hath closed vp mine eyes, and I did not noȝt could not behold the, my selfe am likewise wounded to the death, and mine houres are shortring. This he saide, yet woulde not leaue fighting whist he had breath to breathe a minute, but late firmly on his horse till there was left alius but tenne christians: then came a pagan and rame his latice whereto Florions body, who said, Now is my death certaine, yet will I not die unrevenged, and with that stroke the Sarazin that he claued him to the girdle, saying, Thus dieth the sonne of Gautier, himselfe by himselfe revenged: then fell he downe, there being at that houre but syre breascht christians, whose names were these: Guyon that had his arsches wound upon him, and his sight forslaken; Florion that likewise was at his last breathing; the Count Dampratin; the Duke Dartaine; the Duke of An-

## the second part of

sow; and Bertran that then with his sonne Barant was combating, the former sive indured long, but in the end, they were all pulpatched, so that of twenty thousands there was left but only one, and that was infortunate Bertran.

3 Admirable was his and Barants combatte, all the ar-  
my admiring their resolutions, and bowing amonst them,  
sleue never to part them till thone of them had left his life:  
very variable was fortune betwixt them, the sonne now  
triumphing at the fathers decaying, and the father imme-  
diately smiling at the sons misfortune. so long lasted this  
battell, and so muchunnaturall was the confit, that the  
day ashamed, so likewise the heauens; then camme the pagans  
and fetcht to zches, and made such fire works, that the night  
was as bright as the sun-shine, halfe of which they spent in  
deadfull and doubtfull wars: the sonne offering the fater  
merry, if he would adoré Mahomet, the fater proffering  
to the sonne forgiuenes, if he would renounce blasphemous  
Mahomet: but both of them being of contrary resolutions,  
they fell afresh to their fearfull and fatall combate: and Bar-  
ant wold if he conquered his fater, that he wold make  
himselue monach of all the whelc world. As he was thus  
protesting, Bertran gave him a blowe on the head, which  
brought both his knees to the ground: but starting vp so-  
dainely againe, he sent it backe with such a violent requi-  
tall, as mightily vexed and enraged Bertran, that thinking  
at one stroke to finishe the confit, he gathered al his strength  
together, and stoke him so, that he broke his axe in pieces,  
so that left without defence, he closed with Barant, whom  
by his strength he ouerthrew; but the Macons ranne in  
and pulled Bertran so, that Barant got upon him, and gave  
him divers mortall blowes. Then Barant pulling on his  
helmet he saide, Father, now be wise, for this is the last  
moment, in which your life is forfeited, you will not

## the historie of Merlin

adore Mahomet, and renounce that God which ever thou  
hast esteemed. Taitoz said Bertran, and thou bastard son of  
a desiled curtezan, thinkest thou death can make me deny  
my Sauour? thou art deceived, thou art deceived. When  
Barant saw his constancie, he drew forth his dagger and  
stabbed his fater four times, who cried, thou onely great  
God of Isael and Sauour of the world, forgiue mine ex-  
tors, and receive my soule into thy bosome, with that Bar-  
ant stukke him through the heart, and so he departed this  
life. Then stood by Barant and saide to his army, Behold  
Princes, now ought you highly to esteeme me that have  
slaine my mother and my fater, to the end I might make  
mighty your religion, therefore take by this dead body and  
bear it with me, to kill the heart of old Gautier with con-  
suming sorrow.



## CHAP. X II.

- 1 How Loys came to Maiance and reported the wofull estate of the Christians, and the sorrow Gautier made for his sonnes. 2 Singlayes sorrow, and the meslage Barant sent to Charles, together with the answer.
- 3 How Barant slew one of the messengers.

¶ The young prince Loys, who in the battell had  
received many great wounds, was now re-  
turned to Maiance, and with a very heavy  
countenance (the first report of misfortunes)  
came unto the Kings pallace, where he did

## The second part of

finde the Emperour Charles his father, who looking on his sad looks, asked what was become of the chrisitian army: for (said he) thy looks are heauy and vuncomfortable. Tis true my lord (said he) and that would hold me longer, but falling to the ground, he swoyned: at which Charles cried out with amazement, whereby Gautier and his nobles came forth, who recovered Loys, and laid him on a bed, who calling his father and the rest about him, declared al what had passed in the battell during the time he tarried, and how the whole army of twenty thousand were slaine by the pagans. O peace yong prince (said Gautier) kill me not with thy wordes, flatter my death a little, and say not that all my sonnes are slaine. My Lord (said Loys) doubt not but they are al slaine, or before I left them, we were all inclosed round about, so as it was impossible for any to escape, onely my selfe had fortune, which fortune, I begd from Bertrans sword, who with very much danger to himselfe helpe my way before me.

2 Gautier hearing this, tooke his garments, rent his haire, and wringing his hands, made such piteous and lamentable lamentation, that the aire resounded with his outcries, and all that sawe him, became partuers of his heauiness. Pet a great degree aboue the degree of his periske woe ascended the immortall afflictions of the most excellent Singlay, Bertrans unhappy wife, whose teares are impossible to be described, and to whose woe none can finde ane quall epytheton. O heauens (said shee) O time, O hard hearded prouidence, wherein haue I offended, that to my life is adiudged an endlesse torment? Speake, speake you adamantine destinies, why haue you robbed the world of her renouws, and me of my glorie? O that I had time enough to raile on you, or that by railing the time of your powers might be expired. Ah miserable wretch that I am, leſt all forſorne

## the historie of Meruine

Sorrows and desolate, who now shall sustaine mine anguish, or pitie my mourturings? Alas, none but Death: come then gentle Death, I meane not the slow foted death which attend the footsteps of nature, but the grim Death, sodayne death, the page to vntoward mischiese, come thou and bee my comfort, thou which hast thoughts wings, come quickly, and be not tardy, or thus in despight will I pull thee into my bosome; and with that taking a knife which hung at her girdle, she had stabbed her selfe to the heart, but that a squier of Bertrans standing by did holde her, chiding her desperacie thoughts, and perswading a more temperate resolution: she seeing her will broken, swoyned, and reswoyned, so that by the helpe of the Ladies, she was conueyed into her chamber, where she reposed. Generally ran this sorrows ouer all Maiance, and every one wept the losse of the princes. During these dayes of moarning, the porters that gaured the gates s: the cittie grew amazed, for on a sohaine they sawe a numberlesse hoste of Pagans begitt the towne round about, and pitch their pavillions in the face of the Citie: the newes whereof they shortly carried to the sad king, which hardly was delivered, but woxd was brought there were two Turkes royally moun- ted, who craved access to deliuer a mesage from their myghtie Lord Barant the Cruel: they had entrance gran- ted, and were brought to the pallace before Charlemaine, Gautier, Naymes, and the twelve Peeres of Fraunce, where after some prouide reverence one of the Turkes thus spake, To the King Charles of Fraunce my Lord and Maister prince Barant the Crull sendeth this mesage, If thou like a botarie bare foted, thy handes bound, and a corde about thy necke, accompanied with Gautier in like manner, come and fall downe before him, submittting your selues to his mercie, and renounce the God whom you worship, that then your peace shall continue; otherwise, he wolweth ne-

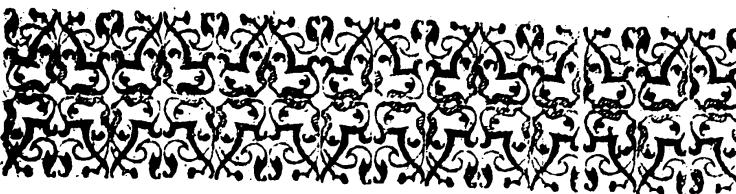
## The second part of

uer to depart from this country till hee haue made it more waste than Grunland, or the frozen mountaines in Scythia. Pagan ( answered Charles when hee had heard the message ) if thy Lord doe that, I shall be sozie, but tell him from me, that to morrow I will give him battell, and feare not, but before night to make him ranne headlong into the sea for his safetie. This is all, and this deliuer.

3 At this the pagans departed, and came to their Lord Barant, who seeing them, asked if Charles would accomplish his pleasure; þo unanswered one of them, but beweth to morrow to give you battell, and in the greatest scorne that may be esteemeth your Wighueſſe threating; as for the lawe of Mahomet hee ſaide it was damned, and hee reſteemeth it baser than the baser earth hee trudde on. Villaine ( ſaide Barant ) heardſt thou him reniue our religion, and diſdeſt not kill him? By Mahomet thou ſhalt pay for thy cowardice, and at that worde hee ſtrake him dead to the ground with his pumparde. The other Ambassadour ſeeing this, ranne amongell the pagans and hidde himſelfe, ſwearing if hee escaped now, never againe to goe on any messages of Barants. Now by this time began the day to put on the nights apparel, and they went to their roſtes till the next morning, at what time they arose and armed themſelues to receiue battell. Charlemaine on the other ſide was as mightily troubled, who by the ſound of trumpet gathered his army together, and marching out of the towne, hee diuided his houſe into ſiue battallions, euerie one containing at leauſt twentie thouſand knyghtes and upwardes.

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XIII.

1 How the Christians gave battell to the Pagans, in which turmoile the good King Gautier was ſlaine, and his houſe ouerthrowne, 2 Charlemaine is forced to retire, and iſſues out the ſecond time, 3 The taking of Loys, and Duke Naymes prisoners.



When Charlemaine was commen unto the place of battell, aduiled by the duke of Naimes, hee ſent tenne thouſand of his ſouldiers backe to defend the cittie, for feare of ſome ſecret Stratagem, and then ſounding all his trum‐pets, and making a fearefull noylge, they gaue a braue charge on their enemies, crying, Saint Denis, and our right this day: and in that firſt onſet they ſlaye of the pagans almoſt an hundred thouſand; but they ſo infinitely abouarded, that the christians begannē to ſtand amazē at their numbers. But Gautier, who looked for nothing but for reuenge for his lounes deaſths, layed not at any thing, but meeting with a king whose name was Bruant. Stroke him dead to the earth after him, another, and another, and then ouerthrew his faire bright ſwoide ( his launce beeing broken ), hee cutte off king Danemons head, and then running desperatly into the preſe, hee put to death all that encountered him. This while was the good king Charles amongſt the pagans, where he killed king Feragu, and di‐

## the second part of

uers others of famous estimation, but in the end he was inclosed round on every side, where he defended himself miraculously: yet notwithstanding, if it had not beene for the Duke Naymes and divers other gallants of France, their king perforce had beene either slaine or taken, who seeing their succours, remained neare spires, and fought like a god of Conquest. Barant the Cruell was not this while idle, but lewe the Christians by two and two together, so that the most resolued in the army durst not abide him, but begame to convert retreat to plaine syng. Whiche Gautier with grieue beholding, demanded a reason for theyr faintnesse: to whom a French man made answere, there was a duell in the Pagan hoste, whose furie was not possible to be indured. Gautier desiring to see him, the French man with pure feare brought him to behold him, to whom Gautier cried, Traitor, stay, and give my sword account for thy murders, and so saying, he strucke him upon the headpiece so strongly, that the blow glauncing hurt Barant in the thigh; at which the tyrant (being highly enraged) turned and said: Villaine, thou hast hurt me, but thy life shalbe my plastrer, and at that word lifting aloft his sword, he cut off one of Gautiers hands and the sword that was grasped in it: which when the godly king sawe, spurring his horse, he overthrew both Barant and his horse to the earth; in which meane space, a Pagan contyning behinde him, gaue the Christian king such a blow on the helmet, that he claued him to the chaps, and he fell downe dead without motion. Then beganne the christians to lie here and there about the field for safety, as whiche confullion, Charlemaine lghed; and after many holp prayers agayne thrust himselfe amongst his enemies, more desperately than before: of his army was not left alive but one thousand, and the most of those syng, And notwithstanding the which duke Naymes perceiving, he perswaded the Emperour

## the history of Meruine.

tour to let a retreat be sounded: which as he was intending to haue done, one brought to him word that Gautier was slaine, so that both grieved and enraged, he flew vpon the king of Cartaria, who but then had slaine a Christian, and with the first stroke claued him to the collar.

2 The dying battell at this seemed to recover, but yet could it not continue, so weake were the ouer-maistered christians: wherefore the sunne having gotten the middle point of the heauens, Charles made a rettaine by sounde, and returned into the citie: which Barant beholding, he presently caused engynes to be made, with whiche he cast into the city Bertran, at all points so armed as he was when he lued: the sight of whom, renewed afresh bath the grieue of Charles, and the rest of the Citie. This done, with the same engynes, he did cast huge stones and rockes into the sygne, killing divers of the Burgers as they walked in the streeetes: whereupon the rest went to the Emperour, and tolde him, they had rather issue forth, and die fighting, than lie in this danger of continuall feareing, and so they then shewed what huge stones by engynes were hourly throwne vpon them. Friends quoth Charles, all your wiles shall be satisfied. And with that, he issued with all the power of the city the second time: and first assailing the engynes, they tare them in pieces to the earth, and put all these to the sword that vied them; and then making towards the army, they overthrew their Tents, and cast downe their pavilions, putting a vry great number of pagans to death in a moment. Now entred Charles into the Tent of the king of Danubia, whom he slew, and passed on with exceeding-great triumph, vniull the Pagans making an hidous cry, rased vp all the Campe: who flocking about the Christians, beganne an insollerable battell. In this firre was king Charles overthowne, and had beene taken

## The second part of

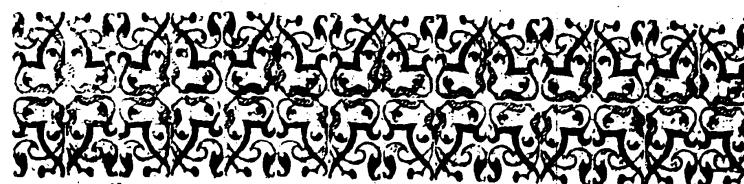
taken but for duke Naymes once againe, who in despight of the Pagans, remainted his soueraigne, and tolde him there was no other way for safety but flight: whereto which Charles did accord, and therupon retrayted towardes the City.

3 But before he could regaine the gates, his Sonne Loys, Naymes, and diuerse other Christians were taken prisoners: which when he vnderstoode, he would haue turned againe to their rescue, but his nobles would not suffer him; because they prised his life as a holie relique: and for that cause forsooth they brought him to the pallace, the most discontented King then living, whilist the Pagans themselves carried Loys and the rest to Barant the Cruell: who taking a stormy view of them, first askeid duke Naymes what he was. My Lord quoth he, my name is Tristram, a Burgess of this City, this is my Sonne, these other are my kinsmen, all at thy mercy. Yet if rausome may deliuer vs, I will give to you an hundred tunne of wine, and an hundred quarters of wheate, all which I haue ready in my house in Maiance, of which king Charles hath no notice; for and if he had, he would seaze it, and leaue me nothing. Barant was glad of this offer, because his virtualles were spent, and he had reinforced two hundred thousand Pagans, so that he accepted the ransome: yet did the Duke desire hostage for the performance of their deliuerie, whiche he had: and then went he to the Cittie to Charles, whose sorow shewed to behold him, and tolde him what was done, which the Emperor highly commended, and forthwith caused theransome to be deliuered: which when Barant had received, he sent Loys and also the rest home to the Cittie, whom Charles with very great joy of heart received, and sent backe the Pagan hostages.

## the history of Meruine.

But it happened (presently after) that there fell such a wondrouſ famine in the cittie, that they were inforced to eate theyr horses, and other Beastes of the viles loathsomeſſe: and in the end, (by extreme ſcarcitetie) they grewe into ſuch lamentable neede and miserable povertrie, that they had ſurely deliuered vp the Cittie to Barant, had not God (of his infinite mercie) myraculoſly ſent prince-ly Meruine to haue their aydour. Of whome I would ſpeake, but that firſt I muſt loyke of Drophes, who (as you haue heard) departed from Mountement, accompanied onely with his Loue Adain, and ſwore never to lend reſt to his labours, till hee had ſound meaneſſe for Meruines deliuerie, whom in all the world hee eſteemed moſt deare: of which hee gaue ſufficient ſeſſimone, as you shall heare in the Hiftorie.

Chap. X I I I.



1 How Drophes and Adain traualied ſo long in vnfrequented places, till they found out the true meaneſſe for Meruines deliuerie: 2 How Drophes combated with a Griffon for his Loue Adain.

 Drophes and Adain (after they were departed from Mountement) clad themſelues like pil- grimes, and in that humble manner on ſoſt beganne their wearie journey, to finde out meaneſſe for the euer eſteemed Meruines deliuerie,

## The second Part of

rie. So long they trauelled, till they came into a dale un-  
inhabited wood, where repaireth a certayne Hermit ( as  
was before declared ) to Drohes; with whom he desired to  
speak. So long they wandred in the wood, till at last  
they came to a delicate fountaine, where they sat downe  
to repole, and ( with such simple viands as they carried a-  
bord them ) they broke their fasts: in the middest whereof  
came unto them thre Villaines, who continually used to  
rob all those which passed by that way. The first of whom  
said to Drohes, Is this thy wife thou carriest vp & downe  
this Countrey? He is, said Drohes. And whither in-  
tend you to goe with her, quoth the other? Sir ( said Dro-  
hes ) to Saint Katherines, where our Journey shall haue  
his ending. By heauen ( replied the first againe ) I know  
thou art full of gold, which thy devotion hath got from cha-  
ritable giuers; there is no other remedie but we must bee  
thy partners: and, with that, offering to strike, Drohes  
rose lightly vp, and with his palmers stasse gaue him such  
a blow, that he sprinkled his braines about the field. The  
other two ( seeing their companion slaine ) assailed Drohes,  
who wouderfully defended himselfe. In the ende, Adaine  
with her Palmers cudgel, strake one of them behinde, so  
that she felled him to the earth: and Drohes slew the o-  
ther. When turning himselfe to Adaine, he louingly im-  
braced her and praised her femininre resolution; of which  
at that instant euen as he was speaking, he perceiued him  
whom Adaine had strukke to retiue againe: wherefore tak-  
ing him, he sayd; Villaine, thy death is certaine, vntesse  
thou telles me truely what countrey this is, and whether  
thou hast anye more consorts of this damned qualitie? He  
( whom feare of death did terrifie ) thus answered; God  
Sir, the verie truthe is, we are full fasse in all, who are  
gouerned vnder our captaigne Raoul, sometimes of Ro-  
quilon: who ( banished from France ) brought vs into these  
parts,

## the history of Meruine.

parts, where we live onely by rapine and the spoyle of pas-  
sengers. Then tell me said Drohes, which is my readiest  
way to finde out the Heremite that continueth in this  
wildernehesse. Sir answered the villaine, you must kepe  
along this way till you come to a great rocke, then turn-  
ing vpon your right hand towards it, you shall finde out the  
Hermitage. This said, Drohes tolde him thest was not  
pardonable, and with that beat out his braines with a cud-  
gell, and ther went and found out the hermitage, and knoc-  
ked at the doore, till the ancient Hermit comming forth,  
demanded what he would: Right reuerend and graue  
Sir quoth Drohes, we are Christian Pilgrims. When  
the Hermit heard they were Christians, he louingly em-  
braced them, and bade them welcome, because that he ne-  
uer had seene Christian in that place before, asking them,  
whither their journey boore them. Good sir answered Dro-  
hes, our steppes are vncertaine, for I trauell to finde out  
some meanes for the delivery of the onely excellent creature  
of the world, incomparable Meruine, who traiterously is  
imprisoned at Miroz, vnder the guard of a diuell: and for  
that cause am I come to the ( divine man ) to learne meanes  
for his restitutio[n], because Experience hath made thee to  
be wise in all things, especially in matters of verie great  
secret. It is true, quoth the Hermit, yet in this I can  
say nothing at all, but I will, and if thou be so pleased,  
send thee vnto a place where ( as I doe verily imagine )  
thou shalt understand any thing: and thus it is, Thou  
must goe into Iuda, and inquire for the Hermit of that  
Countrey, and to him tell thy desire, and he will gladly  
resolute thee; for he is a great Clarke, a great Prophet, and  
a man of greater excellencie. Drohes gaue him many thanks,  
and then ( taking his leane ) went towards Iuda: whither  
by his trauell he sone arrived, and came into the Forest  
where the Hermit liued; wherein as he wandered, he was  
set

## The second Part of

set vpon by two cruell and rauenous Beares, but in the end he felaw them, so great was his courage and resolutiō. And then they trauelled forward vntill they had found the Hermite; who (being set in the portall of his Hermiteage) Drohes reverently saluted. The Hermite required his salutation, demanding whither they trauelled: To you quoth Drohes, who are the wonder of this age for diuine wisedome: and this (reuerend sir) is the verte cause of our wandering; The onely accomplished man of all the world, and he whose presence was my life, rare Meruin my companion, hath most treacherously bene imp̄isoned in Miroz now about fiftie yeares, and onely garded by a flend of hell, whom no mortall strength can vanquish: now my desire is to know some meanes for his deliuerte, without whose redēption my life shall consume in sorrow. Pilgrime (said the Hermite) I understand all that thou seekest; wherefore, for thy loues sake, which I find to be so perfect, I will doe mine indeuoure: Stay here then till my returne, and thou shalt haue thy seeking. Then went the Hermite into his study, and beganne to coniure, till a spirit appeared vnto him, and demanded his will. Tell me quoth the Hermite, where is Prince Meruine prisoner: and by what meanes may he be deliuered? He which will haue him restored answered the sp̄rite, must goe into the Isle of Dozdon, where dwelleth an Hermite named Robaster, tis hee that must deliuer him: for it was predestinate to Meruine in his Birth, that he should bee imp̄isoned, till he were deliuered by a man whose mother died before he was borne, and that is Robaster. More of this I cannot, nor I will not report vnto thes: and then the spirit departed with such a tempest, that all the corners of the spacious Earth trembled.

Then came the hermit to Drohes, and tolde him what he had vnderstood by Magicke, giveng him withall this caueal,

## the history of Meruine.

eaneate, that when he came into that Isle, he shold be well and sufficiently armed, for that there was therin a Griffon, an invincible monſter, whose haugenelle was incomparable, and who had power to fley swifter than an Eagle, who suffred not anie to come into that Isle, but he destrooed them.

Grave father (sayd Drohes) I most humbly thankes you, and will from henceforth (for this unpeakeable and incomparabe god turne) bee both your Knight and your Beadesman. Then taking his leaue, hee and Adain departed toward the Isle of Dozdon, and at length came to a great River that descended into Dybe, which passeth vnto Miroz King Butors chiese Citie, where the Prince Meruin lay so treacherously imp̄isoned. Over this Streame (for their passage money) hee and Adain were comayed, and thence came to a little Village, where (during the tyme of their small repose) hee caused a new Palmers stafte to bee made for him of great Wattes of yron, with pikes halfe a foote in length: and then (being readie to depart) he said to Adain: Thou art so exceeding vehement thus to pursue my fates, I beseech thee (at my intreatie) stay haere till my returne. But he by no meanes would consent, saying; in all things she would be partner of his fortune: then they departed together, and came into the Isle of Dozdon.

2 Into which they had scarcely entered ere they discouered a Griffon, who no sooner had set his eies vpon them, bat hee came towards them: and first thinking to take Drohes, Drohes with his stafte gaue him such a mighty blowe as might haue felled a Lion, but hee esteemed it not: then Drohes (with one of the pikes) stroke him thorough the foote, that hee cryed extremely; yet notwithstanding,

## The second part of

Standing againe he came against him, thinking to fly away with him ; but standing in awe of his staffe, would not, but mounting aloft, fell vpon Drokes like a montaigne, and with his gripes wounded him so that he fell to the earth, and lay in a swound, till Adain cried ; *O arise my Lord, for the monster returneth.* At these wordes Drokes awaked, and holding the point of his staffe ouer his head, the Griffon durst not assaile him. Wherefore Drokes thinking in huering to kil him, he strucke so vehemently, that missing, his staffe entred more than two foot into the very ground as by no means he could get it out againe. Whiche the Griffon seeing, descended to hane borne him away: but Drokes held the staffe so fast in his hand that he could not. Adain beholding her Lord in that danger, strucke the Griffon on the wing such a blow, that leauing Drokes, he returned to Adain, and seizing vpon her, boore her through the ayre : but as the stroke laiceth, ere hee descended to the ground she was dead, so grieuously did his tallans gripe her to the heart.



### CHAP. X V.

1 How Drokes spake to Robaster touching the deliuerie of Mervine : 2 Of Malabeon of Luton Robasters father that gaue counsell in the action.

  
The monstrous Griffon when hee sawe in his sight Adain dead, hee presently denouered her, for whose losse Drokes sorrowed extreamely, and mingled with his moanes many singowings, and many bitter lamentations.

## the history of Mervine.

tations. During whiche, Robaster comming by, and hearing him make great moane, now for Adaine, then for Mervine ; he tooke compassion of his woes, and went and saluted him, saying : *god sir, I haue heard your outries, in whiche you exclaime for the losse of a wife, and a perfect friend; be comforted man, for destiny is unremoueable.* When Drokes heard Robaster hee lifted vp his head, and with humble reuerence he demanded of him his name. *My name quoth he is Robaster, who hath bin the death of many Pagans, yea and of many Christians also, for which, now doth my soule indure a mortall penance.* Drokes hearing this, amongst his woes reoyced and saide, *Ha Robaster, thou art the Starre which hast led me hither, and in the is the power of all my ioy and happiness.* Then Robaster taking him vp, for he was verie soore wounded, he presently led him to his hermitage, where Malabeon his father was, and cured him : but Malabeon went inuisibly, for such was his power, and onely he was seene to his sonne, and to none other. When time of repast came, they sate downe to meate, and Drokes smeling a delicate perfume, demanded what it was, and Robaster tolde him, that they were certaine rare waters the whiche he kept in his chamber, whiche if he pleased, he would shew him ; thence he brought him into his chamber, whiche resembled an earthly paradise, so rare was the exquisite-nesse therof, all being done by the art of Malabeon, the whiche Drokes in admiring, praised beyond all meassur, and Robaster, that tooke no small delight in Drokes tolde him he should command any thing he sawe, or wherein his helpe might doe him seruice, he vowed he should finde it most willing and ready. *O quoth he, will you not heereafter goe from your promise ? Not for the world quoth he,* Then will I take you at your word quoth Drokes, know then that for these fift yeares space, the onely glorie of the world,

## the second part of

worlde, the myzacle and mirour of Knighthode, hath  
beene by corrupt and false treason, detained and kept pri-  
soner in Minor, from which place it is utterly impossible  
that euer he shold be deliuered, except by the handiwork  
of almighty God, and your god helpe, because a diuell  
of hell is his gardian, neare vnto whom no man dareth to  
approach, so euill is his wrathfull indignation. Where-  
fore I humbly pray you, that in regard the life of Vertue  
liueth in your power, be deified in the hearts of men, for  
attributing vnto her a most happy restitution. Now I  
pray you doe you call the knight, quoth Robaster? Oh  
answered Drokes, it is renowned Meruine the sonne of  
Oger of Dermarke, and the right beautifull and vertuous  
Ladie Morgua. I haue heard quoth Robaster, of one  
sonne of Ogers, who was slaine by Charles the sonne of  
Charlemaine, who was called by the name of Baldwin,  
but of Meruine I never heard before, nor of any of his ac-  
tions.

2 Then spake Malabeon his father, and saide, Sonne,  
it is very true, that Oger begot the valiant Prince Meruine  
of the Fairie Lady Morgua in the Fairie land, which  
I knowe right well that was present at his baptizing, as  
the Fairie can well witnesse with me, who stole him from  
his mother, and for griefe thereof, knowing herselfe to be  
damned, suffered a diuell to beget on her a monster with  
thre heads, that hereafter shall bring all Christendome to  
a most wofull heauiness, vntill by that famous and know-  
thily renowned Prince Meruine he be brought vnto some  
shamefull end, whom it behoueth the to deliuer, because  
now the date of his destiny is expired, and if he be not the  
swone redemed, all Christendome will be utterly ruina-  
ted by Barant surnamed the Cruell, against whom no crea-  
ture is able to indure battell, except Meruine, in whose  
hands

## the historie of Meruine

hands the tyrants life is contained: Father quoth Roba-  
ster, by what manner of meanes may I worke his deli-  
uerance? Very easilly answered Malabeon, for I will  
first goe alone to Minor, and waiting the comming out of  
Mutafier (who shall not see me) steale priuately away the  
keys of the prison, and then returning for thie, by the helpe  
of the highest Sonne deliuer him. God father said Roba-  
ster, help vs in this holy ded. I will dispatch it and returne  
quoth Malabeon, before the day goe downe. Drokes hea-  
ring this, overcome with ioy, embrased Robaster in his  
armes, and asked if he euer sawe his father. Yes said he,  
but besides my selfe, not any creature. In sundry other  
discourses they continued vntill Malabeon returned from  
Minor with the keyes, and bade them arise, for now was  
the time to goe and deliuer Meruine, for beholde, here are  
Mutafiers keyes. When the two barons heard this, they  
leapt for ioy, and Drokes maruelled that he was so soone  
returned. Stand not amazed (said Malabeon) but let vs be  
gone, for if Mutafier shall chaine to returme, and finde  
his keyes taken away, it may be he will do the priace some  
injurie. Alas said Drokes, how shall wee be able in a  
moment to goe more than an hundred leagues? Care not  
(said Malabeon) onely armes your selues and doe but follow  
me, which they did, and then casting pilgrims weedes ouer  
them, went so that no man could possibly perceiue their  
armors, and at the last came to the riuere Dabe, ouer which  
( by the helpe of Malabeon ) they passed vpon a little  
planke of wood, and then came vnto the view of Minor,  
where Malabeon commaunded them, that as soone as they  
should come before Butor, that they shold fayne them-  
selues to be come from far countries, and that they shold  
say, that Barant the Cruel had by his prowesse taken both  
Charles and the twelve peers, assuring them that hee  
woulde stand by them, and giue advise in euery action.

300  
The second part of

Then afterwards in the very dead of the night, at what time euerie creature shall be at their rest, we will goe to the prison and set renowned Meruine at libertie before it be midnight. This being said, they went forward euen to the city gates, where they remained vntill the next morning that the Sunne was risen, devising within themselves with what speaches to entertaine king Butor: and when they perceiued the day began to appere, they knocked at the gates, and desired entrance: but they answered, that without the kings Maiesties knowledge, he durst not suffer any man to enter. Then said Robaster, goe to the king and tell him, we hane brought him newnes which will make his Highnesse ioyfull, and at thy returne we will give to the thre pieces of siluer: Thou speakest well quoth the Porter, and went his way and tolde the King, who very well remembred the entrance of Bertran and Drokes, was euer after circumspet of euerie mans entrance: wherefore causing about thirtie of his best approued Knights to arme themselves, with them he went to the gates, and received in the two Pilgrims, and presently remembred Robaster, for that he had afore time slaine a monstrous Serpent which had greatly wasted his countrey, for the which king Butor had promised many a time and often to give him what gift he would desire without compasse of any reason.

CHAP.

301  
the history of Meruine.



CHAP. XVI.

1 How Robaster deceived king Butor. 2 How Meruin was deliuered out of prison, and went to the pallace where he slew Butor, his Queene, and diuers other pagans. 3 Of the great battell he maintained.



¶ It honorable was the entertainment that Butor gave to Robaster, imagining that he was come for the gift which in time past he had promised, but it was not so, and he feasted him and Drokes (who by reason of his disguise, he knew not) sumptuously: but Robaster he would not eat any thing, but passed the time in telling of strange newnes, and in thend assured him that prince Barant the cruel had taken the emperor Charles and his ry. peers prisoners. At which tidings Butor much ioyd, & killing Robaster for his speaches, and putting his hand under his feet, did him bataille-like reuereice, wherat Drokes smiled to himselfe. Thus was Butor deceipted by Robaster and by Drokes.

2 Now when the evening drew on the blackest curling of the night, and every one betooke themselves to their rest; the King gaue commandement, that Robaster and his companion shoule be delicately lodged, which was very iustly performed: but as one as old Malabcon knew that dead sleepe had arrested the thoughts of euery one, he came to the two christians saying; nowe arise if you will deliver

¶ 3

Meruine,

## the second part of

Meruine, for I haue the keyes of the prison. At that word they arose and departed, the Monie shining out the pleasantest beamies of her countenaunce, and came to the doore of the dungeon, where staying Malabeon opend the doores, and then said, faire sonne, stay thou here till we retayne, and guard this passage. I wil (said Robaster) and sweare, that if there come but 100 they shall not escape me. Then entred in Drohes and Malabeon, who heard the musike which the Fairies made thrice a day, to revine the spirites of Meruine (as was before written:) at which Drohes wondered, until Malabeon tolde him what it was. and the occasion thereto: the musike ceasing, they went to Meruine that lay in most intolerable martiredome, who as soone as hee saw Drohes, he maruelld; but Drohes ouer-joyed with his sight, came to embrase him, but could not speake, so full was his heart with ouer-pressing ioy: but having gotten a little libertie for his tongue, saide, Thou wonder of men, behold Drohes thy true prisoner, who is come to finde meanes to deliuer thee from imprisonment. When Meruine heard him, he imbraced him, and doubled kindenes upon kindnes. Then Malabeon, by vertue of an herb he had brake off his fetters. And Meruine seeing himselfe deliuered, asked Drohes what he was that vntene talked vnto him; and Drohes at large discoursed al touching Robaster and Malabeon his father, who were inded the tru actors of his deliuerie, for without them his bondage was eternall. These speeches Malabeon broke, and tolde them they must depart, for why, the houre approached, in which Mutafier was accustomed to come vnto the prison. By my vniour (said Meruine) I would he were here, for of all the Deuills in hell, I desire to combate with him. This beeing saide, he arose out of the dungeon and came forth, whome as soone as Robaster sawe, hee called to minde Prince Oger, and saide, Belzeue my princely Meruine, I was hardly perswaded that Oger had a sonne.

## the historie of Meruine

a sonne; but now I assure my selfe by thy countenaunce, for one hand is not so like an other, as yee to his excellency. After this Malabeon brought Meruine into the chamber wher his armour was, which he presently put on, but his sword was not there, which somewhat griesed him, but in steads of it Malabeon gaue him a mace of yron, and then they departed to the kings pallace, where they found euery one a slepe, so that they vnsorbidden went to the Kings bed chamber, where breaking open the doores with thei<sup>r</sup> safe the King awaked and offering to rise, Meruine rushed vnto him and saide, Damned traitour, and thou staine of kingdomes, behold here Meruine the sonne of Oger, whose very soule thou hast tormented, is nowe come to take accouint of thy treason, and in so saying, he stroke him with his mace such a mercilesse blowe, that in his bedde hee slue him: and Robaster at the same instant killed his Queene also. Which done, they passed from chamber to chamber, and put to death all the pagans they found of what estate soever. During all this fearefull night, not any creature escaped, but onely one base pesant, who running into the Cittie, gaue a generall allarum, crying, Treason to the kings sacred person. At which clamours all the towne rose vp in armes and came to the pallace, where they found the Christians, who flying amongst them begann a dreadfull battell: and Malabeon by his excellent Arte, made such a light, that the pallace was as bright as day to the Christians, but hell-like blacke to the Pagans, who by that meanes being slaine by their enemies, slue also themselves by their ignorance. Drohes set forward with desire of reuenge, was gote into the thickest of the Pagans, but their numbers were so infinite, that all his prouesse was much too little to haue sauied his life, had it not beeuen for Malabeon, whocried to Robaster and Meruine to succour Drohes or he was but dead. at that thay turned about, and

## The second part of

preasing into the thron, there was not a pagan that durst abide or indure them : so that all thre loyning themselves together, they made hanocke of their enemies, onely one thing greatly bred their trouble, which was the casting of scalding water out of the windowes upon them, but yet notwithstanding, they slew so many that the stretes were paved with their bodies. Then came Malabeon and said, Princes, now is the time to be gone, therfore sheath your swords and retire: why quoth Meruine, or so what causer? Because saide Malabeon, Mutafier euen now is in coming, and when he shall perceiue this slaughter, he incaged will set all the city on fire with unquenchable flames, so that we, nor any pagan shall escape the mischiefe. Thus forward the Christians departed, fighting all the way till they were without Minor, and without the streight passage, then retired the Pagans, but were no sooner reentered but Mutafier came, who when he missed Meruine he became madly enraged, and with the frenzie of his anger set all the City on fire, so that not a pagan escaped from burning, but onelie one, who then was without the City, and immediately bare those sadde tidings unto Barant the Cruell, who little or nothing esteemed the discourse. Meruine and his companions being within sight, maruelled at the hugeness of the fire, till Malabeon calling his son, bade him conduct the princes, and aid them in every thing, for of force he must passe into the fairie land, to heare a cause betwixt two of his alliance, that then were at difference, and so he departed, and Meruine and the rest marched on their way.

CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XVII.

- 1 How Meruine, Robaster, and Drobes arived in a wood amongst robbers.
- 2 Of the dangers they were in,
- 3 How Malabeon aided them.
- 4 How they slew the theues.



Be thre Christians, after the departure of Malabeon trauelled all the day without finding any house or place of harbor, in the end, they came into a thicke wood, where they trauelled a long time, till in the end stitting downe vnder a chesnut tree, they saide to themselues, that vntesse some aduenture called them forth, they would rest there all that night: but their repose was very shorte before r. outlaws that liued by robbing came out and espyed them, so that one said to the rest, behold yond ry. weary ones, on my life they are full of gold, wherfore let vs take them and carry them to our Castle, where our master Barre will be prouid of them. This saide, they aduaunced themselues, and saluted the Princes, who stedfastly beheld till one of the theues said, Gentlemen you are wel found: and gallants said Robaster, who rose withall, you are as well met, what is your pleasures? Our pleasures are, said one outlaw, that if you haue stoeze of gold, you divide it amongst vs. We haue qd Robaster enough for our selues, and for xx. such as we be, onely we lacke lodging, which if you will be so kinde as help vs with, then command our purses. Gentlemen said the thiefe, if you will folldow me to a castle hard by, you shall haue that and what besides ye will.

## The second Part of

will desire. Thy words are sweet qd Robaster, ride then before and we will follow thee. Come said the thiefe, who thought to take them prisoners. And then they passed a long with the ten Dutlawes and the thre Christians: and as they rode, Drohes perswaded them to be aduised, for the Villaines were not guilty of one god thought towards them. Tis true qd Robaster, but it is no matter, for we three being together, were we in hell, in despite of all the dinels in hell, we would giue our selues fradome: they do thinke to have gold, and for mine owne part (since I was borne) I never boze one crosse about me. In sadnesse said Meruine, then I am thy companion, for inst so well am I storred: but it skilleth not, for their imagination will giue vs entertainment. By my soule quoth Drohes smiling, as bare is the payment our host shall get at my hand. Thus making spozt at their wants, they followed the thieues to the castle Malfeaus, where alighting they ascended vp into the hall, where hanged all the shieldes of those haplesse Knights, whom in the house were murdered. Belieue me qd Meruine, this a right beautifull place, what is hee that is lord thereof? His name (said one of the Dutlawes) is Barre a prince of great possessions. Then came an other, saying; Gentlemen, it is the custome of this house, all lodgers here deluer vp to me their weapons till their departure. Friend qd Meruine, not ours by any means, for we loue them so deare, that we lie with them, eate with them, walke with them, and nothing but death can part vs and them. It semeth then salde the thiefe, you suspect some mischiefe. Mischiefe (said Robaster looking about) let me see him that is so hardy as not to tremble if we strokone vp on him. Why qd a villaine againe, thinke you we are not know to master you thre? Yes, yes. Then were the castle gates lockt vp, for all the villaines were entred in, and Barre their captaine vsed the princes very kindly, setting them by

his

## the history of Meruine.

his side at the table, where was store of all meats, yet Robaster would neither eate nor drinke any thing: wherefore Barre askt him if he did it for penance. Pea sir qd one of the thieues, it is for the god men he hath slain, and for the robberies he hath done in his life time. Robaster hearing him, snacht vp a knife, and threw it at him, but missing the villain, it strucke halse a foot into a table: which Barre saying was much grieved, and desired Robaster to be patient, and amends should be made him. Then came the vassalle, and knelling, asked him forgiuenes: which (after some ceremonies) was granted on condition he should lose one eie, for calling him murderer. Barre that then durst not deny any thing, agreed, so he lost an eie, but wold ere midnight to be revenged. Supper ended, and the time of rest come, Barre brought them into a faire chamber, with one bed in it, saying to Robaster: You shall lode here, and thare other in another chamber not far off. How qd Robaster shall we be diuided: by heauen we are all one, and will not be seperated. Sir qd Barre, I haue no chamber with thre beds. Fetch it: qd Robaster. I will said Barre, who durst not denies any thing: so two beds more were brought in.

2. As soone as he was gone, Meruine locked the dores, and then beganne they to disarm themselves: whiche the thieues perceiued through a chinke that was in the wall of the chamber. When they were laide, they fell soundly asleep, insomuch that they snoared. Then retired all the thieues like unto thieres indeede, being wonderously a-gast and fearefull, offering sometimes to turne backe againe, imagining that the princes sleepe was but fained and counterfet. At the last perceiving they slept indeede, they much the moze boldly set forward, having all resolued amongst themselves, and each to other swozne the death of

the

## The second part of

the Christians. But the damned Captaine of this wicked  
cruel bade them first seaze the Princes weapons for their  
more securenes: which accordingly they did, and then they  
went fure to each beddes side with their naked sworzes in  
their hands, beeinge readie to give the dismal stroakes of  
their unhappinesse: had not God deliuered them strange-  
ly: and thus it was as the Historie reporteth.

3 Malabeon beeing in the Fayrie Land, by the will of  
God remembred his Sonne, and instantly hee had know-  
ledge both of his and his companions daungers: wherefore  
(in a trice) charming himselfe into the Chamber, he put un-  
der each of their beddes an hearbe, which had this vertue,  
that it made them beleue both the Chamber and the bedde  
were on fier: then making a fearefull noyse the Knights  
arose. Which sodainnes so frighted the theeuers, that they  
ran backe, leaving the armour and weapoones of the Princes  
they had before stolne: who (by the seeming fier-lght) dis-  
couering their danger and armes, armed themselves and  
take their weapons into thet hand. Then said Malabeon,  
quickly slay these theeuers, for if God had not defended you,  
this night, all thre had beene murded.

4 When they heard the voyce of Malabeon, they did  
as he bade them: for in that hower they began a flicce com-  
bat because the villaines were stout and valiant: but in the  
end Meruine slew 25. and Robaster and Droles the rest:  
so that not any escaped but onely one, who running vnder a  
bed, imagined to hide himselfe from death: but Robaster  
perceiuing it, pursued him; and when he saw his sorte  
disclosed, he fell vpon his knees and craved mercie, promi-  
sing to amend his life, and to shew them the godliest horse  
of the wold, which he woulde give for his ransome. Mer-  
uine gaue care to those sworzes, and said; Friend shew me  
that

## the historie of Me uir.

that bras which is so singular. Then they soure lighted a  
torch and went towards the stable, which was locked with  
thre lockes, all which he opened and went in: whom he she-  
wed thei the horse, that had before him twenty barres of  
yon, and behind him as many. The horse no sooner sawe  
the knights, but he neighed. How quoth Meruine, Shall  
we come to this horse? Sir said he, see you these holes that  
locke these barres, there was never yet man that had pow-  
er to vndoe them. Meruine hearing this, laid his handes  
vpon the lockes, and they all flew open: there was also a  
written scroble, which Meruine take vp and read, con-  
taining this matter.

**M**eruine, I salute the with this gift: Know thou,  
that I am a wittesse of thy birth, and held the at  
the font in the land of Faeria: wherefore this noble horse  
(which is the brother to Baucant) I giue vnto the, whose  
name is Passant. Neither do thou change it, for he is the  
erquisitest in every point that ere was bled vnder heauen.  
He is old, but yet as good as if he were yong, because his  
last daies service shalbe as good as his first. Also I beseech  
the, that the first sonne which thou shalt haue, after thy  
marriage, may beare my name: which doing, thou shalt  
locke my loue vnto the, and be blessed from heauen.

Written by thy Godfather:  
King Orient.

Thus was the Letter written, and Meruine rejoyced,  
who going to the horse the horse was proud: then Meruine  
espied his furniture, which he put on: and as hee was in  
trimming him, the thefe came behinde him to shew light  
to Meruine, but he could not so quickly passe by, as Pas-  
sant

## The second Part of

sant with his hales strake him drad to the ground. At which Mervine was displeased, till Malabeon said; prince, be not offended for this, for hee was a thase and a murderer, which Paslant knotwing, strake hym; for his vnderstanding is mightie, and he was bzed in Fairia: misdoubt not then, for hee will serue the princely: and heere must Robaster take leaue of thee, for he may gee no farther with thee. Then Mervine imbraced Robaster, and gaue him infinite thankes for his deliuerance. Thus parted Malabeon and Robaster, who with all speed came backe to their Hermitage; where we will leaue them, and returne againe to Mervine and Drokes.



### CHAP. XVIII.

<sup>1</sup> How Mervine and Drokes went to Blandis, and conuerted the Countrey: 2 how they came before Montment, where ( in the Battaile ) Drokes was taken, and brought into the Citie: 3 how Mathaburna ( before the Pagans ) menaced him.

After Malabeon and Robaster were departed, Mervine and Drokes stayed in the Castle till it was bright day: at what time Mervine mounted vpon Paslant, and Drokes vpon another horse; journeying till they came to Blandis, to the house of Minka, who when she beheld Mervine, <sup>2</sup> how her ioy exceeded in exceedingnes! she ran and imbraced him and kist him, and lastly, tolde him of her and her husbandes conuersion to the true faith. All which pleased him wonderously; and hee desired her to bee most constant in her opinion, and to perswade all shee loued to the like resolution; for whoso did not helene so, shoulde dye the death. In briefe

## the history of Mervine.

briefe, that Ladie so laboured, that Croysant came with 400 Christians to Blandis, and presented them to Mervine, who gladly gaue them all kinde acceptation. Then went Mervine to the Castle to the Count, whom they found set in the great Hall at a Table by his Countesse: to whom ( after Mervine had caused a trumpet to be sounded ) he said; My Lord of Blandis, wee are come to know thy disposition, whether thou wilt ador the true God of heauen and earth, the Saviour of the world Christ Jesus. A Saracen that stood by, hearing these words, drew forth his kniue, & thought to stab Mervine: but Drokes preuented him, and with his sword gaue him such a blow that he claue his head even to his teeth. At this began an alarum in the hall, & on the other part, Mervines 400 Christians gaue alarum to the Citie, and put all to death that beloued not in Christ Jesus, and bee conuerted. When the Countie Blandis ( whose name was Fourquer ) saw both his owne danger and his Citties deuolation, he came and kneeled downe before Mervine, promising faithfully to conuert, and be baptised. Then Mervine rased vp the Countie, sounded a retrayte, and made every one sheath his kniue, and then went into the citie, and put all to death that would not be conuerted; in the end, they all most humbly received Baptisme. This baine to speake more of Blandis or her countrey, they were all conuerted, and baptised: and in the Countrey all round about they builded Temples, Monasteries, and religious Houses, in which God continually was serued.

<sup>2</sup> Then Mervine mustered of that Country ten thousand, and marched towards Montment, and the Counte Fourques went with him, for he had sworne never to fayle him in anie conflict. In fourre dayes space they cams to Luternia, and thence marched towards Montment, where Mathaburna remained; whose labouring thoughts continually

## The secon d part of

ually were with Meruine: who now had marched till hee  
came within sight of Montment. But an Espiall ( having  
beheld theyr Armie) went vnto the TOWNE, and gaue no-  
tice especially to the fierce Pagan Bruant, whome Barant  
had left his Substitute; whose hugenes no horse was able  
to support, and his strength equalling that greatness. To him  
he told, how Prince Meruine was returned with a great  
Band of christians, and were hard at the cittie walls. Ma-  
thaburna hearing her Lordes name resounded, her hart daun-  
ted; yet shée durst not for her life discouer her ioyfullnes, but  
fained her selfe sad, (as she was indeed, because she durst not  
bee merrie when she was best pleased) and sayd; Bruant,  
let vs bee carefull lest these damned Christians enter the  
cittie, for this wilde Meruine is mercilesse: therefore I be-  
seech you, let the keyes of the cittie be euerie night brought  
vp into my chamber. Bruant agreed thereto. Then said  
Mathaburna, I will Bruant, that you issue out vpon the  
wretches, that they may not vaunt that they lodged before  
our cittie, and were not bidden one Skirmish. To that mo-  
tion he was willing, wherefore ( arming 2000) he sallied  
out of the gates; whom Meruine and his Armie couragi-  
ously encountrred, himselfe throwing ten dead to the ground  
before anie other Christian approached. When the Pagans  
beheld his furie, they were amazed, and said one to another;  
If all the Christians bee like to this, it is in vaine we striue  
against them. During the Battaille, Mathaburna stood  
on the top of Turgon to behold her Lord, whom she knew  
by his blows and death that followed them, and also by an  
olde Faucz of hers whiche he did weare in his Helmet. The  
Battaille continued verie strongly, in which Meruine shewed  
wondrous Chivalrie; Droles, Croysant and Fouchier not  
being short of anie knightly resolution: but on the other  
sde, Bruant (who was on fute) made mighty slaughter  
of the Christians; at which Droles was enraged, and with a

Strong

## the historie of Meruine.

Strong lance charged vpon the Turke, but did him no  
hurt, at which Droles wondered; but the Turke sent  
him backe such a token with his sword, that he cut away  
one quarter of his shield, and the head of his horse also, in-  
somuch that Droles was faine to descend to the earth to  
begin a fute combate: but the Turke ( who was of strange  
sore) tolke him vp in his armes, and in despite of all men  
bore him into Montment, deliuering him into the custodie  
of the Pagans, and then returned againe where he sawe  
Meruine make a mighty slaughter of his souldiers that now  
were flying to seeke safetie: whom as hee incouerted hee  
said, Cowards, whither will you tourne, or ere night  
you shall all repente you. Sir ( said one of them ) death is  
worst, and that wee are sure of, if we turne to yond pu-  
issant mightie one. Which ( sayd Bruant ) shew mee  
that Gallant. I will do that ( said one of his Souldiers )  
so you wotl let mee come behinde you. And then he shewed  
him where Meruine was, to whom hee went; and offering  
to strike him with his axe, the horse Passant ( seeing the  
blow ) retrayzed, and instantely turned againe, whereby Mer-  
uine gaue the Turke such a mighty blowe, that if his  
sword had not broken he had there fuisched the Battaille:  
then he tooke the pomell and hilts, which he cast at him so  
vehemently, that hee brought him on his knees; and then  
taking his yron mace from him, with it gaue hon such a  
blow, that he felled him to the earth.

Then came an infinite number of pagans about him, who  
raised him vp, and as soone as he was come to himselfe, hee  
cried, Let vs alle souldiers, let vs alle, for it is impossible to  
indure these strange blowes. Then ranne the Pagans a-  
maine towardes the towne, and the Christians pursued  
them, of whom in the entraunce they fwe abundance not-  
withstanding yet the Sarazens got into the towne & closed  
up their gates, at which Meruine was displeased, but  
would

## the second part of

would haue beeene much moze grieved, had he knowne that  
Drohes had bin taken prisoner. The christians went unto  
their pavilions, having lost but seuen hundred, and the pa-  
gans eight thousand.

3 Brurant brought to Mathaburna the Knight Drokes, with this speech, saying, Madam, behold here is one of the christians that hath bane our scourge this day: pleaseth your Ladiship to kepe him, and present him to prince Barant my Lord and Master, your royll loue: that will I not (said Mathaburna) but before to morrow in the morning dispatch him of his life, I kneine his name to be Drokes; and pleased it Mahomet, that as I haue him, I had that disloyall Mervine, whos against my soule made me be baptizid, I would present him to my royll loue Barant, that hee might take of him a never to be eqnalled vengeance. When the gentle Drokes heard her, he answered: What Madam, are these speeches your swone, or unkindely borrowed? I tell you, Mervine for the world would not thus unkindly forget you, but loues you as his owne salvation. Peace (said Mathaburna) speake not to me, for thou shall know that in despight of what thou hast spoken of Mervin thou shalt be hanged. Then calling a pagan to hit she commaunded him to imprison Drokes, and to bring the keys to her presently: which immediatly was done: and Drokes alone, beganne to exclaime against women, and to curse their sexe, for the inconstancie of Mathaburna.

## the historie of Meruine

CHA P. XIX.

1 How the cittie of Montment was taken by the  
means of Mathaburne, 2 The deliuery of Drakes out  
of prison, and other accidents.

Mall was the hope of life retained in Drokes  
after hee was imprisened, and the keves car-  
ried to the Lady, that swoze in the morning he  
should bee carried to the gallows. S Adam  
(said Brurant) do your owne wil for my Lord  
Barant at his departure commaunded me to obey you in all  
things. Tis true, replied she, therefore see my command-  
ments be effected, and to her selfe swoze all the godd possi-  
ble for the christians. Mervine by this time having missed  
Drokes, made inquirie for him, but no man could tell anie  
newes, wherefore he caused diligent search to be made, till  
a squire came and reported that Brurant had borne him pri-  
soner into the citie. At which wordes Mervine tooke his  
hatres, lamented, and swozoned till Croysant came and  
persuaded him to be appeased: for Mathaburna beeing in  
the citie there could no mischance befall him, for he knew that  
she was Lady and mistresse of the towne, and the proudest  
Sarazin durst not disobey her. This gaue some respite to  
his mores. Yet he went and threw himselfe upon his bed,  
and wold not be fully comforted. In the end hee fell on  
his knees, and made a bow to the God of heauen, that if it  
would please him to resure his deare friend Drokes, hee

## The second part of

would never sleepe on bed, exchange apparel, drinke wine, nor eate flesh, neither espouse wife, till he had passed the seas, and slaine, that inauspicious stome of religion falle Barant, the ruine of christendome. This spake Meruine so effectually, that his desire was graunted (as you shall heare.) The beautifull Mathaburna whose busie thoughts were vertues agents, when all the Pagans were laid at rest, she tooke the keyes and went to Drohes whom she no sooner sawe but shee imbraced, and with Joyes teares de-maunded how Meruine did. When Drohes had heard her he stode amazed and said, ah inconstant Lady, thou hast slaine me with thy chaunge and art vnworthy to speake of him from whom thou art chaunged. Wasthe it I knowe thine intent, and my death is wellcome. Mistake mes not faire Knight, (said shee) soz by my past thoughts I protest he is the God of my desserts, what I did, was to de-reue the Pagans, who are waking Dragons that never sleepe about mee; therefore I pray thee tell mee how hee fareth, and bee not offended at mee. Drohes then resolued of her trueth replied: Most gratiouse Madam, hee is troubled in nothing, but onely for thy want, whom above all thinges hee desireth, onely I doe knowe mine absence is no pleasure to him, and I doe knowe that hee will put his fortune in daunger for my deliuerie: therefore I pray you, god Ladie, let vs advise how easiest he may be maister of the Cittie, lest in daring to boldely we repente his hazard.

All is done already, said she, therefore come forth and foliow me, then shee conducted him where hee was armes, and then bade him come away with thre hundred of his best Knights, and I will here attend his comming. Drohes effected all her wish, and in bries, brought the Prince where the Lady attended; and whoso had espied their meeting, would haue maruelled, and swoyne, that

## the historie of Meruine.

than Lome there could not be a greater godhead. He liuing in her, and she in his bosome, either embracing the other with such entinenesse of spirite, that as they had but one heart, euen so they seemed to haue but one body, vntill Drohes calling Honour from Lomes combate, told them they myght hereafter consume ages in their happiness. But now it was fitter to thinke vpon the death of the pagans. Tis true, tis true, said Meruine, and then with all speed they entred, and Meruin desired Mathaburna to guide him to Brurants chamber, that I may confesse him with this yron mace before he passe to his graue. Then she led him to the doore, and said, euen here he sleepeth, if you can open it. That shall sone be done (said Meruine) and then with his heauy mace he gaue such a blowe, that the doore brake into many pieces into the chamber. When Brurant heard the sound, he said, what devill makes this noyse? You are detected, said Meruine, it is a charitable chaplaine, that is come to set you the right way to your graue, if you refuse to be baptizied, I had rather, said Brurant, loose my head: Thine owne mouth shall be thy iudge, said Meruine, and then heauing vppe his mace, hee slew him as he lay, which scene to Mathaburna, with a smile she asked Meruine how many he had confessid in that manner, as he passed through the countrey. A wold madame sayd he, and then hee passed from chamber to chamber, and left not a breathing soule which refused to be baptizied. To be bries, there was not a pagan left, whiche came not creeping on his knees, and begged that he myght be baptizied. This done, Meruine caused a most royall and triuphant chariot of gold to be made, in which he caused Mathaburna to ride and march with him through all the countrey of Hurry. And when those of the towne of Mequa vnderstood of his comming, they met him with the keyes of their gates three leagues from the towne. There after they had rested fourte daies, he marched to Ierusalem.

## the second part of

rusalem. In bries, after he had converted that mother of cities, he went to performe his vowes, and visite the holie sepulchre, which also Mathaburna did. Whence went they to Babilon, which he conquered by assault, and caused all to be baptized. To be shoit in my discourse, in leste spa: than a yare and an halfe, he brought to the knowledge of Christian religion more than an hundred mighty cities, all which cities he held under his gouernement, and from euerie one of them took the expertest soldiars to furnish vp his host, so that now departing from Babylon, he returned to Mement, and then he imbarcked himself for France: in which journey we will leaue him, and returme to speake of the emperour Charles, and of Barant the Cruell, who continued his siege against Maiance.



### CHAP. XX.

1 How Barant challenged combat of Charles himselfe alone against three or five; 2 How he ouercame all the five.



Du may remember how Barant the Cruell kept king Charles in Maiance, who was both besieged with dreadfull war and with worse famine, wanting both men to fight, and fortune to supply, being as then in the towne thirty persons, and when Barane perceived that the French emperour durst no more give him battell, he armed himselfe, and full of pride, hee went and chal-

## the historie of Meruine

challenged Charlemaine to send forth thre or five of the renowmedst knyghts he had, to combat with him alone: and if they could vanquish him, then his vntress shold haue ending; otherwyls they shold be thralls to his mercy. Charlemaine at this offer stode assyndred yet pondering well, he promised in seuen dayes to gye him an answer: in the meane space he consulted with his barons, but neuer came to any conclusion: the last day, as they were in consultation they myght heare Barant crying at the port, Where is this Charles of France? where are his championes? What, shall I be combatid with, yea or no? As he spake these wordes king Charles came vpon the walles, and told him that hee shold, for five knyghts within were ready for the battell, onely he desired hoffage for performance of the articles: to that Barant accorded and sent into the city two noble Vagans, whom the king caused to be imprisoned: then issued out of the city armed, himselfe, duke Naymes, the Prince Loys, young Dion of Pantuell, and Andri of Holland, they all marched on foot, for the famine had not left them a horse to ride on, and being come into the listes, Barant entred mounted and armed exceeding royally, who seeing them on foot, demanded why they were not on horsebacke; answer was made by Charlemaine, That they had not an horse left alue within the Cittie. By Mahomet (saide Barant) I will not lose so much honour as to combat with men halfe armed, and therfore instantly sent for the best horses of his campe, and mounted them, and gaue them lances into their hands, and then sounding trumpets, they began the battell.

2 Most terrible was the first encounter, where the christians running all together, broke their lances with such furie, that they ouerthrew both Barant and his horse together, but he quickly reconered hymselfe againe, who inca-

## The second part of

ged for the death of his horse, went against the christians with Entrant naked in his hand and at the first blow stroke Andri of Helland dead to the ground, which seene to Charles and the rest, all at once brauely assaulted him, but with Entrant he defended himselfe like a man of immortall resolution: intollerable was the fight on every side, and many prayes Charles made vnto heauen, but the eares of the Almighty were stopped against him, because of the ciuil dissencion he causid beganne in Denmarke. By this time Barant stroke prince Loys with hage force on the helme; but the sword turning in his hand, lost his pwer of doing euill, onely glauncing by his shield it fell vpon his horse, and cut his head from his body, so that Loys was forced to fall, and that so unforntunately, that the horse falling vpon him he was not able to rise againe for the worlds riches: which was worse than death to Charles, when he beheld it, whose fortune was like his sonnes mischiefe, for at the next blowe he cutte off the head of his horse, but the emperour in a trice recovered his fete againe, but withall was soze wounded in one of his thighes, and that so mortally, that hee was forced to withdraw from the pzease; which to duke Naymes was worse than popson, who followed their footesteppes in miserie, being stricken from his horse, and intollerably wounded: to Dion the like euill chaunced, whose horse flaine, himselfe was taken prisoner; and with him thother three, whose wounds left no force to rule their weapons. To be briefe, they were all imprisoned in Barants tents, who triumphed at his owne glorie, which he thought worthy a godhead: but within soure dayes after newes was brought to him of Meruines army, which was then within tenuie leagues of his camoe.

CHAP.

## the history of Meruine.



### CHAP. XXI.

- 1 How Meruine incountred Raham the son of Belmarine with ten thousand pagans that were forragiug, who were all conquerd except thred,
- 2 How Raham renounced abomet,
- 3 How the three that escaped reported the action vnto Barant, who slew one of them for bringing such euill newes.



Eruine (saith the historie) trauelled with so earnest desire, not taking rest, that he came wittin ten leagues of the haost of Barant the Cruell, at what time an espiall came to him, and gaue him intelligence of an armie of Pagans to the number of ten thousand that marched not farre off towrds Barants campe, bearing thither abounding store of all manner of provision, which he no sooner did heare but he told Drohes that it behoued them to be partners of their banquet; whereupon he marched to a wood, by which of necessity they must passe, and when they were come within a cariere thereof, Meruine gaue them a braue charge, the sodainnesse whereof amazed Raham: but being inforced by extremitie, he encouraged his followers, and requited the onset. The battell was hot for alittle space, but the intollerable blowes of Meruine too much for any man to beare, put the pore Pagans to their wittes ends, who seeking to flee mischiefe, found themselves so inclosed with mischiefe, that they were inforced to intertaine him as their best unwelcomed companion: yet amongst all, three escaped, who with the wings of feare were carried be-

yond

## The second Part of

yond feare; yet feare being stil in their bosomes, the rest were put to the sword, onely Baham survived, to whom Prince Meruine offered many fauours, if hee wold renounce his false god; which he vtterly refused: then Meruine with his sword stroke him and felled him to the ground, and sue his horse vnder him: Then flocked the Christians about him, and had slaine him, if Meruin had not bee his redeemer.

2 When Meruine had sauied Baham from the multitude of swordes, hee offered him againe mercy, if hee wold renounce Mahomet; Baham seeing his sorte in the doore of death, and all hope fled from his knowledge, kneeled downe to Meruin and saide, wonder of knighthood, I yeeld to thee, and giue my sword which is mine honour to thy disposing, vowing henceforth to renounce Mahomet, and al false gods; in witness whereof my desire is to be baptizid, Meruine rejoyced at these words, and tooke him to famoz.

3 By this time the thre that escaped from the christians swordes had so hastened, that they were now come to the Pagan hoste, where they found Barant the Cruel threatening Charles with death, if he wold not renounce his God, and fall downe before Mahomet: to the which, the god emperoz gave but a little or a carelesse attention. When they were appreched, they fel on their knees, one of them saying: Neuer to be conquered prince and god of nations, know, wee bring thys heawie and vnspleasant newes, so Bahara of Belmarin and his 10000 followers whome thou hadst sent forth to forage about the Country, were incountered with a heroicall Christian, accompanied with an army of redoubted Chivaliers; by whom he and his Armie are all slaine and discomfited: therefore advise your Highnesse what to do, for not ane man is able to withstand that Christian; who is vndoubtedly a diuell sent from the depth of hell, and no earthly

creature

## the history of Meruine.

creature. When Barant heard this speech he roud himselfe and (full of more than lunaticke anger) with his fist he strake the messenger dead to the ground, for being the authour of such bad reportings: from whence rose this Proverbe, He is euill come that euill bringes. The other two seeing their Companion dead, fledde from his presence, and concealeb themselves. Gribouart his Counsallour had chid him, for his rashnesse, and with sweete words layde a sleepe his anger, then were they sent for againe, and Barant aske if it were true their fellow had sworne: and they swore by holie Mahomet it was. When grew Barants wrath so great, that he could not speake of a long time: in the end, when his words had libertie, (after manie outragious cursings) he comraunded the messengers to bee impisened, boylng, if the newes fell out contrarie, to make their deaths a liting example. When hee caused an hundred thousand to arme themselves, and marched forth, to trie if it were iust or no King Belmarine did contruct them, vowing to reuenge (with the death of manie thousand Christians) his Sonnes misfortune. After their departure, Charlemaine and his fellowe Prisoners fell to argue of this occurrent, wondring what Christians they should bee, that should undertake this wonderfull enterprise. As I liue (said Naymes) I cannot gesse whi it shold bee: onely this last night I dreamt, that the famous Duke Oger was risen againe, and come to deliuer vs. When (said Charlemaine) thus do I prophecie; God hath deliuered Meruine the Sonne of that mightie one, and it is onely hee that must be our ransome. Thus talkt they as they were in prison of Meruine, who marched on so fast, that now he was come within the sight of an hundred thousand, that passed on in a most tumultuous disorder.



## CHAP. XXII.

1 How Barants hundred thousand were ouerthowne by Meruine. 2 How Barant then came with all his host, except three hundred, and marched against the Christians.



When Meruine had taken a perfect view of the Pagan army comming towards him, he diuided his host into thre battalions, and rode from ranke to ranke, giuing such tacieuragement, that like the meeting of long absent Friends, so was warre welcome into their bosomes. This while the Pagans like mad men came running, one here, one there, and another in another place, in such disorder, that syning with the Christians, they were slaine like gnats, or new borne infants. The crie of them was so horrible, that it was heard to the campe where Barant lay, who instantly caused every man to be in a readinesse, but sware, not to leaue his tents till hee had newes of the Conquest: but there remained very few to bring tidings, death was so bitter amongst them. Of all the Pagans, king Butifart was most worthy in armes, and made the greatest slaughter of the Christians, till Drohes incoutring him, at the first blowe strake off his left arm, and at the next, claued his helmet and head downe even to his teeth. And then beganne a second out-crie, which was heard even unto the Citie of Maiance, the noys whereof added vigour to the Christian hearts, so that they spared not any, but put all to the sword that durst abide an incoutring, an hundred only escaping,

escaping, the rest slaine or taken prisoners. After this Conquest, Meruine called all his army together, and after praies giuen to God, he commanded them to sit downe and refresh themselves with victuals: so he vnderstood by one of his prisoners, that at midnight Barant was minded to giue them new battell. When they had refreshed themselves, Meruine retired himselfe and his army vnto a fortifiied place, to which there was but a streight and narrow way for passage: where having pitched his tents, he tooke Drohes aside, and saide: The reason why I haue retired my selfe is, so that we are neare our enemies, and mine army consisteth of many nations, and by much more than I dare wholy trust, therfore, sith there is but this streight entrance to aray vs, you and I this night will watch and gaue it, and 2000 to second vs, whilist the rest shall take their repose quietly. To this Drohes condescended, putting every thing in execution with great care. During the which time, the fugitive Pagans that were runne from the battell, made such speed, that they came into Barants campe, crying, O prince Barant, prince Barant, thou art much too slowe in thy reuenge, so thine army is ruined, dead and conquered, the Christians vndoubtedly haue gotten the god of warre from Heauen, and no mortall man is able to indure his powerte: so if he once strike, whomever he toucheth, he is but a dead man. What is he quoth Barant, thou so excollest to be thus famously renowned: I know not answere the Pagan, but I haue heard them all call his name Meruine. Charles standing by and hearing this, could not containe his ioy within his owne boosome, but told the Duke Naymes; Now is thy vistor effected; and the renowned Prince Meruine will giue vnto vs free liberty. Barant on the other part seemed to reioyce more than the Christians, saying; Now shall my fame attaine an everlasting Crowne, so to morrow next before the

## The second Part of

the middest of the day, I will not leue of all his number  
one breathing Christian.

2 Then commaunding a trumpet to be sounded, he presently conuorted al his host togerher, and all his elephants, which were infinite in number, and with them departed towards Meruine, leauing but onely 300. to guard his Lentz and the Emperour, with the other prisoners. Barant himselfe marched the last man, and sware by Mahomet, that whosoever turned his backe for feare of a Christian, he himselfe would slay him. Briesly to speake, Barant at last came where Meruine had fortified himselfe with charriots and other carriages, himselfe and Drokes guarding the entraunce with 20000 soldiers, all on fute; yet with solemnity protesting, that whosoever would enter, shold for his daring presumpcion forfeit his life for rausome. By this time Barants army came and assualted the charriots, and turned them ouer and ouer to make themselves a passage, at last came to the entrance, wherc Meruine and Drokes were: who made such a slaughter of the infidels as was hideous to behold. In bries before the sun arose, there were 40000 pagans slaine, and not one christi- an. The sunne being risen, Meruine saluted it with great ioy, causing all his trumpets to sound, remoued thre charriots, and made way for his army to issue out, incouraging them so, that he thought himselfe unworthy to live, that aduentured not to die for the honour of so herocall a Com- mander. Mathaburna all this while was garded by Cro- fant, and two thousand Christians, the rest all in a rout assualted the Pagans, wounding or killing all with whom they incountred. Now beganne the battell to be extreame and fearefull, Meruine shewing himselfe still unvanquish- able Meruine: 24. he alio ere his lance broke, and so many stroke with his sword, all in a moment; he felw also the

king

## the history of Meruine.

king Orband, and divers other kings. Amongst the Chri- stians there was a yong Gentleman of Jerusalem, that with one blowe claue a pagan from the head to the teeth; which Meruine seeing laughed at, swearing to make him a knight, and did so. In bries, so coragious were the Chri- stians, that now the pagans stood amazed, and durst not come neare either Meruine or Drokes, so dreadfull they were. All this while Mathaburna woeze out her time in prayng for the happy estate of her Lord Meruine; whose valoʒ so farre extended, that there was not a Pagan of ac- count left to assaile them, but now began to take flight: the which Barant beholding, he railed on Mahomet, till a cer- taine king came to him, and said, O my lord, why are you now leaden foted, or so slowe to enter into the battell? Looke, looke, how your people are conquered, and onely two are lords of this great triuumph. Barant would not heare an end of his speach, but like a hungrie wolle put spures to his horse, and charging his launce, ranne in amongst the Christians with such violence, that he threw him dead to the ground at the first encounter: but when his lance was broken, he drew his swor, and with it did miracles vpon miracles, killing all that eue: he touched, whiche when the Christians saw, they beganne to flee from one side of the field vnto an other: but still he pursued them, making hauecke of them. At the length (for their safeties) they en- tered amongst the charriots, but he followed them cryng: Where is the traitor that hath beene the raine of mine ar- mie: let him come and trie his fortune with me. And as he was thus in speaking, he beheld Mathaburna, whom kindly he saluted, and said: Ladie, well met, assurc thy selfe, this day Ile revenge my selfe and theo of that mon- strous villaine, that hath brought theo hither, and detaines my loue his prisoner. Thus spake Barant that imagined the Ladie had loued him. Shee the poore soule, being in

more

## The second part of

more than a fearefull amazement to behold her horrore so neare her. At this, Croisant and his company charged Barant, but in leste than an houre he slew halfe of them. Of which Meruine being aduertised, with al speed came to the rescue, saying to Barant; Traitor, thou hast forfeited thy life with too much hardines, and thy daring is not pardona-ble. Barant (with Medastaffes sticke on him) demanded first his name. My name quod he is Meruine. Meruine said Barant, D'execrable traitor, tis thou that hast slaine my men, robbed me of my Loue, and it is thou whom I look for, and of thee Ile be reuenged: yet if thy valure equalle the same that flies of thee, accorde, that thou and I, in single combat, maintaine ech against other our sortanes: these articles agreed vnto, That if I be vanquished, all paynim countries shall do thee homage, and Charles with many other pris-  
oners shalbe restored: but if I vanquish thee, that then thou shalt fall downe and adore Mahomet. Pagan quod Meruine, I see thine infinite pride, yet am I willing to perforeme thy will: but this withall added, that thou send for Charles and the other Christian prisoners to behold the combat, and Ile oppose to them Mathaburna, whom thou so much de-  
sirest. It shalbe done quod Barant, and then sounded a generall retreat, ech armie returning to their tents. Yet vnder stand, that of the 200000 pagans which were at the begin-  
ning of the battell, there was now but 7000; and the chris-  
tians that were 100000, now were but 24000, all the  
rest of them slaine by the sword of Barant.

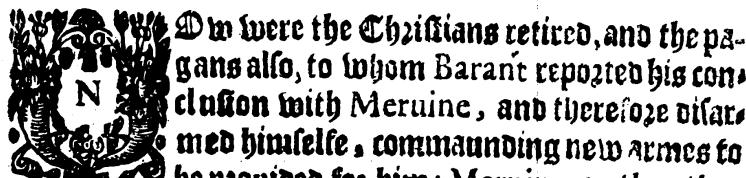
CHAP.

## the historie of Meruine.



### CHAP. XXIII.

1 Of the single combat betwixt Meruine and Barant, and of the death of Barant. 2 The deliuerie of Charles and the other Christians, and the ouerthrow of the Pagans.



W<sup>e</sup>re the Christians retired, and the pagans also, to whom Barant reported his con-  
clusion with Meruine, and therefor<sup>e</sup> disar-  
med himself, commaunding new armes to  
be prouided for him: Meruine on the other  
part did the same. When Barant was newly arm'd again  
to his liking, he mounted vpon his horse, took a launce into  
his hand, and marched vnto the lists, and with him Charles  
and other prisoners, as Meruine had desired, who by this  
time (mounted on Pasant) with a lance in his hand, bring-  
ing Mathaburna on a palfrey trapt in gold, came also into  
the lists. There found he Barant, to whom he saide, Soe  
Barant, this is the beauty of my life, for her sake this day  
shall thy fortune or mine be buried. Thou art a foole quoth  
Barant, for were there ten such as thy selfe, they could not  
be my conquerors. Barant said Meruine, let thy lvsor be  
thine D<sup>r</sup>ator; for in despite of thee, I give thee a shameful  
defiance. This said, they retiued either from other, and  
charging their lances, met with a fearefull encounter; Barant  
breaking his stasse, and doing no further mischiefe:  
but Meruine assaied him soe couragiously, that piercing his  
shield through, he ouerthrew Barant to the ground, great-  
ly astonisched with the stroke; yet notwithstanding in a ve-

## the second part of

tie moment he raised himself againe, and vowed by Mahomet, that if he could but fassen hand on Meruine, hee would make him for ever charging Stasse againe. When Meruine had perfourmed his course, and was returned, he cried: Barant, either pay me for the lodging thou hast taken possession of, or by the holy virgin I le haue thy head for a gage. When Barant saw he made a ieast of him, hee drew Entrant, giving Meruine such a blow on his shield, that cleaving it in the middell, he pierced his currats, and wounded him in the body, but yet to little or no purpose. Meruine at the first drawing knew the sword, and said: I pray thee Barant, tell me how thou gottest that sword. By Mahomet quoth he, the master of my fortune, and he whs will give me conquest over the, I meane the powerfull spirite Mutafier, that hath calculated my st-rrers, and assured me that no man shalbe able to overcome me, but he who never tasted womans milke, I was even he that gaue it to mee; and assured me at that time mozeover, that the knight that owed it, should never be delivered from a hellich prison, where he was in durance. Barant, Barant, quod Meruine, seest thou this Mace that hangeth by my saddle, assure thee in despite of thy master Mutafier, it shall strike thy life from thy body, except thou wilt renounce Mahomet, and then thy peace and my loue shall joyne together. Barant madded with his words, tooke the yron ends of his launce, and swore to Meruine, if he would not descend, he would kill his horse vnder him. Then Meruine alighted, and swore that his dissencion shouldest cost him deare ere they parted, Pallasant bowing his knees to the earth, that his lord might alight the more easily. Now stood they one against the other like two angry lions, continuing a dismal and unconstant battell, no man being able to judge which way Victory was affected: in the end they closed together, and overthrew ech other, tumbling and straing til the day

was

## the historie of Meruine

was shut vp by the euening, and the darke night appeared, at what time Barant requested Meruine to deferre the ending of the combat til the next morning, to which the prince agreed, because that by the meanes of Mutafier that then dwelt in the pagans body, he was much ouertoiled. When ech army was returned to their tents, in the dead of night Barant aske the reason of Mutafier, why he could not that day banquish Meruine. O Barant saide the duell, be not offended, for he is the most valiant, wile, resolute and fortunate champion of the world: and know, if it had not bin for me, this day he had many times slaine thee, therefore I charge thee, that to morrow thou hold with him neither faith nor loyaltie, but by any treason whatsover, seeke his destruction, otherwise is he never to be vanquished, and with all the power I am able, assure thy selfe of mine assittance. At these wordes the duell entred againe into the pagan: and the night having her discharge, the cleare day appeared, when according to his former order he came into the field, and armed with Mutafiers promises, called out Meruine, who sumptuously appointed, entred the lists, then they charged their lances, and incountred each other, piercing their shields, and breaking their lances vpon their curaces, and that with such fricke, that they were both overthrewne to the ground. Pallasant seeing himselfe deliuered of his master, went first to Barants horse and strangled him, and then to Barants selfe, whom also he had strangled, if Mutafier in a fearefull shape had not shewed him selfe vnto him, and made the horse fearefully fie away. By this time Meruine had stricken Barant to the ground, but in a trice he arose and made requitall of his sorrow, giving Meruine such a blowe with Entrant the god sword, that passing through the helmet, it gaue him a sore wound, and made both his knees to kisse the earth: but when he recovered himselfe, he ranne and closed with Barant, and by

## The second part of

maine power ouerthrew him, and in the sal laid hold on Entrant, which he recovered from the pagan, then rising, the pagan took from him his mace, and then began a new battle, till at last Meruine gathering all his forces together, and turning Entrant aloft, stroke Barant such a blow, as in despite of all resistance he claue his head.

2 Then fell Barant downe dead, in whom the Divell challenged possession: and then the Christians assailed the Pagans, whom in an instant they ouerthrew, 4000. being willing to receiue baptisme: no sooner were the pagans vanquished, but Meruine gaue all that they possessed amongest his souldiers, whilist in the meane space Charles went to Meruine, and doyng him all the honour he could devise, said: Thou colume of our religion, and wonder of knighthood, to thes will I surrender the crowne of France, for, but thes, no man is worthy to receiue it. Emperour quoth Meruine, farre be my thoughts from that imagination, thy crowne is thy birth right, and I le be thy servant.



### CHAP. XXXIII.

1 How Meruine maried Mathaburna, 2 of the great solemnity at Maiance for ioy thereof.



After these speaches betwene the Emperour and Meruine, they raised their tents and did march towards the citie of Maiance, all the Clergy and Commons thereof comming in processions to met them, in which ceremoniously they entred into the city, being richly adorneed cleane through.

## the historie of Meruine.

throughout, and all the Ladies and gentlewomen standing in windowes to beholde the beautes Meruine, who on the one side, and the king on the other, marched with Mathaburna betwene them. No sooner was Meruine discovered, but every creature both young and olde cried out in the praise of Meruine their redemer, and that so boldely, that Meruine stode almost astonished at their clamors, that he passed on till he came to the Market place, where he found many young Gentlemen and maides, who vs divers wellconsorted instruments carrolled many excellent songs in the praise of Meruine; thence they marched to the Pallace, where lighting from their horses they ascended vp into the hall, where was gathered together all the excellencie of Musick, playing so melodiously, that Meruine was rauished with the hearing: of their banqueting, daunting, and other reuelles, I will not speake, but passe them ouer to imagination. After the fift nights repose Charles dispatches his Heraulcs into Fraunce, to carry the newes of these occurrents, charging every one both noble and vn-noble, all Ladies married and vnmarried: also, all these whosoeuer had any skill in musick, that they saile not, vpon paine of disobedience, but to appeare at Maiance on the great feast of Pentecost, where his Highnesse would keepe an open and roiall court. All his will was done, and everyone was present at the day, which was wonderfully solemnized, Charles wearing his emperiall crowne on his head, so also did Meruine, who by his conquest was king of Ierusalem, of Mequa, of Babylon, of Lyllest, of Damascus, of Joniment, and divers other realmes: but Mathaburna that day ware no crowne, because as yet she was not his wife, only she ware a rich chaplet on her head, all in chased with pretious stones. Wher a dinner that day was finished, Charles gaue charge to all his Barons, that the next day after, they shold be in all their roialties, and to shew in their excellencies,

## The second Part of

excellencies, as well in feasting as in running at the tilt, because it should be the wedding day of the famous prince Meruine. Then notwithstanding that Mathaburna had many Ladies with her he sent al the Ladies of France, to offer her their service, which they did. After this first day was passed with solempne disportz, the morrow after all the Cittie beganne their ioyes, and in the morning, Drohes, Croysant, Baham, Belmarine, and all the gallants of France went and gaue king Meruine god morrow, who rising, Drohes and Croysant made him ready, adorning him with most rich abillements, imbordered with orientall pearles, and in chased with most pretious stones, as Diamonds, Rubies, Carbuncles, Turkies, Emeralds, Sapphyres, and many other. When he was ready, he set the crowne of Jerusalem on his head, and imediately he went into the Emperours chamber, where he remained vntill such time as Mathaburna was fully adornd after the French maner, whom for her beauties sake every one called a second Hellen. Then came the king crowned, the Dukes, Marqueses, Earls, and Barons, with crownes on their heads according to the maner, and brought in the king Meruine, who no sooner sawe his mistresse, but his heart capered for ioy. Then after certayne ceremonies they descended downe into the hall, where all the princes of his army wayted for him, then they went, and being mounted on golden chariots riz to the great cathedral church attended on most royally in this manner. First went fiftie gentlemen most richly attired, fiftie and fiftie in a ranke; then an hundred who carried a hundred banners, in which were the armes of the nations which he had conquered, and the last and the greatest was that of Jerusalem: after these marched Fourchier erle of Brandis, who bare Meruines golden spurres, clad in a vesture of gold: then Baham in like ornaments with Meruines shield; suitable to them the King of Aubiaes sonne with

## the history of Meruine.

With Meruines helmet, and lastly, in most rich imbossed armes of gold went Drohes bearing naked Meruins famous sword Entrant; then came Meruine himselfe, Charles riding on his right hand, and Loys on his left, after them the twelve peers, the dukes, marqueses, earles, barons, and knights: and in this manner came hee into the Temple, Mathaburna following them in as great state among the Ladies. Then they were both entered within the Temple, the Archbishop of Maiance married them, and then sang hymnes and infinite praises, all the troupe offering vp rich gifts for sacrifices.

After every severall ceremonie perfourmed, they returned as they came most orderly to the pallace, where they banqueted, triumphed, and revelled most gallantly, whiche ended, the Knightes went and armed themselues, and the Ladies were carried to beholde the Justes, in the whiche Mervine woulde needes be an actor, so also woulde Charles, and Naymes. Meruine at the first encounter overthrew fiftie and twenty, no man having power to sustaine him: then came Charles and humbly besought him to withdrawe himselfe, else woulde their spoyle bee little, because his prowesse, woulde put all men past running. I am well pleased said Meruine, and then hee departed, and came and saue with the Ladie Mathaburna beholding the Justes, which continued vntill euening, whose blacke browes compellid them to gue ouer. Then the tables being adornd they went to their tappers, after supper to dauncing, masking, and all manner of revelling, whiche being grown a little olde there came bishops, who forthwith with the Emperour and with the god duke Naymes conueyed the bridegrome to the Brides chamber, where after manie blessings and ceremonies they lodged him, who that night

## 338 The second part of

(by the will of God) begot on her a sonne, whose name afterward was called Orient. As sonne as it was day light, Drokes entred into the chamber, who appareled Meruine, and the Ladies of France that adorneed Mathaburna: then were solempne Masses sung, and other deuises. The feast and triumphs continuing eight dayes, at the expiration whereof Charles returned into Fraunce, taking leaue of Meruine, and so likewise did all the gallants of Fraunce, leauing no more in Matancie but Meruine, his Queene, and his old souldiers, amongst whom he diuides all his nations, except Lelfort, where himselfe determined to raigne: to Drokes he gaue Montmert, and the countrey adioyning, deliuering him an hundred thousand to gard him to his kingdome, to Baham he gaue Damascus, to Croisant Mequa, and to every other Prince that had serued him, other lands and segnories. This done, he remained in Denmark till his Queene was deliuered of a beautifull son, whom he named Orient, according to the Letter which hee found when hee got Passant. And after that his sonne Orient, was once a yere olde and upwards, hee had a maruellous great and earnest desire to go into Jewrie, to plant true religion in that country, which hee did, yet it was a sedious time before: wherefore for a while hee will leaue him, and speake of Gratiana the Fairie, who fell desperate for her euill deeds towards Meruine.

CHAP.

## 339 the history of Meruine.

### CHAP. X X V.

1 How Mutafier deceiued the Fairie Gratiana, and begot of her a monstre named Orke, that had three heads. 2 And of other accidents.

 In the hystorie saith, in that part, that by succeding times, the Christians living without warres (the remembraunce of sinnes) they beganne to commit diuers outragious and damnable offences, against the maiestie of God, at the which Mutafier triumphed, making their fall a staire to his glorie: wherefore he went to the world, where that desperate fairie Gratiana remained, and coming to a pore cottage, where she liued, he took upon him the likenesse of a woman, and knocking at the doore, which the Fairie opened, desired lodgynge for that night, with her, to which Gratiana gaue consent: so he stayed there beaing his thoughts howe hee might worke some notable mischiefe. Anone as they were set to repast, Gratiana asked whither he was trauelling all alone vnaccompanied. Fairie Uster (saide the Devil Mutafier) knowe that I and my company haue liued in a wildernes in great pouertie, hauing nothing but bread and water, till they all are dead, but I only reserved, for whom I sorrowed, and thought to haue led my life in continual solitarinelle, till the learned Clarkes told me, that such a kinde of life was damnable. After that they demanded of me, whether I were a maide or wiffe, or had in my life time accompanied with any man, and I told them neuer, soz which cause they blamde me exceedingly, approuing by the sacred Scriptures, that the

## the second part of

the woman that lynes without the knowledge of man, shall not see the face of God. Many other things they tolde me, until one of them for that ite sake accompanied me, and tolke my sinnes vpon hym. Alas qd Gratiana. what shal I do? my sinnes are infinite. Ile take them vpon me saide Murafier. Inbriese, so earnestly he tempted her, and begot of her a most vgly and deformed thre headed monster; thence he conneyed her into a vast and strange wildernes, where never mortall footstep was before discovered, and there she was delivered of her aboxtine fruit, which was called Orke, because, in that desolate habitation was not to be seene any thing, but th. headed monsters called Orke.

2 This new borne monster had more then the strength of six men, two of his heads looked forward, and the third behind him, every head had a beard, his eies were like me- lions, and in his mouthes teeth thre fingers long, and in a monasterie at Civill in Spaine at this houre is his picture, which king Loys caused to be drawne and creted there in honour of Prince Meruine, his sixt Entrant being kept there for a divine relique. This diuel-begot monster within twenty daies became so fierce and uncontrolable, that he ouercame all those of the forest, wherefore Murafier his fa- ther gave him armes almost impiegnable, and commanded him to goe into Fraunce, where if he found Meruine, he charged hym to beare him such deadly hatred, that he shold not rest till he had brought hym to a shamefull end: and also that he shold spare no Christian till he had laid the country vtterly desolate: yet before thou goest saith he, goe unto king Turniquant of Orlana, and impreach his aide to goe with thee, which his damme sonne dyd accordingly. But when hee was once come within Orlana, all the Pagans came and hid themselves for feare of his presence. From whence he marched towardes the pallace, where they lokked

vp

## the historie of Meruine

vp the gates, and told the king of the Orkes arrivall, who laughed at their cowardise, vntill he heard the Orke cri to them to open the gates, or he would destroy the city. The king as then was set at a table with his daughter Beatrice who in priuate was brought to be a Christian by her nurse, having instructed her in all the points of christian religion.



## CHAP. XXVI.

1. How the King Turniquant of Orlana assembled a great number of his people, and went in ayde of the Orke; 2. how he destroyed all Normandie and Britaine; 3. and of other occurrents.



When King Turniquant heare the clamors of the Orke, he arose from the table and went to the gates; where (seeing the hugeness of the Monster) a trembling feare came ouer his he- die; yet (with fained speeches) hee intreated hym to doe him no hurt, and he would perswaine whatso- ever he commaunded him. I aske nothing said the Orke, but that thou wilt be my subiect, and I will conduct thee into France; where I will vtterly destroy the Country, if they will not returne and belue in Mahomet. When as Turniquant heard these words, hee exchaunged feare into rejoycings, and made the gates to bee set open, and (with great honour) brought the Monster into his Pal- lace, where the faire Beatrice was; whom the Orke (at the first sight) demanded of her father, and in recompence hee would giue him the Crowne of Fraunce. All the

which

## The second part of

which Turniquant was proude of, bat the poore Ladie wept and lamented exceedingly. So in with all spedde that could be, the King mustered by his men, to the number of two hundred thousand; with which the Orke and hee passed (carrying the faire Beatrice with them) to Jerusalem, which he so quickly conquered. Thence he went unto Babylon, and did the like; and to all the other Christian Countries, evuen to Montment, where they gaue a strong assault, gainst which Drokes was not able to indure; so the Towne was taken: yet by the prouidence of heauen, Drokes escaped, who flying into a Wilderness, consumed his life in great pouertie. Thus the Orke subuerted what Meruine had planted; not leaving a Church or Monastrie, which was not utterly rased.

3 Thence (conducted by the diuels ayde) hee came to Saint Michael's Mount in France, and thence marched through Base Normandie and Base Brittaine; thence to High Normandie, making all places both waste and desolate. The newes whereof wounded King Charles, chiefly when he heard the description of the Monster: yet he assembled his men at Armes to goe against him; but not with such expedition, but that the false Orke and the Pagans were first come to Montmarre, where it was pitiful to beholde with what cryes the poore people ran into Paris, one carrying his bed, another his coffer, some their wifes, and some their children.

3 By this time Charles brought downe his Armie, and set upon the Orke and Turniquant, betwene whom was a long and dreadfull Battaille. Charles slew a number of Pagans with his owne hand, crying ever, Saint Dennis and god Fortune, this day shall the Pagans perish; the god Duke Naymes did as much; and upon his

Enemies

## the history of Meruine.

Enemies shewed wonderfull feates of knighthod, ouerthrowing here one, and thereanother; so that it was excellent to behold the fall of the Pagans. But this triumph indured but a moment, for the strong King Turniquant and the false Orke (in lesse than an hower) ouerthrew every soule of them: because the Parisians (vpon sight of the three headed Monster) fled away, and durst not one of them indure in Battaille; so that the Emperour was compelled to sound a Retrapt, and was the first that entered into the Cittie of Paris, so hideous was the beholding of the diuels Infant, and all the Christians followed: whom the Orke in pursuite slew fiftie vpon fiftie, and twentie vpon twentie, to the piteous amazement of all men. In this Chase, the Orke had entered the Cittie, but for especiall regard: but finding himselfe deceipted, hee cryed at the Gates; False traitor Charles come forth, and bring twentie with thee against me alone, or if they be not inew bring thirtie, and my selfe will give them Battaille. Thus triumphed he in his owne pride; but before any long time expyre, a single man shal bring his thre heads to a funerall: which can be none other but the famous King Meruine, as you shall heare.

Charles all this while was mightely perplexed, and not causelesse; for of all that he had brought, there was no moze left alive but thirtie thousand; neir her durst Charles the space of a yeare looke abroad, for feare of the Orke: yet at length he found meanes to send to the King of England, who came to his ayde with fortie thousand well approued and valiant Englishmen; yet so dreadfull was the Monster, that they stood in doubt to passe, but remained thre dayes and nights at Saint Dennis, neir Paris, of which the Orke had no ridings, holding all that time a Counsayle, how the King of France shoulde be aduertised of their comming, that ioyntly they might assaile the Orke on euerie syde.

## The second Part of



### CHAP. XXVII.

1 How king *Charles* had intelligence of the King of Englands comming : 2 of their assault on both sides: 3 how *Meruine* came, who had conquerd againe all that the Orke had wonne : 4 how *Mathaburna* gaue charge, that no man should speake of the warres before Paris : 5 how an Angell appeared to *Meruine*.

**W**hen the King of England had held a long consult, one of his traynes came vnto him, and vade him writte his Letters, and (in despite of all the Monsters in the World) he would attempt to carrie them to Paris: which resolution the King commended, and shortly dispatcht him; who came to Paris about midnight, and threwe his Letters ouer the walls: which the next morning being sound, were presented to the King; who reading them, understood the courageous English Kings resolute: wherefore he commaunded his Woost to armes themselves, who were then thre score thousand.

2 Then standing in readines, they attened to heare when the Onset shold bes giuen, which as soone as he heard, he cryed; Montioy, Saint Denis, and then fallen swyth, and made the Battaille fearefull to the Pagans, effecting wonders. To bee briefe, both the English and French shewed themselves absolute for courage: but the Orke made such haooke of both Nations, that in lese than an houre all the Christians fled for their safeties; the Orke

## the history of Meruine.

Orke (with an axe which Mutafier that night had giuen him) killing so manie, that few escaped, but onely those in the vantguard of the flight. The King of England fled to Saint Dennis, whom the Orke pursued to the walls of the towne then turning backe to his Tents, he found the faire Beatrice weeping, whom he saluted, and perswaded to be toyfull, for that in sixe months space he would crowne her Queene of France: but those wordes were worse than poysone, for than him she esteemed hell no bitter. Also all this while lamented Charles in Paris his croste ffortunes, because the Monster noyn had beene in France full two yeares, and layd waste the most scitfull places in all the Countrey.

3 In this pensiuenes we will leaue him while, to speake of the renowned Meruine; who after hee had converted all Jewry, went to Babylon, Jerusalem, and the other Countreyes, and brought them all backe to Christianitie. Whence hee went to Montment to visit Drohes, whom hee found not; and therefore sorrowed most exceedingly, vowing an endlesse revenge if hee were dead: and therupon gaue an assault to the towne, which presentlie yelded, because the greatest part were Christians. So that Meruine made one Sampson (boxne in that Cittie) their Gouvernour, leaving him all his Armie, and returned alone into his naturall Kingdome of Danske, where hee found his sayle Queene Mathaburna, and the young Prince Orient their Sonne: who (with all the Nobles Burgesss and Commons) most royally and louingly welcommed him.

4 As soone as Mathaburna had brought her royll Lord to rest, which (after his wearie travayle) of all other entertainment was to him best welcome, shes sent private Commandement to euerie Noble man and Magistrate that

## The second part of

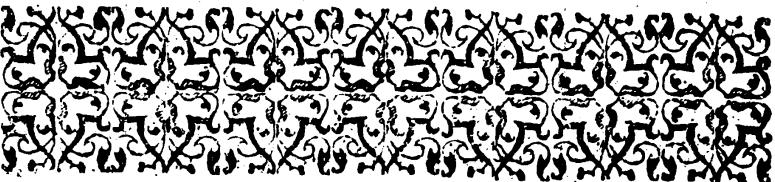
that was likely to haue accesse to the King, that as they tendered the safetie of his private Person, and respected the publique benefitte of the Common-wealth, that they in no case should acquaynt the noble Meruine with the miserable estate of the Emperour Charles and the other Christians in France: for ( sayd shee) I need not tell you the resolutions of my Princely Lord your Royall King, shold he but heare the least inckling therof; to France hee would, to wofull wretched France: and if to France, whither goeth my loues Lord and your lynes Protector? Even to the receptacle of horrore, even to the graue of death: where he shal combat with Monsters, not men; and not with mortall Monsters neyther, but that infernall thre headed Dog of hell, the vgly Orke, against whose force, men can haue no force to make resistance. Doe not then, I beseech you, doo not make me a Widdow and your selues Fatherlesse, by acquainting the King with the Estate of France. These words she deliuered with such abundance of teares, that the Nobles and Magistrates greatly commended her zealous care, and presently commanded, on paine of death, that no man should shew a heauie countenance, or once whisper of the Estate of France. Great Feasts and Triumphs were therefore made throughout, and manie other pastimes that continued a great part of the night, till the King was layd in his bed.

5 When the hower of midnight was come, there appeared to him ( in his sleepe ) an Angell from Heauen, who like Sunne-shine stood before him, and sayd; Meruine, the God which created all things, by mee commandeth thee, that to morrow thou depart and goe to king Charles and ayde him against the Christians, who haue besedged him, and brought him almost to vtter confusyon, by the meanes of a monstrous thre headed Orke, against whom thou

## the historie of Meruine.

thou must take battell, and the Lord will be thy defender, wherefore see thou depart without any notice to the queene thy wife, lest she should follow thee, which were offensive to the heauens. This sayd, the Angell departed, and imediately Meruine arose, and having armed himselfe and gathered his Souldiers together; tolde his Queene hee would passe into Surrey, and make a spedie returne: wherefore he desired her with her little Sonne Orient to passe to Lillost, where they shold not faile but meete him. Shee gladly agreed, because she feare no place but Paris. Thus he departed with threescore thousand, and made such haste, that he came to Roan; which he found so sackt and destroyed, that his heart so pitie bled within him. There he left his Armis, and himselfe alone marched towardes Paris, finding euery thing as he went destroyed & ruined. When he was come within the sight of the Pagan tents, hee turned himselfe towardes them, and marched into the campe with his head unarm'd, and his helmet hanging by his saddle. Then calling a Pagan unto him, he desired to be brought to the sight of king Turniquant. The Pagan consented, and brought him to his Tent, but the King was not there, onely he found the faire Beatrice, who at the first sight knew him to be a Christian: and therefore demanded what he sought. Madame said he, my busnes is to speake with him that beareth thre heads on his shoulders. Friend qd she, if you will batay here a little, I wil go tell the king my father. Doe so god Madame (said he) bat I beseech your Ladiechip, stay not long.

346  
The second Part of



CHAP. XXVIII.

1 How Meruine vndertooke combat against the Orke,  
2 of the fight, and the Orkes death, which brought  
rest to the Christians.

**B**eatrice instantly went to her father, and tolde him what she knew touching his request, and how he would speake with the three-headed monster : which the King hearing, he went and took the Orke with him, who looking terribly vpon Meruine, whom no looks could affright, Meruine stouly began saying, Wchon that hast vared to destroy this receptacle of Christianitie, I chalenge thee, if thou darrest, to single combate body to body, with these condicions, that if thou vanquish me, all this Countrey shall be at thy disposing : if I shall conquer thee, then thine at my shall returne home againe if they can escape our vengeance. How saiest thou ? When Turniquant heard this resolutes Challenge, he demaunded of him his name. Men call me answered he, Meruine. Wchich word was no sooner vterred, but taking the Orke and his daughter aside, he told many wonders of Meruine, how he had slaine Barant surnamed the Cruell, with the rest of his famous conquests; and therefore was now flatly determined by treason to put him to death. To which his Daughter made answer, that treason were vile even in a King, and therefore rather,

fin.

347  
the history of Meruine.

Since the Orke had vaunted himselfe against twentie, that now he shold trie himselfe against this one single knight, whom there was no doubt but he wold vanquish with shame, or quickly dispatch of his desperate life. At this speach the proude Orke rejoyced, and smote none but himselfe shold be in that combate : so they went to Meruine and accorded, drawing certaine articles touching the combat, which dispatched, Meruine went and told Charles, to whom he was the welcomest man aliuie.

¶ When the day of battell was come, Meruin, Charls, Naymes, Loys, and all their army came forth, and wcat to the Pagans tents, whcre after their othes taken on both sides, the two champions were brought into the listes armed at all points, and after the sound of Trumpeis they assailed each other, and Meruine brake his stasse vpon the Orke, but his armour was so god that he could not hurt him, only made him recoile tenne stote backward : at the whiche the Orke was angry, who with his battle ax wold haue stricken the prince, but with fine nimblencie in turning he ausided it, so that the axe fell into the earth aboue three foot, then the prince with Entrant strake him a mghtie blow on the head, but could pierce no skin, whiche scene, he sheathed his sword, and took his great mace, whiche hung by, and with that gaue him such a blow vpon one of his helmets, that he realed, and with much adoe held himselfe from falling : when the Orke fel these intollerable woundings, he flew vpon Meruine like a tempest, and thinking to hit him with his diuellish axe, the god horse Passant turned so nimblly about, that he failed in his purpose, for why there was no steele wold haue borne out the blow. When the Orke saw his effectlesse furie, he grew mad, often assailing, and as often failing. When prince Meruine aduancing himselfe, gaue the Orke such a blowe on the necke, that he

## The seconde part of

made one of his helmets ffe into the middest of the field, so that one of his heades was disarmed; then drawing his sword, hee seconded his blowe vpon the Orkes disarmed head, that he cut away one of his eares, wherewithal the Orke raised a most fearefull cri, which put the pagans into a fearefull affright. Beatrice seeing this, said to her father, My Lord, this day the Orke will be vanquished, therefore bee aduised by me, and let vs ffe to our shippes, to escape worse danger, the Orke is neither of our country nor kindred, let vs leaue him to his fortune. Daughter ( said Turniquant ) you are too blame, for it he doe ouercome, what shall beseele vs: wherefore let vs attend some more of his fortune. Meruine this while lion-like assailed the Orke, and gave him such a monstrosous wound on his thigh, that he was no longer able to sustaine himselfe from falling, yet still held his axe in such sorte in his hand, that Paslant durst not assaile him. Then beganne the Orke to crie so fearefully, that the Pagans hearing him, trussed vp their tents, and betooke themselves to flying: whiche the emperour Charles seeing, shewed the duke Naymes saying, see how they ffe and dare not stay the end of the battell: were it not that I am sworne to the contrary, they shold not escape so easily. This is true, (said Naymes) therefore let them go, for the devill is their conduct. As they were thus talking, the pagans gote to their shippes, and with all the hast they could, sailed into their owne countries: all this while Meruine assailed the Orke, but by reason of his lying on the ground, hee could no whit hurt him, wherefore hee alighted vnto him and commaunded Paslant, if neede compelled him, to come and succour him; whiche the Fairie houle well understood. This said, Meruine went towards the Orke, and he seeing him come, bethought himselfe of his best defence; and Meruine imagining to strike him, the falle diuellish Orke thrust his axe before him with such violence, that hitting Meruine

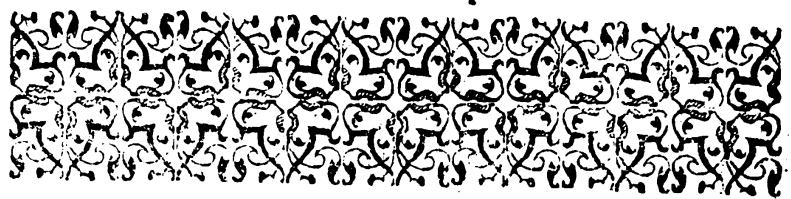
out

Z 3

C H A P.

## the history of Meruine.

one blowe vpon the knee, he made him perforce fall to the ground, whiche the monster seeing, hee crawled vpon him, and gaue him many intollerable blowes, whilless Meruine on the other side drawing forth a puniard, thought to stab the monster, but lightning vpon his curaces, the dagger without hurt brake in two peeces. Then Meruine implored some diuine helpe in his succour, for the Orke preased him most extreemely, yet his strength gaue him some remedy. Whereas the historie reportes, if there had beeene an hundred besides himselfe, the Orke had force to haue strangled them all. But the strength of Meruine equalled him every way: Charles seeing this tumulte, wept exceedingly, and said to Naymes, What shall we doe, sith the damned Orke holdes king Meruine in subiection? As they were thus in talking, Paslant seeing his Lord in daunger, he went to this Orke, and tooke hold of his disarmed head, in such sorte, that in despight of his will, hee made him let King Meruine goe, who instantly rising tooke his sworde whiche lay on the ground: Paslant with his teeth tooke hold of his eare, and Meruine gaue him two such blowes, that he let his battle axe fall; then doubling his blowe, he cut off his other two heades: at whose death Mutafier came in such a tempest, that all Paris trembled. Then seeing his sonne dead he would haue taken vengeaunce, but of the houle he could not, because he was a Fairie; and of the master he durst not, because he had heard diuine prayers before the combate, otherwise he had done some notable mischiese: but preuented, he could do nothing, but tooke his sonne and all his accomplishments into hell with him: yet know for a suretie, that at his departate, he made such a wonderfull storne, that for the space of a quarter of an houre, the darkeste midnight had a fairer countenance.



## CHAP. XXIX.

- 1 How Meruine tooke leaue of Charles and departed.
- 2 How he went to Ierusalem, and thence was con-  
veyed into Fairia.


 Thus did the false Orke that monstrous sonne  
 of the diuell come to his end, beeing slaine in  
 the thirteenth moneth of his age, being so inui-  
 cible, that he brought all Fraunce almost dese-  
 late, and so likewise had done al christendom,  
 if God had not raised Meruine to be his destroyer. And the  
 storie saith, that if Meruine hadde bene brought vp with  
 womans milke, hee could never haue conquered the mon-  
 ster. Now by this time came Charles and the other christ-  
 ans, who with great honour and solemnitie woulde haue  
 brought him to the cittie; but he refused, telling the empe-  
 rear he must first pay his holtes to the sepulchre of his Da-  
 niour, in repecting Charles for his sake, to ayde his sonne  
 Orient when any extremitie shoulde assaile him. Whiche  
 when Charles heard he sorowed exceedingly.

2 Thus parted Meruine, whome Charles wold no  
 longer holde, and came to Roan, where his army atten-  
 ded him, whome hee sent to Lilfort, and bade them charge  
 Mathaburna his Dauncie to looks carefullly to his sonne  
 Orient, so that hee wold goe to Ierusalem. Thus  
 parted they, and he stayed still in Roan till the wound in his  
 knee

knee was cured; then he betooke himselfe to the sea: in which  
 haning ouerpasse, he rode till he came to a forrest, where  
 the night so sodainly overtoke him, that he knew not wheres  
 to lodge. Now it fell out, that Mutasier to reuengi his  
 sonnes death, made in this wood an Abbacie, and him selfe  
 like a Pynne. When Meruine espied the house, hee spur-  
 red his horse towards it, but by no meanes coulde hee make  
 him goe, but euermore hee did retroile backe: then came  
 Mutasier in the habite of a Pynne, and saluted him: then  
 Meruine desired her to take his horse and bring him to the  
 house, than which the Deuill desired nothing more. So  
 soone as Meruine was within the hall, hee found a tabe  
 spread, and stoe of cakes, but Meruine woulde neither  
 eate nor drinke; but Mutasier at last incharmed him that he  
 forgat God, and fell to both eating and drinking. Whiche  
 when Mutasier perceived, hee boyled at midnight to carry  
 him to hell: then he remaunded of Meruine if hee wold go  
 to his rest, to which he consenting, brought him into a most  
 sumptuous chamber, wherewhen he was laide to repose,  
 before the night was halfe spent, hee imagined, that the  
 chamber, the Abbey, the bed, and all about him was out-  
 er, wherefore incontinently hee arose and armed himselfe,  
 and came into the court, where hee found Mutasier in the  
 likenesse of Passant (who then was gone into Fairia) upon  
 whome as soone as he was mounted, the Deuill flew a-  
 way like thunders or tempest, & bare him by woods, riuers,  
 and mountaines, euen to hell, where hee found his travell  
 doubled; so by the commaundement of God the diuel was  
 compelled to beare him backe againe, wherefore he carri-  
 ed him into Indi, where were many serpents and cruell  
 beastes, and therefore discharging himselfe of his barthen,  
 he tolde Meruine how he was his mortall Enemie the spi-  
 rite Mutasier, that had the keeping of him at Pinoz, and  
 there so manie yeares tormentid him, with hideous noyse  
 telling

## The second part of

telling him that he intended to haue borne him quicke into Hell, and that now hee would be reuenged for the fatal death of his deare beloved sonne Orke. Whiche Meruine hearing, he drew his sword, and defended himselfe therewith in such sort, that if the malicious fiend Mutafier had bene mortall, he had slaine him an hundred times; whiche saue, Meruine with the signe of the Crosse blessed himselfe at whiche the diuell like a tempest flied away, and left Meruine, who falling on his knees, asked pardon of his Creator, then he beheld his horse Passant, to whom he went, but in that the diuell had deceived him, hee was sicke in trusting: wherefore vsing some blessings and coniurac[i]on: Passant fell vpon his knees, and then hee mounted vpon him, and never waied till he came to Ierosalem, where he adored the holy sepulchre, and visited all the shrines of the Saints, remaining there the space of two moneths, at the end whereof he went into Spaine, to an Abbey that was founded by duke Lyon, wheres he was confessed and absolved, and then Gratiana sent the king Orient and diuerse renouned Fairies, who imbraced Meruine and brought him into the Fairie land, where he laved out his time with the beautifull Gratiana.

¶ Thus endeth the historie of the famous and euer renowned *Mervin*, which was first composed in rithme, and after translated into French prose, from whence it is thus reduced.



Finis.